

# Heart & Soul Centered Astrology



## The Essentials Course

**Transcriptions**

*with Ari Moshe Wolfe*

[FOREWORD](#) ..... - 18 -

**SEGMENT 1: WELCOME! & OVERVIEW** ..... - 20 -

Breakdown of the Course Flow ..... - 20 -

History of Evolutionary Astrology ..... - 20 -

**THE SOUL AND EVOLUTION** ..... - 22 -

    The Journey of Awakening ..... - 22 -

    Two Ways to Define Evolution ..... - 22 -

    Desire ..... - 22 -

    Caterpillar Analogy ..... - 23 -

    Evolutionary Necessity ..... - 23 -

    The Law of Evolution ..... - 23 -

    Dissolution of Identity Construct ..... - 24 -

    Involution ..... - 24 -

    Becoming Soul-Identified ..... - 24 -

**WHAT IS THE NATAL CHART?** ..... - 26 -

    A Template for Evolutionary Growth ..... - 26 -

    Three Levels of Understanding a Natal Chart ..... - 26 -

**THE EVOLUTIONARY STAGES OF THE SOUL** ..... - 29 -

    The Soul Awakens Through Desire ..... - 29 -

    No Skipped Steps Allowed ..... - 29 -

    Level of Awareness Determines One’s Reality ..... - 29 -

    Archetypes Express Domains of Consciousness ..... - 30 -

    All Levels of Consciousness Can Cooperate or Resist ..... - 30 -

    Cataclysmic vs. Non-cataclysmic Evolution ..... - 33 -

    The Effect of Patriarchy ..... - 33 -

    The Biggest Transitions Are From One Stage to the Next..... - 34 -

        Individuated Stages of Evolution ..... - 34 -

        Spiritual Stages of Evolution ..... - 36 -

<sup>2</sup>Confusion and Lessons in Discernment ..... - 37 -

<sup>3</sup>Teachers Provide Guidance Along the Path of Awakening ..... - 38 -

**EVOLUTIONARY STAGES FAQ** ..... - 42 -

    The Soul’s Desire Nature Determines Its Evolutionary Stage ..... - 42 -

    Karmic Dynamics vs. Evolutionary Stage ..... - 42 -

    Can I Be in More Than One Evolutionary Stage at the Same Time? ..... - 43 -

    Can a Soul Skip Evolutionary Stages?..... - 43 -

        Speak To When a Soul is Born into a Family/Culture that Does Not Reflect Their Evolutionary Stage ..... - 44 -

**CLOSING AND SONG** ..... - 45 -

    Song By Ari ..... - 45 -

**SEGMENT 2.0 OVERVIEW + INTRODUCTION TO THE 12 SIGNS** ..... - 48 -

    Different Systems of Astrology ..... - 48 -

Archetypes - Domains of Consciousness .....	- 48 -
Archetypes are Impersonal .....	- 49 -
Evolutionary Intention and Level of Consciousness .....	- 49 -
Breaking Down the Components of the Wheel .....	- 50 -
Quadrants .....	- 50 -
Modes .....	- 51 -
Elements .....	- 51 -
Polarity .....	- 51 -
<b>PISCES</b> .....	<b>- 53 -</b>
Pisces is Truth.....	- 53 -
The Truth is Everywhere .....	- 54 -
Disillusionment .....	- 54 -
Responding to Disillusionment .....	- 55 -
Emptiness and Revelation in Pisces .....	- 56 -
Faith and Revelation .....	- 57 -
Meaninglessness .....	- 57 -
Being an Instrument for Ultimate Meaning .....	- 57 -
Naïveté and Innocence .....	- 58 -
The Hiding Archetype.....	- 58 -
Building Immunity .....	- 59 -
Atrophy vs Inhabiting Life .....	- 59 -
Somebody vs Nobody .....	- 59 -
Neutrality .....	- 60 -
Pisces through the Evolutionary Stages .....	- 60 -
Consensus Stage .....	- 61 -
Individuated Stage .....	- 61 -
Miracles Happen .....	- 61 -
Spiritual Stage .....	- 61 -
The Virgo Polarity .....	- 61 -
The Return to Love .....	- 62 -
<b>VIRGO</b> .....	<b>- 63 -</b>
Virgo's Evolutionary Intention .....	- 63 -
Overwhelm and Avoidance Through Distraction & Procrastination .....	- 64 -
Humility - There's Work To Do .....	- 64 -
Pisces Escapism, Virgo Avoidance .....	- 64 -
Masochism .....	- 65 -
The Work We Have To Do .....	- 65 -
Master and Apprentice .....	- 66 -
Imperfection and Purification .....	- 66 -
The Mutable Square Tension Energy .....	- 67 -
Healing Through Showing Up in Service .....	- 68 -
The Psychologies of Virgo .....	- 68 -
Masochism and Sadism .....	- 69 -
Routine and Functionality .....	- 69 -
Neglect Leads to Crisis .....	- 70 -
Purpose and Meaning - Is it Working? .....	- 70 -
Karmic Clean Up .....	- 71 -
Evolutionary Stages in Virgo .....	- 72 -
Servitude and Slavery .....	- 73 -
Humility Is Not Humiliation .....	- 73 -
Healing Through Self-Awareness and Self-Improvement .....	- 74 -

<b>ARIES</b> .....	<b>- 76 -</b>
3LevelsofIntegrationinAries:.....	- 77 -
Level 1-Raw and Instinctive .....	- 77 -
Level 2- Cultivating Self-Awareness .....	- 78 -
Evolutionary Stages in Aries: .....	- 78 -
Level 3- Becoming a Leader .....	- 79 -
The Cardinal Cross: .....	- 80 -
Becoming a Trailblazer for Others to Follow .....	- 81 -
The Self-Cleaning Oven .....	- 81 -
Karmic Dynamics .....	- 82 -
Decisiveness and Anxiety .....	- 82 -
Overcoming Fear Takes Leadership and Courage .....	- 83 -
Athleticism, Competition, and Winning .....	- 83 -
Anger .....	- 84 -
Peak Performance .....	- 84 -
<b>LIBRA</b> .....	<b>- 85 -</b>
Discovery of Self Through Relationship .....	- 85 -
Comparison and Contrast .....	- 85 -
Communication .....	- 86 -
Balance and Harmonics.....	- 86 -
People-Pleasing .....	- 87 -
Expectations .....	- 87 -
Learning to Orient Towards Peace .....	- 87 -
The Instinct of Attraction .....	- 88 -
Compromise .....	- 88 -
Capricorn Square and Patriarchal Conditioning .....	- 88 -
Evolutionary Stages in Libra: .....	- 89 -
Giving the Gift of Authenticity .....	- 90 -
Entanglement Creates Role Polarization .....	- 91 -
The Psychology of Listening .....	- 91 -
Knowing One’s Boundaries .....	- 92 -
Indecisiveness and the Need to be Heard and Accepted .....	- 92 -
Forgiveness and the Return of Love .....	- 93 -
The Gift of Holding Space for Another .....	- 93 -
<b>TAURUS</b> .....	<b>- 95 -</b>
Taurus is Survival .....	- 95 -
Comfort and Discomfort .....	- 96 -
Sexuality in Taurus .....	- 96 -
Personal Expression/ Preference .....	- 96 -
Balance .....	- 97 -
Values and Authenticity .....	- 97 -
Resourcefulness .....	- 98 -
The Shadow of Complacency .....	- 98 -
The Frog in the Well .....	- 99 -
Trash and the Taurus/Scorpio Axis .....	- 99 -
Isolation and Possessiveness .....	- 99 -
Graceful Living Flows .....	- 100 -
Numbing Out With Pleasure Seeking and Self-Gratification .....	- 100 -
Lessons of Mindfulness and Transcending Resistance .....	- 101 -
Evolutionary Stages in Taurus: .....	- 102 -
Inner Resources .....	- 103 -

Cultivating Your Garden .....	- 103 - Self-
Esteem .....	- 103 - Self-
Knowledge and Self-Intimacy .....	- 104 -
<b>SCORPIO .....</b>	<b>- 105 -</b>
The Evolutionary Purpose of Scorpio .....	- 105 -
The Four Ways of Evolution .....	- 106 -
Cataclysmic Evolution: .....	- 107 -
Victimization and Abuse .....	- 107 -
Disempowerment .....	- 108 -
Addiction .....	- 108 - Clearing
Impurities .....	- 109 - The Power of
Concentration .....	- 109 - Non-cataclysmic
Evolution: .....	- 110 - Progressive and
Gradual .....	- 110 - Powerful and Direct
.....	- 110 - Lotus Flower Symbology
.....	- 110 - Death
.....	- 111 - Moving the
Kundalini Energy .....	- 111 - An Alchemical
Crucible for Evolution .....	- 111 - Intimate Relationships
and Facing your Shadow .....	- 112 - Sexuality in Scorpio
.....	- 113 - Fear of Entrapment
.....	- 113 - Evolutionary Stages in
Scorpio: .....	- 114 -
<b>GEMINI .....</b>	<b>- 115 -</b>
Learning and Context .....	- 115 - Logical
Systems .....	- 116 - Mimicking
.....	- 116 - Understanding is
Composed of Logic, Thought, and Conclusions .....	- 116 - Environment and
Security.....	- 117 - Gemini Logic, Sagittarius
Intuition .....	- 117 - Truth and Logical Conclusions
.....	- 117 - The Senses
.....	- 118 - Classifying and
Organizing .....	- 118 - Mutability and
Research .....	- 118 - Confusion and
Defensiveness .....	- 119 - Statistical Analysis
.....	- 119 - Overthinking
.....	- 119 - Overstimulation and
Mental Exhaustion .....	- 120 - Grounding Thought With the
Sagittarius Polarity .....	- 120 - Social Tool for Understanding
.....	- 120 - Duplicity, Lying, and Dishonesty
.....	- 121 - Open-Mindedness
.....	- 121 - The Soul's Program
.....	- 121 - Research and Bringing
Dualities Together .....	- 122 - Concentric
Circles.....	- 122 - Evolutionary Stages
in Gemini: .....	- 123 - The Mind as a Tool
.....	- 123 -
for Communication and Expression .....	- 123 -
<b>SAGITTARIUS .....</b>	<b>- 125</b>
.....	-
Understanding of Truth .....	- 125 -
Evolving From Truth to More Truth .....	- 125 -
Teachers and Students .....	- 126 -

Expectations and Living in the Moment .....	- 127 -
Freedom .....	- 127 -
Open to Experience.....	- 127 -
The Issue of Seeking .....	- 128 -
Stabilizing and Integrating .....	- 128 -
Alienation and the Psychology of Misunderstanding .....	- 128 -
Alienating Others .....	- 129 -
Inner Knowing .....	- 129 -
The Principles of Truth: .....	- 130 -
Nature Holds the Answers .....	- 130 -
Honesty and Dishonesty .....	- 130 -
Gemini and Lying.....	- 131 -
Pisces and Deceit .....	- 131 -
Sagittarius - Exaggeration and Persuasion .....	- 131 -
Virgo and Excuses .....	- 132 -
Being Present on the Pilgrimage .....	- 132 -
Optimism and Pessimism .....	- 132 -
Interpreting Phenomenal Reality .....	- 132 -
Feeling Lost .....	- 132 -
The Journey with Pisces .....	- 133 -
The Journey with Virgo .....	- 133 -
Letting Go to Receive .....	- 133 -
Philosophical Cohesion .....	- 134 -
Evolutionary Stages in Sagittarius: .....	- 134 -
Nature .....	- 135 -
Polarity: Relatability and Context .....	- 135 -
<b>CANCER .....</b>	<b>- 136 -</b>
Womb and Protection .....	- 136 -
Ego Development (Self-Concept) .....	- 137 -
Security and Attachment .....	- 137 -
Change .....	- 137 -
Self-Intimacy .....	- 137 -
Emotions and the Integration of Life Experience .....	- 138 -
Patriarchal Attitude About Emotions .....	- 138 -
Integrating Through the Emotional Body .....	- 138 -
Example of the Dog Who Feels Unsafe .....	- 138 -
Childhood Environment, Imprinting and Evolutionary Needs .....	- 139 -
Experiencing & Nurturing Emotions vs Overly Identifying with Emotions .....	- 139 -
Going Back to Go Forward .....	- 140 -
Nurturing and Care .....	- 140 -
Cancer Nourishment and Taurus Survival.....	- 141 -
Three Stages of the Cancer Process: .....	- 141 -
• Stage 1 - Incubation Phase.....	- 141 -
• Stage 2 - Birthing Phase .....	- 141 -
• Stage 3 - Stabilizing Phase .....	- 142 -
The Distortion of Patriarchal Conditioning .....	- 142 -
Gender Constructs and Cultural Assumptions .....	- 142 -
Evolutionary Stages in Cancer: .....	- 143 -
The Capricorn Polarity .....	- 143 -
We Are Where We Are .....	- 144 -
Emotional Development Occurs Over Time.....	- 144 -

Cardinal Squares .....	- 144 -
<b>CAPRICORN</b> .....	<b>- 146 -</b>
Boundaries and Limitations .....	- 146 -
Capricornian Dynamics .....	- 147 -
Resistance and Alignment .....	- 147 -
Fear and Obedience .....	- 147 -
Time, Space, Form, and Structure are the Template for Evolution .....	- 147 -
Consciousness, Alignment, and Mastery .....	- 148 -
Stages of Development and Growth: .....	- 149 -
Stage 1 - Outer Conditioning.....	- 149 -
Stage 2 - Learning Self-Responsibility .....	- 150 -
Stage 3 - Learning Mastery .....	- 152 -
Evolutionary Stages in Capricorn: .....	- 153 -
Gender .....	- 153 -
Time-Space Issues .....	- 154 -
Rules, Consequences and External Structures .....	- 155 -
Inner Authority and Alignment .....	- 155 -
<b>LEO</b> .....	<b>- 156 -</b>
Child Analogy .....	- 156 -
• Attunement to Creative Life Flow.....	- 156 -
• Enthusiasm and Celebration of Life Itself .....	- 156 -
• Playfulness Cultivates Self-Confidence .....	- 157 -
The Tension of the Fixed Signs .....	- 157 -
Leo/Taurus Square - Beauty, Self-Esteem, and Creativity .....	- 157 -
Drawing on the Aquarius Polarity - Be Yourself, Everyone Counts .....	- 158 -
Scorpio/Leo Square - Fear, Trust, Manipulation, and Courage .....	- 159 -
Purpose to Become Centered and Self-Actualized .....	- 159 -
Celebrity Mindset .....	- 160 -
The Soul Wants to be Seen, Known, and Appreciated .....	- 160 -
Narcissism and Leo .....	- 161 -
Child-Parent Relationship .....	- 161 -
The Evolutionary Stages in Leo: .....	- 161 -
Aquarius Polarity and Objectivity .....	- 163 -
<b>AQUARIUS</b> .....	<b>- 165 -</b>
The Intelligence of Creation .....	- 165 -
The Archetypal Symbology of Astrology .....	- 166 -
Aquarian Objectivity and Observer's Mind .....	- 166 -
Leo vs Aquarius in a Stadium .....	- 167 -
Aquarius as the Total Memory of the Soul .....	- 167 -
Unresolved Trauma Affects Objectivity .....	- 167 -
Creative Intelligence Beyond Time .....	- 168 -
Feelings of Paranoia vs. Harmonious Flow .....	- 168 -
Tendency to Dissociate .....	- 169 -
Heart Connection Through the Leo Polarity .....	- 169 -
Correspondence to Communities .....	- 170 -
Psychology of Exclusion .....	- 170 -
Liberation From Conditioning .....	- 170 -
Aquarian Inventions, Innovations and Technology .....	- 171 -
Aquarian Shadow and Square to Taurus .....	- 172 -
Past and Future Memories and Flashes .....	- 173 -
Insecurity of the Unknown .....	- 174 -

Evolutionary Stages in Aquarius.....	- 174 -
<b>THE 12 SIGNS AS THE LAW OF CONSCIOUSNESS .....</b>	<b>- 176 -</b>
<b>POLARITIES, ELEMENTS, MODES .....</b>	<b>- 183 -</b>
Polarities .....	- 183 -
Virgo/Pisces .....	- 183 -
Aries/Libra .....	- 184 -
Taurus/Scorpio .....	- 184 -
Gemini/Sagittarius .....	- 185 -
Cancer/Capricorn .....	- 185 -
Leo/Aquarius .....	- 186 -
The Elements.....	- 186 -
Element of Fire .....	- 187 -
Element of Earth .....	- 187 -
Element of Air .....	- 187 -
Element of Water .....	- 188 -
Modes .....	- 188 -
Cardinal .....	- 189 -
Fixed .....	- 189 -
Mutable .....	- 190 -
Quadrants .....	- 190 -

## SEGMENT 4: INTRODUCTION TO THE HOUSES ..... - 194 -

House/Sign Relationship .....	- 194 -
Important Considerations .....	- 194 -
What is a House? .....	- 194 -
Many Ways to Get to the Same Place .....	- 195 -
<b>MEANING OF THE 12 HOUSES 1-6 .....</b>	<b>- 197 -</b>
Signs and Houses Need Each Other .....	- 197 -
Preliminary Considerations .....	- 197 -
Sagittarius in the 1st House .....	- 198 -
Capricorn in the 2nd House .....	- 199 -
Aquarius in the 3rd House .....	- 200 -
Pisces in the 4th House .....	- 201 -
Aries in the 5th House.....	- 202 -
Taurus in the 6th House .....	- 203 -
<b>MEANING OF THE HOUSES 7-12 .....</b>	<b>- 205 -</b>
Gemini in the 7th House .....	- 205 -
Cancer in the 8th House.....	- 206 -
Leo in the 9th House .....	- 206 -
Virgo in the 10th House .....	- 207 -
Libra in the 11th House .....	- 208 -
Scorpio in the 12th House .....	- 209 -
<b>THE FOUR ANGLES.....</b>	<b>- 212 -</b>
Learning Points .....	- 212 -
The Four Angles .....	- 212 -
The Angles Create the Chart Framework .....	- 213 -
The Ascendant .....	- 213 -
The Descendant .....	- 213 -

The Midheaven .....	- 214 -
The Imum Coeli .....	- 214 -
Chart Example .....	- 214 -
Virgo Ascendant .....	- 215 -
Pisces Descendant.....	- 215 -
Gemini on the MC .....	- 216 -
Sagittarius on the IC .....	- 216 -
The Two Axes and Polarity .....	- 217 -

## **SEGMENT 5.0 INTRODUCTION TO THE PLANETS ..... - 219 -**

Example of How Planets Work in a Chart .....	- 219 -
All Components Combine to Create the Whole .....	- 220 -
Healing Requires Total Integration .....	- 220 -
Inner Planets, Outer Planets, and Chiron .....	- 220 -
Important Planetary Relationships .....	- 222 -
Overlapping Archetypes .....	- 222 -
Planetary Rulership .....	- 223 -
Combining Houses/Signs/Planets .....	- 223 -
The Complexity of Archetypal Combinations .....	- 223 -
Mnemonic Tool for Combining Planets With Houses and Signs .....	- 226 -
Helpful Tips .....	- 227 -
<b>THE PLANETS – PLUTO .....</b>	<b>- 228 -</b>
Pluto - Part 1 .....	- 228 -
The Soul Delves as Deep as It's Able or Ready.....	- 228 -
Desire Fuels Our Existence .....	- 228 -
Caterpillar Analogy .....	- 229 -
Awareness of Desires (Shadow) to Free the Kundalini Energy .....	- 229 -
Pluto's Three Levels of Information in the Natal Chart: .....	- 230 -
1. Core Evolutionary Themes (Past) .....	- 230 -
2. The Soul's Evolutionary Intentions (Present) .....	- 231 -
3. Cooperation or Resistance (Future) .....	- 232 -
Primary Functions of the Pluto Archetype: .....	- 232 -
1. Purging/Elimination.....	- 232 -
2. Awakening of Soul Consciousness .....	- 233 -
Pluto - Part 2 .....	- 234 -
Six Stages of Evolution .....	- 234 -
The Six Stages:.....	- 237 -
Attraction and Sexuality .....	- 238 -
Free Will and Choice .....	- 238 -
Pluto Chart Examples .....	- 239 -
Three Dimensions of Pluto Signatures .....	- 239 -
The Pluto Polarity Point .....	- 240 -
Pluto in Libra in the 9th House: .....	- 241 -
Evolutionary Themes: Approval & Acceptance, Truth & Honesty .....	- 241 -
Potential Resistance - Living a Lie to be Accepted .....	- 241 -
Teacher/Student Entanglement .....	- 242 -
Cooperation: Putting Truth Before Acceptance .....	- 242 -
The Catalyst of Deep, Honest Communication .....	- 242 -
Developing Pluto's "No Bullshit" Attitude.....	- 243 -

Aries Polarity .....	- 243 -
Pluto in Scorpio in the 10th House: .....	- 244 -
Evolutionary Themes: Power, Authority, Social Status .....	- 244 -
Potential Resistance: Power Grabbing vs. Repression & Shame .....	- 244 -
Contrast and Balance with the Polarity .....	- 245 -
Cooperation: Releasing Attachment to External Approval .....	- 245 -
Taurus/4th House Polarity Point: Accessing Deep Emotions and Values .....	- 245 -
Developing Discipline and Ambition Without Manipulation .....	- 246 -
Societal Gender Roles as Evolutionary Catalysts .....	- 246 -
Extra Learning Resources .....	- 247 -
<b>THE PLANETS – MARS .....</b>	<b>- 248 -</b>
Mars .....	- 248 -
Learning Through Instinct and Action .....	- 248 -
Empowerment Influences our Choices .....	- 249 -
Disempowerment Brings Opportunity for Self-Awareness .....	- 249 -
Mars Creates Karma .....	- 249 -
The Mars/Saturn Relationship .....	- 250 -
Mars Energy Must Be Channeled for a Purpose .....	- 251 -
Passion and Sexual Energy .....	- 251 -
Each Soul Has Its Own Battles to Fight .....	- 252 -
Mars Chart Examples .....	- 253 -
The Basic Need for Freedom .....	- 253 -
Mars in Sagittarius in the 11th House: .....	- 253 -
Needing Freedom from Conditioning to Spontaneously Follow One’s Intuition .....	- 253 -
Feeling Persecuted .....	- 254 -
Paranoia Can Lead to Dissociation or Aggression .....	- 254 -
Needing to Be True To Oneself .....	- 255 -
Religious or Racial Persecution .....	- 255 -
Sexual Trauma Related to Groups .....	- 255 -
Pushing Boundaries/Breaking Free in Extreme Ways .....	- 256 -
Mars In Capricorn in the 12th House: .....	- 256 -
Mars in Capricorn Signatures: Ambition, Failure, Shame, and Judgment .....	- 256 -
12th House Signatures: Surrendering Illusions, Dissolving Conditioned Constructs .....	- 257 -
Conditioning from Negligent vs. Overly Demanding Parenting Styles .....	- 257 -
Expression of Having No Boundaries .....	- 257 -
Expression of Conditioned Fear and Shame .....	- 258 -
Confusion and the Need to Surrender .....	- 259 -
Martyrdom .....	- 259 -
How Sexuality Can Express With These Signatures .....	- 260 -
<b>THE PLANETS - NEPTUNE .....</b>	<b>- 261 -</b>
Neptune - Part 1 .....	- 261 -
Seeing The Truth of Reality Through Trust and Surrender .....	- 261 -
Disillusionment and Confusion .....	- 261 -
Becoming an Instrument of Love Through Surrender .....	- 263 -
True Peace is Found in the Unity/Oneness of Love .....	- 263 -
Forgiveness, Prayer, Trust, and Faith .....	- 264 -
Neptune - Part 2 .....	- 265 -
Connecting With Neptune .....	- 265 -
Co-creation and Trusting a Principle Greater Than Ourselves .....	- 265 -
Guidance Shows Up in Many Ways .....	- 266 -
Love is Unconditional .....	- 266 -

Miracles .....	- 266 -
Being an Instrument .....	- 267 -
The Connection Between Neptune and Pluto .....	- 268 -
Chart Examples - Neptune .....	- 268 -
Neptune in Capricorn in the 6th House: .....	- 269 -
Neptune in Capricorn: Structuring Consciousness to Divine Law .....	- 269 -
The 6th House Environment .....	- 269 -
Following Guidance .....	- 270 -
Disillusionment .....	- 271 -
Conditioning and Perfectionism .....	- 271 -
Souls Can Be Conduits for Healing .....	- 272 -
Forgiveness .....	- 273 -
Neptune in Aquarius in the 7th House: .....	- 273 -
Neptune in Aquarius Signatures .....	- 274 -
7th House Environment .....	- 274 -
Disillusionment .....	- 274 -
Objectivity .....	- 275 -
Trauma and Cognitive Dissonance .....	- 276 -
Forgiveness .....	- 276 -
True Listening .....	- 277 -
Balancing One's Needs With the Needs of Others .....	- 277 -
Divine Love is True Love .....	- 278 -
Deception .....	- 278 -
Grace and Guidance .....	- 278 -
Liberation From Constructs, Projections, and Expectations .....	- 279 -
<b>THE PLANETS - VENUS .....</b>	<b>- 280 -</b>
Venus .....	- 280 -
Venus Embodiment and Needs .....	- 280 -
Pleasure/Pain and Comfort/Discomfort .....	- 280 -
Inner Reality and Self-Knowledge .....	- 280 -
Venus and Materialism .....	- 281 -
Frog in the Well .....	- 281 -
Connecting Through the Senses .....	- 281 -
Relaxed Receptivity .....	- 282 -
Taurus/Scorpio and Waste/Wastefulness .....	- 282 -
Stagnation and Resourcefulness .....	- 282 -
Slow Down to Discover the Deeper Message .....	- 283 -
Lower Octave of Neptune .....	- 284 -
Glyphs for Mars and Venus .....	- 284 -
Venus in Libra - Inner and Outer Relationship .....	- 284 -
External Displacement of Feelings .....	- 284 -
Self-intimacy .....	- 285 -
Outsourcing Needs/Codependency .....	- 285 -
Venus in Virgo .....	- 286 -
Outer Listening and Balance .....	- 286 -
Feeling Heard and Accepted .....	- 287 -
Harmonizing the Physical .....	- 287 -
Harmony & Balance - Always the Answer .....	- 287 -
Venus Chart Examples .....	- 288 -
Heart Chakra .....	- 288 -
Inner Relationship .....	- 288 -

Pleasure .....	- 288 -
External Relationships .....	- 288 -
Sexual Needs .....	- 288 -
Attachment & Expectations .....	- 289 -
Venus in Aries in the 10th House: .....	- 289 -
Venus in Aries Characteristics .....	- 290 -
10th House Placement .....	- 290 -
Mastering Impulses with Grace and Beauty .....	- 290 -
Power Dynamics and Balance in Relationships .....	- 291 -
Social Conditioning and Sexual Expression .....	- 291 -
Lessons of the 4th House Polarity .....	- 292 -
Immaturity and Learning Discipline .....	- 292 -
Venus in Libra in the 4th House: .....	- 292 -
Need to Feel Heard .....	- 293 -
Confusion .....	- 293 -
Listening .....	- 293 -
Projection and Codependency .....	- 294 -
Communicating Needs in Relationship .....	- 294 -
The Paradox of the Inner Lover .....	- 295 -
<b>THE PLANETS – URANUS .....</b>	<b>- 297 -</b>
Uranus - Part 1 .....	- 297 -
Conditioning .....	- 297 -
Individuality.....	- 297 -
Archetypes - Projections of Divine Intelligence .....	- 297 -
Archetypes in Time and Space .....	- 298 -
We Are What We Are .....	- 298 -
Individuality and Creation .....	- 299 -
Observation .....	- 299 -
Connection & Community, Harmony & Resonance .....	- 299 -
Intelligent Design .....	- 300 -
The Conditioned Past .....	- 300 -
Freeing Ourselves from Story .....	- 300 -
Freedom .....	- 301 -
The Need to Belong and Possible Exclusion .....	- 301 -
Suppression of Unique Self to be Accepted .....	- 301 -
Embracing Uniqueness But Feeling Like an Outsider .....	- 302 -
Embracing the Unconditioned Self .....	- 302 -
Tension Between Saturn and Uranus .....	- 302 -
Liberation .....	- 302 -
Patriarchal Conditioning - Afraid to be Oneself .....	- 303 -
Freedom From the Known .....	- 304 -
Trauma .....	- 304 -
Observer Mind .....	- 305 -
Being Present With What is Arising .....	- 305 -
Uranus - Part 2 .....	- 305 -
Inventiveness .....	- 306 -
The Higher Potential of the Human Mind .....	- 307 -
Three Levels of Uranian Information: .....	- 308 -
Uranus Chart Examples .....	- 309 -
Liberation From the Known .....	- 309 -
The Psychology of Elitism .....	- 309 -

- Uranus in Leo in the 2nd House: ..... - 309 -
  - Freedom to Fully Embody One’s Unique Creative Beauty ..... - 310 -
  - Insecurity and Fear Can Inhibit Self-Actualization ..... - 311 -
- Group Dynamics and Belonging ..... - 311 -
- Your Vibe Attracts Your Tribe ..... - 312 -
- Polarized Archetypes: ..... - 313 -
- Uranus in Capricorn in the 7th House:..... - 314 -
  - Liberating From Conditioned Constructs in Relationship ..... - 315 -
  - Suppressing One’s True Nature Due to Fear of Rejection ..... - 316 -
  - Liberating From Internalized Shame and Judgment ..... - 316 -
  - Potential for Dissociation ..... - 316 -
  - Building Authentic, Healthy Relationships ..... - 316 -
  - Objective Listeners Make Good Counsellors ..... - 317 -
- THE PLANETS - MERCURY ..... - 318 -**
- Mercury - Part 1 ..... - 318 -
  - Pure Witnessing - Experience Prior to Labelling ..... - 318 -
  - Naming & Classifying ..... - 318 -
  - Naming As Reference Points ..... - 318 -
  - The Mind Creates Data - Life Just Is ..... - 319 -
  - Forming Logical Frameworks ..... - 319 -
  - Intellectual Security ..... - 319 -
  - Subjective Data ..... - 320 -
  - Mercury and Pluto ..... - 320 -
- Our Environment Shapes Our Perceptions: ..... - 321 -
  - Mercury and Uranus ..... - 322 -
  - Openness and Curiosity ..... - 323 -
  - Identifying with Intellectual Security ..... - 323 -
  - Insecurity and Defensiveness ..... - 324 -
  - Trauma is Not Logical ..... - 324 -
  - Mercury in Capricorn ..... - 324 -
  - Mercury in Pisces ..... - 325 -
  - Learning and Communication ..... - 325 -
  - Gemini and Virgo ..... - 325 -
  - Reaction and Purpose ..... - 325 -
  - Staying in the Mind vs Uranian Witnessing ..... - 326 -
  - Response and Hearing ..... - 326 -
  - Connecting Response to Purpose ..... - 326 -
- Mercury ..... - 327 -
- Part 2 + Chart Examples ..... - 327 -
  - Reaction vs Response..... - 327 -
  - Purpose vs Mindlessness ..... - 327 -
  - Discrimination ..... - 328 -
  - Coordination and Articulation ..... - 328 -
  - Connection and Growth ..... - 329 -
  - Fact vs Opinion ..... - 329 -
  - Perceptions are Limited and Subjective ..... - 330 -
  - Adoptability ..... - 330 -
  - Natal Mercury - What is the Soul Interested in Learning? ..... - 330 -
- Mercury Chart Examples ..... - 331 -
- Mercury in Capricorn in the 9th House: ..... - 331 -
  - Disciplining the Mind ..... - 331 -

Dishonesty vs Integrity and Humility .....	- 332 -
Questioning Constructs to Open the Mind .....	- 332 -
Mercury in Scorpio in the 7th House: .....	- 333 -
Skilled Objective Psychological Analysis .....	- 333 -
Entanglement, Insecurity, and Dishonesty .....	- 334 -
Drawing on the Taurus/1st House Polarity .....	- 334 -
Hearing and Deep Listening Through Touch .....	- 334 -
Jadedness and Mistrust .....	- 335 -
<b>THE PLANETS - SATURN .....</b>	<b>- 336 -</b>
Saturn - Part 1 .....	- 336 -
Parameters and Limitations .....	- 336 -
Saturn's Evolutionary Intention .....	- 337 -
Conditioning in Saturn vs. Uranus .....	- 337 -
Healthy Conditioning .....	- 337 -
Repressive/Oppressive Conditioning .....	- 338 -
Saturn Work: .....	- 338 -
The Maturation Process - Level 1 .....	- 340 -
Failure is Part of the Learning Journey .....	- 341 -
Internalized Shame: .....	- 341 -
Karmic Experiences Induce Self-Reflection and Invite Alignment .....	- 342 -
Saturn Level Foundation is Required for Spiritual Growth and Integration .....	- 343 -
Saturn Level Ethics - Conscious, Aware, and Accountable .....	- 344 -
Saturn - Part 2 .....	- 344 -
Phase 1 - Immaturity (Pushing Boundaries, Failing, Learning) .....	- 344 -
Potential Pitfall - Settling Into a "You Gotta Do It" Mindset .....	- 344 -
Phase 2 - Doing the Work (Developing Wisdom and Self-Authority) .....	- 345 -
The Purpose of Time .....	- 345 -
It's Never Too Late To Start .....	- 346 -
Time is Meant to be Used Constructively for Our Greatest Purpose .....	- 346 -
Phase 3 - Mastery (Agency Acquired Through Diligent Work) .....	- 347 -
Posterity Will Inherit the Reality that We Condition .....	- 347 -
Graduation to the Next Level Occurs When the Lessons Are Learned .....	- 347 -
Saturn Examples .....	- 348 -
The Path of the Soul Learning Alignment .....	- 348 -
Strengthening With Saturn .....	- 348 -
It's a Long, Slow Journey .....	- 348 -
Conditioning is Unique to Each Soul's Evolutionary Needs .....	- 349 -
Transits and Cycles Mark Developmental Turning Points .....	- 349 -
Saturn in Aquarius in the 4th House: .....	- 349 -
Tension Between Conforming and Individuating .....	- 350 -
Being True to One's Nature Requires Developing Inner Authority .....	- 350 -
Living in Community Requires Learning How To Respect Boundaries .....	- 351 -
Using Time and Space Consciously for Ethical Human Advancement .....	- 351 -
Possible 4th House Issues .....	- 351 -
Shame and Not Belonging .....	- 352 -
Developing Emotional Maturity .....	- 352 -
Liberating from Unhealthy Emotional Conditioning .....	- 352 -
Possible Karmic Issues: .....	- 353 -
Reparenting Oneself to Emotionally Integrate .....	- 353 -
Saturn in Leo in the 9th House: .....	- 354 -
Shame, Judgment, and Materialism .....	- 355 -

Authenticity .....	- 355 -
Status Seeking and Approval .....	- 356 -
Self-Honesty .....	- 356 -
Needing to Be Right .....	- 356 -
Repressed Intuition .....	- 357 -
Depression .....	- 357 -
Immigration and Issues Around Race, Culture, & Religion .....	- 357 -
Disseminating One's Knowledge.....	- 358 -
Living Your Truth .....	- 358 -
Karmic Dynamic of Charlatanism .....	- 358 -
<b>THE PLANETS - CHIRON .....</b>	<b>- 360 -</b>
Chiron .....	- 360 -
Chiron is Newly Identified .....	- 360 -
The Rainbow Bridge .....	- 360 -
Bridge Between Saturn and Uranus .....	- 360 -
Challenge: Facing and Connecting with the Pain .....	- 361 -
The Wounded Healer .....	- 362 -
The One-Armed Archer .....	- 362 -
The Sacred Medicine .....	- 363 -
Wounding Others.....	- 363 -
<b>CHIRON IN THE 1ST HOUSE/INTRO TO CHIRON .....</b>	<b>- 363 -</b>
<b>A HEART CENTERED CHIRON .....</b>	<b>- 366 -</b>
<b>THE PLANETS – JUPITER .....</b>	<b>- 377 -</b>
Jupiter - Part1 .....	- 377 -
A Direct Experience of the Truth of Nature .....	- 377 -
Letting Go to Receive .....	- 377 -
Ari's Example of Dogma .....	- 378 -
Jupiter is Our Understanding of the Truth .....	- 379 -
Each Soul's Path is Unique .....	- 379 -
Following Your Intuition .....	- 380 -
Becoming Empty and Meeting the Present Moment .....	- 380 -
The Mutable Cross .....	- 381 -
Radical Honesty.....	- 382 -
Lying .....	- 383 -
Alienation and Restlessness .....	- 383 -
The Inconjunct and the Yod .....	- 384 -
The Remover of Obstacles .....	- 385 -
<b>Q &amp; A .....</b>	<b>- 385 -</b>
Personal Story of Letting Go .....	- 386 -
<b>JUPITER - PART 2 .....</b>	<b>- 388 -</b>
Teacher-Student Relationships .....	- 388 -
True Knowledge Stands on Its Own .....	- 389 -
The Journey is Spontaneous and Fundamentally Optimistic .....	- 389 -
Jupiter's Placement is Fertile Ground .....	- 390 -
Attitude is Everything .....	- 390 -
Psychology of Opportunism .....	- 390 -
Wisdom Comes From Self-Honesty .....	- 391 -
Simplify to Grow and Expand .....	- 391 -
The Relationship Between Jupiter and Saturn .....	- 391 -
Questions to Keep in Mind .....	- 392 -
Chart Examples .....	- 392 -

Experiencing Truth Through Relationship .....	- 393 -
Jupiter in Aquarius in the 1st House .....	- 395 -
The Solo, Unrestricted Path to Expansion .....	- 396 -
Issues With This Signature: .....	- 396 -
<b>THE PLANETS - THE SUN .....</b>	<b>- 399 -</b>
Sun - Part 1 + Examples .....	- 399 -
Sun is the Integrative Force of the Chart .....	- 399 -
The Sun Gives Meaning and Purpose .....	- 399 -
Healthy Embodiment Requires Confidence .....	- 400 -
Inherent Qualities of Joy and Play .....	- 401 -
Sun is the Creative Purpose that Imbues the Entire Chart .....	- 401 -
Sun in Libra in the 12th House .....	- 402 -
Creative Growth Through Disillusionment in Relationship .....	- 402 -
Graceful and Harmonious Creative Actualization .....	- 403 -
Confusion, Knowing Oneself, and Discovering the Truth of Love .....	- 403 -
Relevant Questions to Ask .....	- 403 -
Sun in Aries in the 6th House .....	- 404 -
Developing Confidence in One's Creativity .....	- 404 -
Possible Struggles for This Signature .....	- 405 -
Sun - Part 2 .....	- 405 -
Developing Confidence By Sign .....	- 405 -
Aries .....	- 405 -
Taurus .....	- 405 -
Gemini .....	- 406 -
Cancer .....	- 406 -
Leo .....	- 406 -
Virgo .....	- 406 -
Libra .....	- 406 -
Scorpio .....	- 406 -
Sagittarius .....	- 406 -
Capricorn .....	- 407 -
Aquarius .....	- 407 -
Pisces .....	- 407 -
Lack of Confidence Creates Struggle.....	- 407 -
<b>THE PLANETS - THE MOON .....</b>	<b>- 409 -</b>
Moon - Part 1 .....	- 409 -
Emotional Integration Occurs Through the Moon .....	- 409 -
Feeling Safe in the Reality of Change .....	- 409 -
Growth, Self-Intimacy, and Emotional Security .....	- 410 -
The Energetic Experience of Safety Is Relaxation .....	- 410 -
Resting Occurs in a Timeless State of Being .....	- 411 -
Ego Development and Self-Identity .....	- 411 -
Factors Affecting Emotional Integration .....	- 412 -
Getting Stuck in an Emotional Loop .....	- 412 -
Embracing Change on a Moment to Moment Basis .....	- 413 -
All Experiences are Integrated Through the Moon.....	- 413 -
Moon - Part 2 + Examples .....	- 414 -
Embracing Change While Maintaining a Sense of Safety .....	- 414 -
Taurus Moon .....	- 414 -
Scorpio Moon .....	- 414 -
Sagittarius Moon .....	- 415 -

Questions for Contemplation .....	- 415 -
The Moon is Who We Think We Are .....	- 415 -
A Soul's Emotional Orientation to Life .....	- 415 -
Moon in Virgo in the 9th House .....	- 416 -
Playing Out Lessons at Different Stages of Evolution .....	- 416 -
Possible Emotional Imprinting with this Signature .....	- 417 -
Polarity Point: Pisces in the 3rd House .....	- 418 -
A Need For Nurturing Relationships .....	- 419 -
Emotional Communication .....	- 419 -
Balancing Self-Protection with Vulnerability .....	- 419 -
<b>THE PLANETS - INTERPLANETARY RELATIONSHIPS .....</b>	<b>- 421 -</b>
Interplanetary Relationships + Closing Song .....	- 421 -
Octaves .....	- 421 -
Polarities .....	- 421 -
Essential Relationships .....	- 421 -
All Components Work Together .....	- 421 -
Pluto - The Bottom Line .....	- 422 -
The Moon .....	- 422 -
Saturn .....	- 422 -
Uranus .....	- 423 -
Neptune .....	- 423 -
Inner Planets .....	- 423 -
The Sun .....	- 423 -
Conclusion .....	- 423 -

# Foreword

Welcome to the **Heart and Soul Centered Astrology Essentials** Course Transcription. These transcriptions are from the original video material that was recorded and presented during the first run of the Essentials Course with Ari Moshe Wolfe in 2021.

These transcripts are of the entire course, apart from ***Segment 3: Astronomy of the Natal Chart***. That section was not transcribed since that material itself was presented with a lot of visual material and is also summarized in the student workbook.

A very special thank you to all those who were involved in transcribing and putting this large document together. This simply would not have happened without your enthusiastic interest and support to help create this wonderful learning resource.

## **Transcription credits:**

*Winter Weldon*  
*Annie Kato*  
*Anja Reininger*  
*Tracy Pauwen*

## **First editing credits:**

*Winter Weldon*  
*Annie Kato*

## **Final editing review:**

*Winter Weldon*

## **Formatting of entire transcript and table of contents:**

*Daniella Veras*

# Heart & Soul Centered Astrology



*The Essentials Course*

Segment 1: Introduction

**Transcriptions**

## Segment 1: Welcome! & Overview

Hello everyone. Welcome to the **Heart and Soul Centered Astrology Essentials Course Training Program**. Thank you for showing up. Thank you for committing yourself to this work. We all know that this is not just an astrology training program. This is also a spiritual practice. This course is an opportunity for all of us to deepen in our knowledge of who we are. It is my prayer and my intention for all of us that this course really brings more insight, more compassion, more healing, more knowledge that we can really use to bring benefit into our lives and to that of others. Please make this course work for you.

### **Breakdown of the Course Flow**

This course is organized into 5 segments. Each segment is released all at once, and then each segment has its own duration of time. This is designed so that we can all create our own self-study program within the structure of the course.

- Segment 1 is the introduction. It's providing a philosophical and conceptual context for understanding the work that we're going to be doing. This segment is just one week.
- Segment 2 is on the zodiac. This is three weeks.
- Segment 3 is on the astronomy of the natal chart. That's one week.
- Segment 4 is on houses and signs. We're going to practice bringing signs and houses together. That's one week as well.
- And, our biggest segment is Segment 5 on the planets. We're going to have 4 weeks for that.

Throughout the course, we're going to be meeting for live Q&A's. In addition to that, we're going to have the forum. And, once we get into the zodiac work, we're going to start getting into groups so that we can practice together and learn and integrate the material.

***Please use me.*** I am 100% committed and available for all of you, to support you on your learning journey and to support you in your integration. So, please reach out if there's any need at all. And, when it comes to technical issues, please reach out to my partner Michelle. She's the technical wizard here. So, she's going to be helping out with any issues that we have with *Teachable*, and logging on, and things like that.

### **History of Evolutionary Astrology**

I want to speak a little bit about the lineage of Evolutionary Astrology. EA, Evolutionary Astrology, is really at the core of these teachings. While this is not an Evolutionary Astrology training program, the core understanding, the core teachings, are rooted in the lineage of EA. It's really rooted in EA and then shaped by just the uniqueness of my own personal journey of realization.

Evolutionary Astrology has been brought forth by Jeffrey Wolf Green. He himself received this paradigm in the early '70's by Sri Yukteswar. Sri Yukteswar, during his time on earth, was an astrologer and he was more well known as the guru of Yogananda. Yogananda was known for bringing yoga to the West, bringing the science of self-realization to the West. So, the teachings of EA, coming from Sri Yukteswar to Jeffrey Wolf Green, really orient astrology from the point

of view of the soul. It's looking at the natal chart to understand "Why are we here? What's the evolutionary purpose and potential of this entire life?"

I'm deeply grateful for the destiny to have walked this path and studied this work. If it wasn't for these teachers, we wouldn't be here together. So, I give thanks to this lineage and to my teachers, and to *all* of our teachers, and to everyone and everything that has shaped our path to bring us here together, now.

All right. I'm very grateful for this opportunity to share this journey with you. And I'll see you all soon.

## The Soul and Evolution

Before we begin to look at the chart and study the archetypes, we need to establish a clear understanding of “Who are we and what is this life about?” Because, as I’ve said before, what we think of, when we think of astrology, will depend entirely upon what we think of when we think of ourselves. If my entire existence is defined by my hobbies, likes, dislikes, that is what the natal chart will reveal, but it won’t go much deeper. I like to ask the question, “Why do we each have the chart that we have?” Jeff Green often said that the natal chart reflects life. So, what is life? What is this here?

### The Journey of Awakening

I want to start off by introducing the concept of the soul and the journey of awakening. For me, life is all about waking up. Waking up *to* what and *from* what? The starting point here is: we have this body, we have the personality, all the things that seem to come with this human existence, lots of phases, lots of cycles, relationships. Yet, all of that comes and all of that goes. We all have a sense of *I*. And yet, this *I* is very often linked and associated with particular conditions. Yet, if these conditions go, who is the *I*? Who are we? The journey of awakening is the journey of the soul, the journey of “What we are, me and you, coming to remember itself as such.” When I speak of the soul, I’m referring to what doesn’t come and go. So, we take the body, personality, personal memories, everything that comes with our preferences and our likes and dislikes, we put that aside, and we just have *what we are*, our unchanging essence. I think of this life as essence, being-ness, soul waking up and remembering who it is. This is what the journey of evolution is about.

### Two Ways to Define Evolution

We can define evolution in two ways. One is the gradual awakening and remembering of “Who we are.” And we can also describe it as “The gradual exhaustion of all desires until the only remaining desire is the desire to reunite with Source.” That’s a definition that Jeffrey Wolf Green uses. What does it mean to remember who we are? What does it mean to reunite with Source? To understand this we have to look at the meaning of desire.

### Desire

Desire just points to where we direct our attention, our concentration, our psychological energy gets involved and deeply interested in and deeply concerned with the 10,000 things of creation. If you take a sampling of twenty people walking down the street, you don’t really know what’s happening in their life, you may not be able to read it in their face, but look underneath the surface. Each person will have their own story in their head. They’re going to have their own concerns. There’s going to be a particular human experience that each of these people are working through. Everyone can relate to the idea of being afraid of certain things. We all have the concern with gain or loss, fear of losing what we have, fear of not getting what we want. This is all the result of desire. Desire isn’t a “bad” thing. Desire is just the simply the nature of this game. “Infinite being-ness,” the soul, the soul which is infinite: it’s not born, it can’t be un-created, it can’t die. The soul itself is actually one with the Source of creation. The soul itself contains infinite creative power. And again, this is not something you tend to understand. We often miss this about ourselves because our attention is deeply cleaved, deeply directed towards these things that we perceive as being outside of ourselves that we are invested in.

## **Caterpillar Analogy**

And the journey of evolution is simply playing out these desires. We're either moving into a new phase of existence, born from desire, playing out a desire, or bringing a desire to exhaustion and moving on. The analogy that I very, very often give is that of a caterpillar. You can think of the caterpillar in terms of "Here is a phase of life existence that I'm moving into." And the caterpillar will know itself, to anthropomorphize it, as "caterpillar." It needs to play out the caterpillar desires. It needs to be fully present with its journey. But there comes a point where this consciousness, this being-ness, reaches the evolutionary edge of the growth that it can possibly do in the caterpillar paradigm. It can't reach that point before it's time to reach that point. And yet, when it reaches that point, it can't avoid it.

## **Evolutionary Necessity**

So, there's a thing called "evolutionary necessity." Evolutionary necessity says "All things will have to go at a certain point. All phases of life experience will come and they will go." And, we need to be able to engage with it, learn from it, live with it, grow, but then also move on when the time comes. We can look at human beings and we can find a person that's really successful: They're a successful author. They write books. They're really well-known. They have a lot of credibility. They're on the New York Times best-seller list. That experience isn't necessarily more evolved, it isn't better than someone else that's struggling, that's confused, that doesn't know who they are or what to do next. Really, you can see both of those experiences as just different phases. And the phases of generating desire, moving through it, exhausting it are just a spiral process. We go through it cycle after cycle after cycle, each time learning more about who we really are.

So, as we evolve, as we grow, our capacity to direct our attention within, deepens. Gradually we develop the capacity to maintain concentration on who we are, define a sense of stability, and ground within our own being, regardless of the comings and the goings of life. This is what the evolutionary journey is. And, when it comes down to it, we don't have a choice. We can't choose our curriculum, so to speak. In *A Course In Miracles* the opening statement is "This is a course in miracles. It's a required course. Free will does not mean you can choose the curriculum. It does mean you can establish what you want to take"; meaning, we can choose to resist or cooperate with evolutionary necessity.

*Exact quote:*

*"Free will does not mean you can establish the curriculum.  
It means only that you can elect what you want to take at a given time.*

*—Intro to A Course In Miracles*

## **The Law of Evolution**

Evolutionary necessity, the will, the reality of evolution, it's just a law. Think of the law, not as, you know, running a red light is violating a law, not law in that way, not the kind of law where there's someone that's going to punish us if we violate it, but it's law in the ultimate sense, it's built into the fabric of creation itself. Because who we are is Love. Who we are is whole, unified. For a soul to know itself, is to know a deep peace, a deep pervading, unconditional sense of wellness and wholeness. When we know who we are, we are undivided in our minds. We are no longer capable of perceiving a struggle in the outer world. Knowing who we are means we can rest in the seat of our own being. As a soul awakens to itself, here's a gradual

realization that the entirety of creation actually exists within. The only thing that keeps us from really understanding that is the degree to which our attention is directed outward.

### **Dissolution of Identity Construct**

So, coming back to this idea that we're always moving into experience, playing it out or exhausting it, when we move into experience, we set up shop there. It's all born from whatever desires we're needing to play out. So, this author that's successful and well-known, has a lot of credentials: let's say, on a soul level, this soul is desiring to experience power through esteem, social recognition, and being well-known. So, security is directed towards external experience. Therefore, they're going to create an identity construct. They're going to think of themselves and interpret life in whatever way is relevant for the fulfillment of their desire. And that's necessary and it's fruitful, for a time. Now, let's say this person writes an article and someone publishes another article and says "This author has all of these horrible thoughts and is misogynistic or sexist or racist, and you shouldn't buy their book." This author that was so identified with how they were seen, suddenly evolutionary reality is kicking in, and that which created security is no longer available for them. This soul can respond to it by sort of doubling down on their identity, like "No, but this is who I am and I need people to like me." So, they'll respond in all kinds of ways according to that. Or, and hopefully this is generally what happens to all of us at some point, but it takes a while because we tend to resist, because we like security. And, as we're evolving, as we're growing, we're learning where true security is. But, for the most part, we believe that security is in holding onto what we know, what has provided a sense of safety and security and power for us. So, in a state of cooperation, a soul will eventually come to acknowledge "I can't control life. I can't control how people see me. I can't control if people like me. I can't maintain fame indefinitely." And so, then this cooperation will eventually lead to the dismantling of the ego structure because the ego structure, the self-concept, the self-identity, was built entirely around the desire for external fulfillment.

### **Involution**

So, then this soul is at a transitional place. This is like the chrysalis, where I often speak about how a snake, when a snake sheds its skin, it can't see for a time; it's blind. This is actually a very yin phase. This is what Jeff Green calls "the involutory period." All evolution is preceded by an involution. What that means is that evolution is the coming into a new form: You're a caterpillar now. You're a butterfly now. You're a famous person now. You are actualizing yourself in a new way, coming to know yourself in a new way, and thus growing, awakening to more latent capacity and power. The involutory period is the undoing of that, the unraveling of that. This process can be very traumatic. It can be very difficult. It might be very hard to understand and really grasp why we might be losing certain things or why certain things are happening.

### **Becoming Soul-Identified**

The more soul-identified we become, meaning the more our attention is on *who we are* and less hooked, less entangled in our perception of the outer world, the easier it is to move through these cycles of evolution/involution/evolution/involution because we develop the wisdom and the compassion, the understanding that "All of this has to go at a certain point." As we awaken, we become more and more predominantly concerned and interested in the state of our inner reality. We learn to take full responsibility for everything that arises in our life because we begin to understand that the totality of our life experience is a reflection of our

inner reality. Everything's pointing back to our mind. Or, to say that differently, everything's pointing back to the nature of consciousness, the nature of our internal consciousness.

## What Is the Natal Chart?

### A Template for Evolutionary Growth

Let's look now at the natal chart. Since we're looking at our life from the perspective of being a soul, being an eternal being, here having this human experience as a template for our evolutionary growth, everything reflecting back our own inner desire nature, understanding that everything in life is relevant to our ongoing soul evolution, then we're going to have to look at the natal chart with that respect. We have no choice here. We can't look at the natal chart and settle for anything other than what's going to point us back to the nature of the soul journey. Because, from a soul perspective, from an evolutionary perspective, this body isn't arbitrary, the family you came into isn't arbitrary, no conditions of your life are just "what they are." Everything manifesting within time and space is 100% relevant.

### Three Levels of Understanding a Natal Chart

So, the natal chart will contain context and perspective, and help us to understand "What's the intention? What's the soul growth happening here?" To explain this, I'm going to present the chart as something we can read on three levels. Coming back to the analogy of the television series: If you're starting to watch a television series at Season 7 Episode 2, that implies that, before then, there was another episode, and before that episode, there was another episode, and so forth.

#### 1. Level One - Identifying the Karmic Dynamics

On the first level of understanding, the natal chart simply says "This is where you left off." By virtue of being here now, it implies that there's a context that's manifested that's led to the creation of the current conditions. So, we can read the chart as signifying "Here are the dynamics within this soul." Imagine you're leaving a life, the body's dying, everything gets left behind. The body dies, the personality's gone, the personal memories, the things you own, the actual people and relationships, all of that's gone. From a soul perspective, formless, timeless, universal, the only thing that stays is identification born from desire, whatever the soul's still fixated on, whatever is still unresolved within the field of the soul.

Then you enter the next episode. If you want to think of reincarnation, you can think of it in terms of that (and I will generally speak about this in those terms), although having a belief system in reincarnation isn't necessary to understand this teaching. We can understand this teaching by looking at ourselves day to day. What's present in our consciousness right now, what's manifesting in our minds, what we're concerned with, the things that are arising that are bringing something up, there's content there. It's pointing to something that is yet unresolved. The resolution of all things isn't a thing to work out. When all things are resolved, they return back to Love. And there's nothing to resolve; there's nothing to work out.

So, we come into life and the natal chart will simply reveal "Here's where this working out is happening. Here are the karmic dynamics, the evolutionary reality leading to these karmic dynamics," and also the self-constructs. "Here are the ways you've known

yourself.” That’s the first level of reading the chart. It provides a context for what has led to this life, and thus the second level.

- 2. Level Two - The Soul’s Evolutionary Intention** What’s the purpose of this life? What’s the program? What’s the curriculum? Remember, you don’t get to choose the curriculum. It’s already here. It’s just a matter of cooperating with it or not. The second level simply says “This is the program. This is the evolutionary intention. Now, this is a very important thing to understand. We often have a very illusory, or maybe a misconstrued idea of “free will.” We tend to think that we have a lot more freedom than we actually do. Or rather, the ways in which we have freedom are often misunderstood.

On the soul’s evolutionary journey, freedom is limited to, and really defined by whatever desires are manifest within the soul. If you walk into a room and you see someone that you have some sort of unresolved issue with, you’re going to perceive whatever’s happening in that room through the filter of your unresolved emotions. By no means will you be perceiving anything accurately or clearly for what it is; in fact, no perception is accurate. The only thing that’s accurate is Love. The only thing that actually sees truly is Love, which isn’t trying to figure something out or get something or take something or control or protect something.

So, we walk into this room and we have whatever perception we have. The choices that we make, how we choose to engage, is going to imply our perception. We’re only capable of making choices relative to what we perceive is out there. The world that we see determines the template of potential options and choices that are available. And all of that emanates from desire. What are we working out? What power are we still awakening to within ourselves? Where are we moving into life experience as a way to gradually and deeply become self-aware of who we are?

The conditions and the parameters that we each come into in our lives reflect the template, the context, from which we are waking up. We can’t transcend it; we have to live it out. We have to learn from it. We have to really open ourselves to it and grow from it. It’s here because it’s reflecting what’s in here [gesturing to himself]. So too, the life that we come into, we may not be able to understand, “Why did the baby choose these parents? How could you say that we take full responsibility for everything in our life? How could a baby take full responsibility for everything happening in their life? How could a baby take full responsibility for being neglected (let’s say)?” It’s not about that; the soul is fully responsible. And, it’s indeed true that, for every human being that comes into this world, there’s some ways that are the same for all of us; like, we all get born into a baby form, we all need to be open to, and completely available to, being cared for and held and fed. And then, in more diverse ways, we each have our own templates and circumstances that just come with the package of our life. Some people are born with certain genetics, some people are born to have certain experiences in their childhood, some people’s lifetimes for the first thirty years will be playing out certain experiences that are the direct result of their early life conditioning. We can’t separate anything from the soul reality. We can’t say “Oh yeah. You know, this is my chart; that’s why I’m like this. But also, I’m like this because of my conditioning.” No, it’s

all one. It's all one. It's all reflecting the soul's reality. It's all relevant for our own growth. And we need to appreciate that these templates are defining the borders within which we are growing, and we can't transcend them until we can. We can't move beyond the parameters of our life journey until we've worked through it and kind of harvested the necessary growth and self-awareness.

### 3. **Level Three-WeAreWhereWeAreRight Now**

Now, the third level of reading the chart is really important. You can't actually begin to work with someone until you get this third level. The third level basically respects and appreciates that we are where we are *right now*. We have the same chart our entire life which, by the way, says "This entire life has an intention. There is a soul program for this incarnation." From life to death, you've got the same chart; you've got the same body too. However, we grow, we evolve throughout our life. Ten years ago, if I got a reading with someone, I would've asked questions that were different than the questions I would perhaps ask now. That which is important to me is reflective of where I'm at in my own evolution. And remember, a big part of this life journey is playing out the cycles and the constructs, the templates that are necessary for our growth. Many souls will simply not get to a point where they're ready to do deeper evolutionary work. Because, for whatever reason, they've chosen a karmic template to create necessary experience for themselves which, at a certain point, they can learn from, harvest, understand, grow, and move on from. So, we've really got to work with where a person is at *right now*. It's super important. And, in the next video, I'm going to speak about the evolutionary stages of the soul, which is a very, very important concept in working with the chart.

## The Evolutionary Stages of the Soul

I want to start this video by clarifying a couple important pieces. I spoke about the importance of freedom and free will, and I want to be clear. The soul, by its very nature, is free. The soul and its essence is one with the Source of creation. The Source, Love, Eternity, doesn't know not-freedom. Love isn't limited by time and space and form and structure and karma. None of that exists in the Absolute.

### **The Soul Awakens Through Desire**

The soul's nature is desirousness itself and it's wanting to know that it's whole. It wants to belong. It wants to be unified. And that impulse for unification, which *is* desire, has to be directed towards somewhere. Desire is either directed towards one's true nature, the truth of the soul, its unification, its unity with All That Is, with Love, with Truth, its true identity; or this desirous nature to unify, to be whole, to return to its ultimate sense of self can be directed through the things of the world, through experience. And, it's that desirous nature to seek what it believes to be outside of itself that determines its karmic reality: the parameters and templates and constructs within time and space that are manifesting and all the different kinds of dynamics and experiences that we all go through on our soul journey.

### **No Skipped Steps Allowed**

Our desire determines the totality of the life that we experience. And we have freedom, we have free will, but not in an absolute sense because we are limited by what we're working out. The thing is, you only evolve from where you are; you don't skip steps. And that's the important piece here. For a soul to be on this evolutionary journey, it means they have to face completely, and yield completely, open to the content of their soul journey: the relationships, the experiences, the concerns, the dynamics, where they're called to build identity, where there's a calling to say "I want to try this out in life, and do this thing and explore this thing." We have to play it out. It has to be experienced and played out completely. And one way or another, the soul will come to this point where it can exhaust it. And then it moves on to the next experience; it evolves. Each time the soul goes through an evolutionary/involutionary cycle, there is growth, there is evolution that happens. It's no longer operating at the same level of consciousness; and thus, its capacity for choice changes as well. So, I really want us to understand that our capacity for choice is not any kind of objective, "Everyone has the same kind of freedom" kind of dynamic. We are simultaneously free beings and we each have the capacity to engage our free will, but the extent, the level, or the depth to which we are able to access self-knowledge is going to be different for all souls, depending on where they're at. This is what introduces the very important idea of the evolutionary stages of the soul.

### **Level of Awareness Determines One's Reality**

The evolutionary stages of the soul, as taught by Jeffrey Wolf Green, offer the perspective that every single soul comes into this life at a different level of soul awareness, a different stage of evolution. This is a very observable and intuitive truth. Simply look out on the world; we can see that not everyone has the same desire nature. Everyone, no matter what, is involved in a different circumstantial reality because we each have our own journey to play out.

But we can really group people into different categories and understand that there are a lot of souls whose orientation is simply not about spiritual awakening, not about awakening and realizing the universal and timeless truths. In fact, most souls on the planet are not. This is not a judgment in terms of a value statement, it's just an observed reality. And, apropos of the third level of reading a chart, where you really have to work with where the person's at, this is a part of it. You have to feel a soul's level of consciousness because the chart itself can be read on multiple levels of consciousness. We could think of the idea of octaves; if I sing a note, that note (whatever that note is) can be sung on many octaves.

### **Archetypes Express Domains of Consciousness**

Each archetype in astrology (and we'll learn all about these archetypes in the next segment and, as I teach these archetypes, I will be speaking about how they manifest on different levels of consciousness) needs to be understood as existing within the arc of the evolutionary process. So, you could take every single archetype within astrology; a sign is a way of expressing, it's a domain of consciousness. So, let's take the sign of Scorpio.

Scorpio corresponds to what we can call psychology: the process of looking into psychology, subconscious motives, addictions, behavioral patterns, things like that. For many souls on this planet, in fact, for most souls on this planet, the Scorpio archetype will manifest and express according to consensus views and ideas of human psychology: behavior analysis, motives, reasons for psychological behaviors, ways of diagnosing and treating. There's a certain way of thinking and this might involve more prescription drugs, more universal, generalized gender assumptions, gender constructs, and things like that. But then, we'll have a lot of souls that, relative to the Scorpio archetype, will be more interested in actually understanding the idea of the unconscious, the idea of unrealized content that is held within the individual consciousness that's expressing as a shadow, things that we don't realize are happening. There will be a lot of people, through the Scorpio archetype, who will relate to the idea of psychology with dream analysis, psychoanalysis, shadow work, even astrology. Obviously, that's relating to the same archetype, but on different levels of consciousness.

Same thing with Sagittarius: Sagittarius corresponds to natural law, our direct experience and understanding of reality. But, for many souls, that will express through what we would call mainstream religion. The context within which they will have their realizations and discoveries of truth will happen within a consensus framework: what their culture and religion tells them to believe, usually what they grew up with, and that will become the parameter in which they are going to expand their insight and their knowledge. And, they're not wrong; it's just not the whole truth. Then, you have a lot of souls within the Sagittarius archetype that will be more internationally minded. There might be more of an interest in exploring cultures and traditions and religions outside of one's own immediate cultural familiarity. And there might be other souls that might be interested in nature and shamanism and working with nature as a path towards understanding the truths of creation.

### **All Levels of Consciousness Can Cooperate or Resist**

So, we can do this with every sign in the chart. In fact, we can look at a chart and read it on multiple levels of consciousness, multiple levels of self-realization. You can have 30 people that were born with the same chart, born in the same hospital, at the same time, the same location, but they have completely different karmic realities. They're going to be manifesting their life

journey in completely different ways. They won't even touch each other because they're different octaves, different manifestations. And so, the exercise of free will and choice, the journey of evolution for each soul is the same, archetypally speaking; meaning, it's all the same process. It ultimately comes down to the orientation of the soul to cooperate or resist the evolutionary imperative.

Everyone, at every stage of evolution, can hold the stance of resistance. And everyone, at every stage of evolution, has to play out the journey, will learn somehow or another (hopefully,) to orient within and carry out the necessary work for evolutionary advancement. For some souls that might mean "I'm going to focus myself and get a job, make more money, become successful according to what society says is successful." That is evolutionary; that is focusing identity towards becoming someone that will further one's experience of one's innate power and potential. That will create a whole new stage of life experience which will be played out and eventually exhausted as well. So, with that introduction, let's jump into the evolutionary stages of the soul.

### **The Three Stages of the Evolutionary Process:**

Once again, this is taught by Jeffrey Wolf Green, and there are three general stages of evolution, and each of these stages has three substages, and each of these substages has three substages, et cetera. You'll notice, by the way, there's a sort of natural law of trinity here. We have the evolutionary process which is generating new desire, playing it out, and exhausting it. We even have (as we'll learn in the next segment) the astrological archetypes: cardinal, fixed, mutable. Everything can be understood in this way of starting, playing out, completing. The evolutionary stages reflect just that. The three stages are the consensus stage, the individuated stage and the spiritual stage. Now, these are just words. These are just ways of describing a natural phenomenon.

Again, this is not meant to judge or put people in boxes for the heck of it. I don't walk around thinking "What stage are these people in?" In fact, the longer I've been doing this work, the less I even think about this stuff. These teachings are really only useful in terms of cultivating an accurate understanding of the natal chart. It's never useful to try to figure out "What stage is so and so in?" It is useful when you're working with someone in a therapeutic or healing context. To be able to understand and appreciate that the same rules, so to speak, the same potential, the same evolutionary needs are going to be different or cannot be applied on all levels of consciousness. And so, with that, let's look into the consensus stage of evolution.

#### **1. The Consensus Stages of Evolution**

The consensus stage of evolution is defined predominantly by 70% or so of the planet (again, this is just more or less what we can observe). The consensus stage in general is characterized by an evolutionary process where a soul is growing through becoming aware of, aligning with, attuning to, cooperating with and mastering consensus reality. Consensus reality would correspond to what the prevailing rules are, the prevailing constructs, judgments, rights and wrongs, constructs of success, what to be. Obviously, authority is not yet rooted entirely within the soul itself, but there is growth on the consensus stage journey in this soul learning to develop authority, develop responsibility, and participate and be accepted within its culture and community and society.

- **The First Subdivision - Limited Awareness**

The first substage of the consensus stage corresponds to souls whose awareness is predominantly limited by just the immediate culture and the environment that they were raised and grew up in. There's not going to be a capacity to have much of an awareness of life, society, culture, politics, even one's nation beyond the immediacy of what one knows. Their consciousness is defined by the consensus beliefs with which they have been conditioned, and generally there's not the capacity at this stage to think beyond that. So, this soul will value and form identity around becoming what they were told to become. Now, the desire for more, the desire to evolve will eventually progress towards "I want to become successful relative to what my society regards as successful." so, in the United States this can very much be two cars, three point whatever children, everyone has a phone, and you're making enough money to support yourself, you fit in, you're the basic family, you're living the basic life, you have all the things that you're supposed to have. That desire propels the soul into the second subdivision of the consensus stage.

- **The Second Subdivision - Expanding Awareness and Participation**

The second subdivision is characterized by the soul becoming more aware; they're evolving here by becoming more aware of how society operates. And here there's a need to apply oneself. You have to work harder to actualize your gifts and your potential to actually make something of yourself. This might mean getting an education. This might mean working harder to start one's own business. Basically, at this point, the soul needs to develop skillfulness and more attuned concentration on how to get ahead in society. And this is profoundly important. If the soul can't do that, they're going to be limited to basically the lowest status of society in terms of social skills, social status, monetary capacity, monetary status, social power, political power. So, there's a necessary phase of this soul really developing their capacity to participate in society. Usually, in this stage a soul does become a lot more aware of one's nation, one's political reality, one's political affiliation. Often, there's more of an identification that forms between one's sense of self and one's larger cultural, political, national reality. They don't have to be a political person, but there's more of a sense of awareness and attunement to that. Whereas, in the first subdivision, there isn't necessarily much of that at all. You may not know, whatever country you're in, you may not know much about how your country runs itself or how it works. So, there's more of an attunement in the second subdivision.

- **The Third Subdivision - Highest Level of Social Status and Success**

When the soul reaches the third subdivision it's because they've directed desire towards achieving what society regards as the maximum level of success and accomplishment that can be achieved. So, the third subdivision generally corresponds to souls that have reached the highest level of status: CEO's, presidents, people that have started their own companies, people that are on top of the ladder, top of the echelon. And these are the souls that progressively are the ones in charge of creating the rules and the structure and the systems that determine the entirety of the consensus reality. Usually, most people in politics, most lawmakers generally fit into the consensus reality. We're going to always have those involved in politics

that are in the individuated stage (which we'll get to), which is specifically what furthers the evolution of consensus reality.

- When individuated reality makes its way into “consensus-looking jobs” (like people who aren't consensus but they get involved in high political offices), it eventually has the effect of upgrading consensus reality to a new level of consciousness. So, in the consensus reality, there's a strong identification with making it, with being successful; so, this is a very powerful stage. And, actually evolving out of that stage can be quite difficult. This stage is powerful because of the influence that a soul has and the amount of success and achievement that has been achieved progressively within this stage, within this third subdivision. The soul has to eventually get to a point where it becomes aware of its own limitations; it can't go any further. I can make more money. I can get elected again. I can expand my business and have more clients or buy another bank. But there's a point at which it becomes just empty materialism and there's no longer any value.

### **Cataclysmic vs. Non-cataclysmic Evolution**

Now, evolution can always happen in one of two ways for every soul at every evolutionary stage. It can happen through challenges, through cataclysm, where we're holding onto the status quo, to what is safe and known and secure and then evolutionary forces kind of knock us out of that. Or it can happen in a more progressive way of becoming self-aware and desiring to make changes.

At the third subdivision of the consensus stage, very, very often what happens is the soul will become so identified with the values of consensus reality that they put themselves in a box. And, at a certain point, their true individuality will be screaming to get out. This could be the example of a senator that is very much against gay rights. They will vote “No” on every legislation, will speak out against it, will say things like “Marriage should be between the sanctity of a man and a woman” and then they're caught on camera having sex with someone of the same sex; you know, a man having sex with a man in the bathroom. And suddenly it's exposed that they have these repressed sexual needs; they've repressed their own nature. And that can set in motion a process (there's actually an example of that. I forgot who, but there was a senator in the United States who went through that. I forgot who it was), and this can set in motion a process where the person is usually deeply humiliated, but eventually will have to come to terms and become honest about themselves and who they are. Or it could happen in a different way where the soul becomes progressively aware of “There's no more meaning here. This life that I'm living is not bringing me any joy.” Also, there can be a growing awareness of “The way that I'm structuring life and this consensus reality isn't actually good for everyone.”

### **The Effect of Patriarchy**

The problem with consensus reality in the current patriarchy is it's always going to value and give importance to its idea of what is “normal.” This will always be alienating and oppressive to anyone and any group of people that doesn't fit into the construct of “normal.” And, of course, “normal” is so often defined by these repressed ideas and beliefs about who we are. And so, consciousness can become aware of the reality of oppression, the reality of exclusion that comes with the way that we're living: It can be groups of people. It can even be the environment, or buying all of these things. Or, it can be the CEO of a corporation that's selling

products all the time and always advertising, getting people to buy. And then you realize “Oh boy! This is harmful for the environment,” and it’s making people think they need more all the time. So, one way or another, evolutionary forces impel a soul to transition into the individuated stages of evolution.

## **The Biggest Transitions Are From One Stage to the Next**

And, I should say, at this point, that the biggest evolutionary transitions are from one stage to the next, like consensus to individuated. And then, the smaller transitions are the subdivisions within that. And again, each subdivision has its own cycle: you’re starting it, you’re playing it out, you’re letting go of it. There are many phases of evolutionary growth that happen within each subdivision, and each subdivision, and each subdivision. We can map it out and get petty about it, but really we’re just trying to understand how this works. But for sure, when the soul moves from consensus to individuated, that’s a potent transition.

## **2. Individuated Stages of Evolution**

- **The First Subdivision - Insecurity and Fear of Judgment**

So, in the beginning of the individuated stages, there’s a lot of insecurity. The soul is entering into a new world, but it’s familiar with the old one. In the old world, it knows who to be; it knows how to fit in. It knows the “rights” and the “wrongs” and what’s acceptable. Thus, there’s going to be an inherent fear and insecurity relative to really individuating. At first, in the beginning of the individuated stages, it’s very common for the soul to be defensive of more consensus values and beliefs. But the thing is, they’re no longer there. They might be playing it out; that might be a part of it, but their consciousness is already opened up. And they’ll tend to attract more individuated friends.

They’ll become interested in things that are not really contained or accepted or known within the consensus reality. There might be an interest in astrology or forms of relationship that otherwise may have been judged by their family or their culture, ways of thinking or a relationship to religion or spirituality that is beyond the consensus model. There’s usually a lot of fear “I don’t want to do something wrong. I don’t want to be judged.” And they have to play it out. Gradually, what happens is a soul becomes more and more radicalized. In their radicalization they become progressively aware that who they are intrinsically can never possibly be defined or fit into the consensus model. As that radicalization happens, they move from the first subdivision of the individuated stages into the second subdivision.

- **The Second Subdivision - Alienation, Anger, and Isolation**

What marks the difference between the first subdivision and the second subdivision is, in the first subdivision the soul is open, curious, exploring, but it doesn't really know where it belongs. It might not know a lot of examples of people doing different things or living different ways, and it’s really working out its fears of rejection and judgment. It’s going to have to play it out and really argue and experiment and explore a lot and just find the ways to expose itself to a diversity of experiences to open its mind.

When we get to the second subdivision of the individuated stages, there's no going back. This soul, at that point, is so deeply radicalized that there's actually usually a fear of getting sucked back into the consensus stage. This fear is arising from the evolutionary need for this soul to really develop their own intelligence, their own creativity, their own individuality, and to further that in society. This will be a way for them to establish "I am who I am. I don't have to be afraid of getting lost or sucked back into a world that is not who I am."

In the second subdivision of the individuated stages, the soul will progressively have a need to form a community with other souls of like-mindedness. Jeffrey Wolf Green described this as the avant-garde aspects of society that might at some point throw intellectual grenades at society, criticizing it, disenfranchised from it. This could be any kind of subculture or subdivision of society that really differentiates themselves and separates themselves from the mainstream. And generally, there's a need to not participate in mainstream culture, mainstream thinking, and mainstream society.

So, evolution here in this phase is there's a lot of experimentation. There's a lot of discovering one's individuality and healing all the suppression. So, there's a lot of permission granted here to unravel and awaken to one's own creative genius. There could also usually be a lot of anger. The anger is often because of the nature of patriarchy, thus what defines the consensus reality.

In a world where consensus reality is defined by a lot of oppression and suppression, telling you to be something that you're not, the individuated stages will usually involve a process of feeling deeply alienated, disenfranchised, and angry at consensus reality. It's important to note that these stages of evolution don't have to imply patriarchy. And, as we'll see, as the consensus stage itself evolves, as more individuated and spiritual concepts make their way into consensus reality, it elevates the platform; it elevates that stage. Consensus just means defining yourself according to group thinking, what is prescribed as "right" and "wrong," because consciousness has not developed the capacity to know and define itself from within. Consensus reality does not need to be oppressive inherently, and that's something that we're going to see progressively evolve as consciousness awakens in the collective.

So, in the second subdivision of the individuated stages, the issue here is the soul is still isolated. They're not a part of society; they're not really doing anything. And so, there can be an underlying grief and a feeling of "stuckness" and frustration relative to not being able to be oneself because consensus reality is holding all the keys. So there's a need for the soul to develop the confidence and the clarity of self that allows them to further in their own evolution, to actually re-engage with society, but from the seat of their own individuality, So, here, it's developing a lot of confidence and centeredness in one's creative capacities, one's creative potential, and showing up in society with one's creative essence without diminishing that at all.

- **The Third Subdivision - Reintegration To Improve Humanity**

Souls in the third subdivision of the individuated stages are generally artists, people that are innovating new technologies or new ways of thinking in the world, people that are doing work for the environment or even getting involved in political arenas, making significant changes in the world. In the third substage of the individuated stages, consciousness is oriented towards innovation and improvement. It's able to do that because it's not trying to fit into a consensus reality, nor is it any longer needing to separate itself from it in order to affirm its sense of self.

At this stage the evolution is saying "I am who I am," and these souls are pretty smart usually. There tends to be a "know it all" quality to it, a lot of genius, a lot of awareness. It could be a political awareness, a global awareness, a philosophical awareness, a technological awareness. There's a lot of development that happens as a soul progresses through this subdivision that just brings a lot of intelligence. A lot of souls that are involved in politics are in this stage of evolution and you might not know it unless you hear them talk and what their stances are and what they're up to. Again, this is one of the ways that consensus reality evolves, through souls at a higher stage of consciousness applying themselves in society. Now we enter the spiritual stage.

### **3. Spiritual Stages of Evolution**

For a soul to transition from the individuated stages to the spiritual stages it needs to get to a point where its brilliance, its genius, its profound focus on self and its own capacities no longer feel very important. The intelligence is very developed in third individuated and there's usually a sense of arrogance, know-it-all-ness, "I don't need to fit into any authority. I can put a suit on and pretend that I know I am." And there's generally a lot of resistance to giving oneself over to something beyond themselves.

So, a soul in the third individuated could even be interested in things like yoga and meditation and spiritual ideas and definitely astrology.

Astrology is very much thriving in the third stage of the individuated stages of evolution. It's intelligent. It's really developing a clear awareness and seeing a reality beyond a consensus mindset. But at this stage in evolution, there's not yet a devotion. There's not yet an orientation to know who one truly is, eternally so. There's not yet an orientation to awaken and realize the universal and timeless truths of creation. And so there's a humbling process that occurs as a soul transitions into the spiritual stage of evolution. This can happen naturally through association with ideas and philosophies and perspectives where a soul gradually osmoses and becomes aware of a way of thinking.

And there comes a point where the soul becomes genuinely interested in starting to have a direct realization of the truth. An example of this could be a soul that's practicing yoga every day and through their practice of yoga, gradually, kind of like the water dripping on stone, it impels something within their consciousness, a gradual imprint within their consciousness to start to become aware of the nature of their own thought, the nature of consciousness. They become aware of what it means to be living a life where "I'm not breathing," where "I'm always trying to change something." There could be a lot of political activism in the third individuated, for example. "The world has to

change. I've got to make a difference in the world. I've got to make sure I'm doing something," but then to become aware of "I'm stressing myself," or "I'm so identified with my stance, with being right, with getting something done," so gradually consciousness becomes curious about this "There must be another way." The question: "What's peace? Where does real peace come from? How can I really help the world? How can I really make a difference? What is the maximal way in which I can be of service to as many people as possible and bring healing and wellness to the world?" When a soul begins asking questions like that it means there's a little bit of space in their mind where they're no

longer attached to "I'm going to do it my way. I'm going to do it the way I know how to do it and this is how it's going to look." But, a little bit of awareness of "There must be a better way because I'm not truly happy and this is not truly working. There's still suffering. Things aren't getting better." The shift is happening from intellect to more of a humble devotional reflection on what works, what's true. And this brings the soul to reflect on "Who am I? What's the nature of reality itself?"

- **The First Subdivision - Orienting Towards Learning Universal Principles**

In the beginning of the spiritual stage, the first subdivision of the spiritual stages of evolution, there's a growing humility and a purity. And this purity becomes very pervasive, where the soul really wants to do good and there's a growing orientation to align with spiritual traditions and practices and teachers that will orient the soul towards universal principles, what is essentially true and healing, about oneself, about one's reality, about life. The soul will develop a path more aligned with karma yoga, doing work. It could be as a teacher, practitioner, opening up a yoga studio, having events, doing work in the world, whether it's their official job or not, where they're in service from a spiritual seat. They're supporting people in doing work that is of benefit for others. They're wanting to study or learn or practice or train in modalities that are healing and ways of thinking that are healing.

### **Confusion and Lessons in Discernment**

And there can be a lot of confusion in the first subdivision of the spiritual stage. This confusion is because the purity and the desire to purify and to learn and to forgive and to align with truth means there's going to be a lesson of discernment. At first there's resistance, it's like, "I'm not going to bow to the Buddha. I'm not going to listen to some teacher. I'm not going to follow some meditation practice," because of the resistance to external authority. But eventually the soul realizes "Ohhh, I get it. There's value in following spiritual teachings as a vehicle, as a path to awaken to the authority within." That has to be what it's about. And the soul realizes "I'm not going to get anywhere tooting my own horn. I'm not going to evolve and grow if I'm insistent on doing it only my way."

In the spiritual stage of evolution, we need to reference something not-ourselves, and by "not-ourselves," I mean not our ego, not our self-concept. Because we remember, we learn that our self-concept is a phantom. Self-identity, self-concept follows the desire of the soul. It's how we facilitate our evolution by forming an identity so we can play out experience. You can't reference that identity to find out the truths of life. So, the soul is learning to create an identity construct that's more receptive. And that's where they'll come into more alignment with

teachers that they're karmically destined to work with. Now, this is where the confusion could be because a soul in the early spiritual stages can come into relationship with souls that are a little more evolved in the spiritual stage and are sharing teachings but are, themselves, not totally done with their own evolution.

The work in the first subdivision of the spiritual stage is to orient to a path where the orientation is to awaken to the timeless truths of creation within oneself and to cultivate one's capacity to listen and follow the higher guidance. So, the guidance of the guru, the guidance of the spiritual teacher is the guidance of one's soul. That's its only purpose. Any external spiritual guidance only serves the purpose of pointing us back within. The soul is learning to orient to their inner soul reality, to listen to the higher guidance within.

And there can be a journey where they're needing to work through discernment, so they can clarify and really build their intuition. What can be difficult in the first subdivision is just the energy of self-doubt. What happens as the soul progresses through the first subdivision of the spiritual stage is, they stabilize and deepen in their own self-realization. There's less confusion, they've developed a greater capacity to discern, and now they're beginning to have more of a direct experience.

So, this really reflects a juncture where the soul's no longer playing out the tendency for delusion and confusion and the patterns of spiritual masochism, confusing spiritual concepts, misapplying them, hurting oneself with spiritual ideas, ignoring one's intuition or common sense. There's a ground in the inner listening. The soul has cultivated their capacity to hear the inner voice to follow guidance. There's a prayer in *A Course In Miracles*, the very last prayer, the last lesson which goes something like "This holy instant I give to you. You would but leave and I will follow you, certain that your direction gives me peace.

*Actual quote:*

*This holy instant would I give to You.*

*Be You in charge.*

*For I would follow You.*

### **Teachers Provide Guidance Along the Path of Awakening**

The confidence here towards the end of the first subdivision of the spiritual stage is the confidence in following guidance. The soul doesn't need to have any answers. The soul doesn't need to know what's going to happen in the future. It doesn't need to have figured out a whole lot of stuff. It doesn't need to put itself in a lot of boxes. It doesn't need a lot of beliefs, a lot of constructs. It doesn't need to protect itself with some belief system or construct to make itself feel secure.

In the spiritual stage of evolution, the thing that can happen is the actual spiritual journey can be occluded by a lot of ideas and beliefs: like sitting in meditation and maybe it's not working, but that's not the point. You're sitting in meditation and you're telling yourself "I'm doing everything right. I'm following the instructions; I've sat for an hour." You know? But the question is "Are you having a direct experience? Is there actual evolution happening? Is it actually affecting your consciousness?? So, at this point, the soul is grounded in their ability to listen and follow. And they don't need to make something up to feel secure.

All souls will have teachers. It doesn't have to look a certain way. It doesn't mean the teacher is alive. It doesn't mean the teacher is not alive. It doesn't mean you've met them. But there are souls that, on their own evolutionary journey, will form relationship with other souls who are more evolved. And the souls that are more evolved, this furthers their own evolution. Everyone has teachers. There are those that will come and guide us at every stage of the journey. And it can look different for everyone; so it's important that we don't try to have a fixed idea of what it looks like. It can be, you find your guru and you know them really well. And teachers will manifest on different levels of consciousness. So, you'll have a soul in the second subdivision or a soul in the third subdivision. You could have teachers that are reflecting different levels of awakening.

As the soul reaches towards the end of the first subdivision of the spiritual stage they begin to experience awakening. What that means is they've begun to taste their true and eternal self. Their desires are now strongly focused on who they are, on knowing themselves, on identity linked with the Truth, with the Source that is the source for all guidance. And so, they themselves have strengthened in their own knowing of self. And there's usually a lot of peace, a lot of stability, there can be a lot of turmoil to get to that point, but as the soul grounds in that there's a deep humility and a deep quiet within the soul.

#### • **The Second Subdivision - Awakened But Karmic Issues Remain**

Then the soul is, what we can say, in the second subdivision of the spiritual stage. The second subdivision is characterized by souls who have had an awakening to their true and timeless nature and there's a discontinuity with the past; meaning, they no longer define themselves or know themselves according to past constructs. Their minds are free. There's a general sense of peace and freedom that these souls inhabit, and you can feel it. There's a generally more or less abiding sense of freedom.

Now, the issue here in this stage is, they're not done. There are still desires within the soul that have not been exhausted. So, at this stage of evolution, to further their own evolution, it's actually necessary for the soul to ground and set up shop in their awakening. A lot of the well-known spiritual teachers are in this stage of evolution. And yet, a lot of these well-known spiritual teachers are also teachers that, at some point, there's a scandal, there's some sort of power dynamic: sex, money, power. It's very easy at this stage of evolution to be deluded into thinking "I am the Source," where the ego accidentally thinks that *it* is the Source, where a self-concept says "I am God. I am the Source. I have arrived." They have to stay humble and remember, even while writing their books and becoming famous, or working with a lot of people, or channeling a lot of energy, one can have a lot of shakti flow, a lot of energy at this stage, the yogic concept of cities where latent powers awaken. These powers can awaken (psychic powers, the ability to heal) because the soul is infinite. The soul is inherently one with Creator: no bounds, no limitations. Seemingly unexplainable things could happen with these souls. It's just because the soul has been freed of desire to the point where they're able to abide in their own infinite power a lot more, but not entirely. So, while the soul is playing it out there's a need to stay humble. Jeffrey Wolf Green actually said that it's important that these souls evolve through this stage as quickly as possible so that they don't get stuck there, they don't get deluded by all the glamour or glory or power. This doesn't necessarily mean a soul's going to have a scandal.

The issues in this stage of evolution could be as simple as “Wow! I can heal. I can take people’s pain away. I can see people’s past lives so I can just tell them everything they need to know.” There can be a misuse of one’s power where a soul inappropriately meddles with other peoples’ karmic stuff, and thus gets in the way of other peoples’ revolutionary journey, which creates its own entanglement. In the first subdivision of the spiritual stage towards the end of it, the soul might have a lot of deep spiritual understanding and insight, but those psychic powers are not yet awakened. So there’s an immense amount of humility. It’s very easy for a soul to become intoxicated with the awakening.

As the soul progresses through the second subdivision of the spiritual stage, it’s going to have to become completely humbled. If there’s been a lot of self-delusion, then there will have to be more extreme experiences to affect a total surrender; that’s purification by fire. Or, it could just be a gradual process through choice; meaning, every soul has the capacity to orient their attention towards evolution where they play out this phase. Their own evolution furthers in deepening their own connection to their timeless and universal self. But eventually, any identity construct, the identity of teacher, the identity of healer, the identity of guru, that has to fall away at some point. And when that falls away the soul is just left with who they really are, nothing left to hold on to, nothing to attach to.

Very often, there will be very human issues that will need to be met and addressed and acknowledged in the second substage. You could have a soul that’s very awake, very spiritually evolved, but has unintegrated mother stuff or unintegrated father stuff. So these things will come out and, if they’re self-aware, it will come out and come through and be worked through without a lot of drama and trauma. And again, as we’re moving outside of patriarchy: patriarchy being where we’ve given all the power to the teacher. “Here. You take all of the authority. I’m going to listen to you blindly.” And we’ve idealized teachers and gurus, people who have had awakenings, as if it’s the biggest deal in the world. We’re learning that awakening is not a big deal; it’s just what happens. It’s a part of the game. That’s what this course is about. That’s what this understanding of consciousness is. On this planet, more and more souls are learning about spirituality, learning spiritual truths without all the “stuff” around it. At the core, when we understand that everyone, no matter what stage of evolution you’re in, we’re all on the same journey. And the same practice applies, the same honesty, the same self-responsibility is necessary in every stage, even though we’re working through different levels.

- **The Third Subdivision - Total Surrender To Source**

As the soul moves into the third subdivision of the third stage of evolution, there’s a total surrender and humility in the realization that one’s self exists only in relation to its Source. Everything else is a projection. And so, souls in this stage of evolution progressively become identified with timeless, universal Truths. What they do, what they offer to the world usually becomes very universal, generally, it’s known throughout all of the ages, and the effects of their living, the effects of their being, are oftentimes unseen. Meaning, it’s not necessarily “I’m going to meddle and do something here.” Just the very fact of their presence itself is healing. And the soul becomes more and more identified with their own Source, with Love, with wholeness; which means, they can see that in everyone. We’re going to perceive reality according to our desire nature. When the only desire is to reunite with Source and that’s the only orientation of the soul (the soul being desirous-ness itself), it’s cleaving orientation is cleaved, is oriented

towards the Source of All Things, perception can only proceed with Love. Only Love's eyes can see you. And so, the potential for healing is immense, because Love doesn't see sickness, Love doesn't see disease, thus it's oriented always towards the Truth of who we are, it's always oriented towards what is fundamentally and eternally whole and true about each one of us. Examples of souls in this stage are Buddha, Lao-Tzu, Amma, Jesus, those kinds of beings. And again, the third stage, this third subdivision, includes those who are just new to it, those who are more into it, and those who are completing it.

So, this completes the teaching on the evolutionary stages of the soul. In the next video, I'm going to share some frequently asked questions that I've heard and often received over many years regarding the evolutionary stages of the soul.

## Evolutionary Stages FAQ

### Evolutionary Stages - Frequently Asked Questions

Before we jump into some common questions, I want to clarify one thing.

#### **The Soul's Desire Nature Determines Its Evolutionary Stage**

So, we've learned about the evolutionary stages of the soul. And we know that you can't really interpret the chart unless you apply it to the appropriate level of consciousness. The question then is "How do we determine a soul's evolutionary stage?" The answer is, "It's about desire." The only thing that determines a soul's evolutionary stage is the desirous nature of their inner reality. And this is not just looking at the surface. We can't be superficial about it and just pick a few characteristics and personality traits. You could have really kind and loving people in consensus stage and lots of jerks in the spiritual stage.

We have to look underneath the surface and connect with "What is the bottom line orientation of this soul?" So, it's a matter of listening and connecting with "What is the paradigm within which this soul is evolving?" And it should be a feeling. We should be able to feel a sense of truthfulness. And it's not necessary that we linearly say "Okay, this soul is in the middle of the second substage of the individuated stage moving toward the third part of the second subdivision of the individuated stage." It's not necessary that we even have any of these concepts in mind.

The true purpose of these teachings is to just help us to understand that there are stages, that there is a process to the evolutionary journey, and it's a matter of generating desire to become and then exhausting desires to move on. The most important thing is that we have a general feel for where a soul is at. And we'll know if it's true if we can feel truthfulness. Truthfulness resonates with life, it resonates with existence. And, to be speaking with someone, reading a chart for someone, and to be speaking words that really aren't for them, we can feel that if we're listening. It's a really important sensitivity. So, that's one important piece.

#### **Karmic Dynamics vs. Evolutionary Stage**

Second, it's important that we distinguish between karmic dynamics and a soul's evolutionary stage. Karmic dynamics simply refer to the specific reality of the soul's journey. Karma can be anything. We are each creating and manifesting all kinds of karmic situations; meaning, we're each manifesting a diversity of experiences within time and space. So, we have to make sure that we're not confusing the two. For example, a soul could have karmic issues with Saturn.

Saturn, as an archetype, corresponds to rules, structure, authority. It corresponds to ethics. So, this could be a soul in a spiritual stage of evolution that is hyper-sensitive to social judgment and social opinion. It doesn't mean that they're in a consensus stage of evolution; it means there's a Saturn issue here. There's a specific karmic dynamic that they're resolving within their soul. That would be very different from a soul who's in a consensus stage of evolution and is actually defined, they're identified fundamentally, with knowing themselves and evolving within a consensus reality. That's not a Saturn issue, that's just their stage of evolution. They have to be there. The person who has a Saturn issue has to heal the Saturn issues so they can be fully present with where they're at and not have this unresolved baggage with them.

The same thing is true at the opposite extreme. You can have a soul with a lot of Neptune: Neptune corresponds to spirituality, to unity. Neptune corresponds to the crown chakra. We could have people with wide open crown chakras in the consensus stage of evolution and in the spiritual stage of evolution. So, a person could be deeply empathic, deeply caring, deeply loving, connected to all kinds of non-physical experiences, but it doesn't say, inherently, what their evolutionary stage is. Karmic dynamics, the way we're wired, the way we experience things, the nature of our own path, superficially, on the surface, doesn't say anything. These are all just the details and the specifics of how our journey is manifesting.

Every soul has its own individuality. So, we all have our own strengths and skills and qualities; we have to look underneath that. There are souls in the consensus stage that are brilliant musicians, artists, empathic, kind, caring beings. And then there are souls in the spiritual stages of evolution that maybe aren't very creative, maybe aren't very inspired, may not even be very interested in talking about love and spirituality. You can be in the spiritual stage and have no interest in spirituality. The way it looks must not be taken too seriously. We have to look underneath the surface.

### **Can I Be in More Than One Evolutionary Stage at the Same Time?**

One of the common questions that I get is "Can I be in consensus stage when it comes to relationships but spiritual stage when it comes to intellect?" just different ways of thinking that we can be evolved in some areas but not evolved in other areas. My answer to that is that you can't be a caterpillar in some areas and a butterfly in other areas. Your paradigm is a total paradigm within which we are evolving. The areas that you are developed in and the areas that you are deficient in really just point to the specific context of your soul journey. All that's relevant and eventually everything has to be addressed, but we can't confuse that with being in different stages of evolution.

### **Can a Soul Skip Evolutionary Stages?**

I often hear a lot about skipping stages. "Can I be born in a consensus stage and then eventually make my way to the spiritual stage?" My first part of that answer is "I'm never one to say. Who knows how much a soul can evolve in one lifetime? That's not in my hands, not in my opinion." But/and, it is significant to note that the stages really require us to live out full life experience.

In general, the consensus stages of evolution take a longer time because the soul is more identified with time/space, me and mine. And so the constructs that the soul creates for itself, the karmic reality of that soul's life experience, tend to carry more density. And by density, I mean, the journey's taking place through association with form and social constructs and appearances, things that are more external. And the soul has to kind of play that out and work through that before it can really move into individuation where it's not really about how you look or how you're acting or what you're fitting into. It's less defined by time and space. You have to really work through that and claim one's individuality before one can move into a spiritual stage of evolution where it's even less about time and space or identity linked with time and space.

At the end of the day, the bottom line is desire. It's the desire and the choice to evolve that will affect the conditions of one's life to facilitate that. We can't force our way through. That's the

interesting thing about evolution; we have the free will and the choice to orient towards evolution, and it really does express in the choices that we're making, but evolution itself is a flow, a process of life that's sort of impersonal to our own choice. We can't will ourselves to wake up. We can try it. "I'm going to wake up right now!" But that's just the ego trying to wake up. We have to be honest with ourselves. We have to be honest about where we actually are so we can meet the content of our life, see it through completely, and that simply takes time. But again, it's never for anyone to say how long anyone's journey should take. All we can do is do our best. All we can do is concentrate on the work and see what happens.

### **Speak To When a Soul is Born into a Family/Culture that Does Not Reflect Their Evolutionary Stage**

A very common situation that is often very confusing are souls that are born in the context of an evolutionary paradigm that is very different from their actual reality. Sometimes that might look like "I was born consensus but now I'm spiritual. Did I skip the individuated stages?" It's simply just that often a soul, in a certain stage of evolution, for whatever karmic and evolutionary needs, will come into a reality that does not reflect their inner reality.

So, a soul that's in a spiritual stage of evolution might, for whatever reasons, come into a consensus reality. That will set the stage for whatever karmic reality and conditioning was necessary for their ongoing growth. This is what I mean about the templates for experience that we have to live out sometimes, that often come in the soul program. This happened to me. I'm a spiritual stage soul born into a consensus/early individuated reality. For whatever karmic reason, that was very necessary for me. It was around age 18-19 that I quickly began to accelerate on my own spiritual path. I never needed to rebel from Judaism. I never needed to rebel from the consensus reality. That was never a part of my process. I never went through the individuation process of needing to protect myself from consensus reality. It was almost an immediate and very quick time period of connecting to my spiritual self, my spiritual calling, my inner desire nature to know what awakening is, to know who I am. So, we have to really discern and be clear about that when we're working with someone and not assume that a person is quickly evolving through all these stages where it's often the case that a soul was just born into a particular reality for whatever reasons that is not a direct reflection of their inner soul evolutionary reality.

All right. And this completes a little frequently asked questions on the evolutionary stages.

## Closing and Song

Hello everyone. I want to end this segment with just one more thought and a sweet little song. This evolutionary journey is an elimination process, but the elimination process actually reveals what's always there. It's elimination because it's a journey of becoming and exhausting, becoming and then exhausting. Gradually the soul, gradually we come to awaken to what's always there, eternal and unchanging, always present through all the cycles of identity that we go through. We'll learn later when we get into planets that this is the relationship between Pluto and Neptune. Pluto is elimination.

Pluto is the evolutionary process. Neptune is Love. Neptune is the love that we are. It's the unchanging truth of reality. And the relationship between the ongoing journey between generating desire, exhausting it, moving through life experience is all to arrive at what's already true. And just knowing that, that the destination is actually to awaken to what's actually now. We're not adding something to what we are. Just having some level of understanding of this, for me, offers some kind of solace, some kind of comfort. Through all the phases, through all the different processes and trials and errors and challenges that we do go through on this journey. And this is why, for me, as we grow, as we evolve, we do learn to hold a stance of relaxation. We learn to hold a stance of permission, of forgiveness. We learn to walk more lightly, to become less reactive, to allow things to come and go, to seek more understanding. Because we become progressively aware that this isn't really about adding on more, creating more noise, creating more struggle. And yes, while the journey will take us into new phases, new experiences, new ways of knowing ourselves, the essence of it, at the end of the day, at the core of it, is an unraveling, an unwinding.

## **Song By Ari**

So, I want to close this segment, which was sort of very conceptual, with some music to bring us into a nice place of integration and relaxation.

*I enter this moment.  
I focus my will.  
I open my consciousness  
Breathing, I am still  
Breathing, I am still.*

*I dedicate this body  
I dedicate this place  
A vessel for holiness  
I surrender to grace.  
I surrender to grace.*

*Forgiving the past  
Relinquish the future  
I choose this moment  
I choose love.  
I choose love.*

# Heart & Soul Centered Astrology



*The Essentials Course*

Segment 2: The Zodiac

***Transcriptions***

## Segment 2.0 Overview + Introduction to the 12 Signs

Hello everyone. Welcome to Segment 2. In this segment, we're studying the zodiac. This is our beginning to really delve deeply into understanding the signs and the evolutionary meaning that we can derive from the natal chart.

Before we start with studying the signs and all different associations we're going to speak about, I want to set a foundation and a reflection for "What does it mean to be studying the zodiac?" We all know that there are many, many ways to look at the sky. The sky isn't saying "Here's a constellation. Here's a sign (which are two different things, by the way). Here's the way to look at me."

### **Different Systems of Astrology**

There are many different systems of astrology: there's sidereal, there's tropical, there are some systems that use twelve, there are some systems that use more than twelve. Throughout the world, throughout all the different ages, we've categorized and organized "is-ness" in very different ways. This is kind of what the Pisces/Gemini relationship is. Pisces *is*. Pisces is wholeness, it's Oneness, it's Reality. It is what it is. And Reality is not stepping forward and saying, "By the way, here's the right way to look at me and think about me and categorize me." It just is what it is. It's everything, everyone, everywhere. Gemini comes along and says, "Here's a way to think of it. Here's a classification, a way of organizing it in my mind." We do the same thing in the body. We have the body, but what *is* the body? How do you think of it? How do you look at it? So, the Gemini dimension comes in and says, "Here's allopathic medicine," which implies a particular philosophical outlook on life, which is Sagittarius. Allopathic medicine is a perspective, but then the allopathic method/perspective/outlook/philosophy is going to organize and classify and create an intellectual cohesion for how to organize this whole body experience; and that's Gemini.

We can look at the cosmos and it just is what it is, and then Gemini comes along and says, "Okay, well, here's a classification. Call this a sign, let's use twelve, let's organize it this way." And, of course, Sagittarius is what gives it all meaning; it's interpreting it. There's a certain philosophy and understanding. Here, the Sagittarius element is a soul-level perspective of understanding the natal chart, understanding our own soul journey. The way that we're doing this simply represents one particular way of looking at life, classifying and organizing reality. In this system, it's the tropical method of astrology, the tropical system. (And we're not going to go very deeply right now into the difference between tropical and sidereal zodiac. I will touch upon that when we get to our astronomy section.) We're doing tropical, a twelve sign based system. It's just meaningful to appreciate that this is not "The Truth," it's a way of accessing it.

(Gemini/Sagittarius) It's a way of organizing and looking at it and classifying it and giving names to the things of reality so we can work with it, derive meaning from it, use it in a way that provides greater perspective and insight and understanding into reality.

### **Archetypes - Domains of Consciousness**

Antero Alli, he was one of my first teachers, like first, first, first. I got this from a book that I bought from him called *Astrologic*. And he says, "If you look at life and you put a pie on it with

12 slices” (something like that), “that’s it.” I love that way of thinking because it’s just *what is*. But, now we’re putting on top of *what is* a particular construct of organization. Now, if we take one of those slices out... (This pie of 12 slices actually might be my analogy. I think it was based on something that I read from him. Whatever.) You take out one slice and you have a whole archetype, you have a whole domain of consciousness. And, since reality isn’t divided, each slice will correspond to a whole realm of experience and consciousness that manifests personally, collectively, socially, politically, physiologically, psychologically, every dimension, every size scale, every dimension of reality that we can possibly take apart, you’re going to find the archetypes.

So, if we take out the Libra slice, you’re going to have an area of the sky called “the 7th House.” We’ll learn about houses later, but just to see that we have an actual area of the sky. We’re going to have areas of the body. We’re going to have psychological dimensions. The psychology of listening is Libra. The kidneys are Libra. The heart chakra corresponds to Libra. You have Venus, which corresponds to Libra, which corresponds to the heart chakra. We’re going to have the idea of justice, the energy of balance. Libra is the energy of balance, a whole realm of wisdom that is everywhere and everything. So, when we look at Libra in a natal chart, it’s going to speak to all of those things.

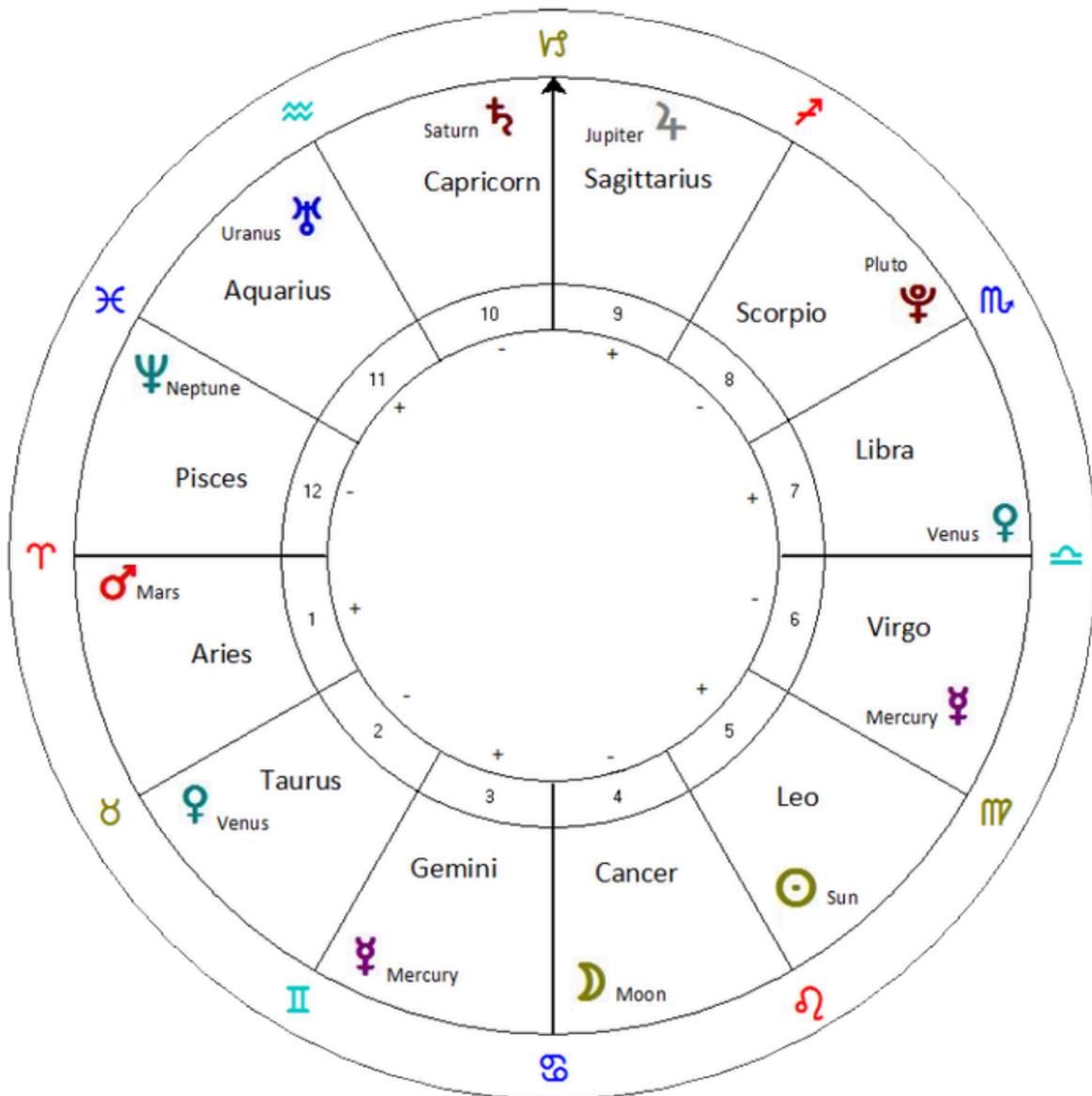
### **Archetypes are Impersonal**

An archetype can’t change. It operates impersonally, regardless of our ideas of it. What we *can* do with an archetype is, we can repress it, we can distort it by way of that repression. It can express itself in distorted ways. Anything that can be distorted implies it has an original nature. Anything that can be expressed in a distorted way means that which is natural is being repressed or suppressed in some way. We can be confused about an archetype. So, when I speak about these astrological archetypes I’m going to be predominantly focusing on the psychological soul-level element. I’m not going to be focusing so much on the physiology, on the political; it’s not my forte. My forte is the psychological, soul-level awareness of the astrological signs.

### **Evolutionary Intention and Level of Consciousness**

I’m going to speak about the evolutionary intention and potential of each sign. On the soul’s evolutionary journey we can think about each of the twelve signs as having its own learning arc, its own process of realization and learning. This actually has to be understood at every level of consciousness. A soul’s level of evolution will determine the way in which each sign, the entirety of the zodiac, the natal chart, will be engaged and played out and lived and experienced. So, the potential for realization will be different at every stage of evolution. I’ll speak about the challenges, the tendencies, the things that a soul works out within each archetypal expression, within each sign on their evolutionary journey.

Alright. With that let’s take our first look at the natal chart. We’re going to look at the natal chart with just the signs. I’m going to point out some very basic correlations: quadrants, modes, elements, polarities. The intention right now is just to introduce the chart and to make us familiar with basic associations, not to go very deeply. Once I’ve taught all of the 12 signs, I’m going to come back to speak about the quadrants, the elements, the modes, and flesh out more perspective, more detail, to really deepen our understanding of the archetypes.



### Breaking Down the Components of the Wheel

Right here we have the zodiac. Traditionally, you start it with Aries, just in the sense that Aries really does correspond to the energy of initiation and beginnings. We're going to start right here with Aries. [The order of the signs in the wheel]: Aries, Taurus, Gemini, Cancer, Leo, Virgo, Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius, Capricorn, Aquarius, Pisces. Every sign has a glyph. Now, notice next to each sign is a little "+" and "-"; it's a charge. It's the masculine and feminine, or yang/yin expression. Not gendered, but everything in the zodiac is either an outward expressive "moving toward," or more of a receptive, internalized kind of expression: Aries is yang (masculine), Taurus is yin, Gemini is yang, Cancer is yin, and so forth.

### Quadrants

We also have all of the signs naturally falling out in 4 quadrants. We'll learn about quadrants when we get into the astronomy section, but for now, let's just notice these quadrants. We have the 1st quadrant, which is the first three signs and the first three houses: Aries, Taurus,

Gemini. 2nd quadrant: Cancer, Leo, Virgo. 3rd quadrant: Libra, Scorpio, Sagittarius. And, the final quadrant: Capricorn, Aquarius, Pisces.

## **Modes**

We also have something called “the modes.” There’s the cardinal signs. The cardinal signs are the signs that begin a quadrant. So the beginning of the 1st quadrant is Aries. The beginning of the 2nd quadrant is Cancer. The beginning of the 3rd is Libra. The beginning of the 4th is Capricorn.

Then, the second sign in each quadrant is the fixed. Taurus is the fixed sign in the 1st quadrant. Leo is the fixed sign in the 2nd. Scorpio is the fixed sign in the 3rd. Aquarius is the fixed sign in the 4th.

The last sign, the ending sign of each quadrant, is mutable. Gemini is the mutable first quadrant sign. Mutable in the 2nd is Virgo. Mutable in the 3rd is Sagittarius. The mutable in the 4th is Pisces.

## **Elements**

We also have elements. Besides having a mode, each sign has a particular element of fire, earth, air, or water. The fire signs are: Aries, Leo, Sagittarius. The earth signs are: Taurus, Virgo, Capricorn. The Air signs are: Gemini, Libra, Aquarius. Finally, water: Cancer, Scorpio, Pisces.

## **Polarity**

Lastly, we’re going to look a lot at polarity. All of the signs exist in relation to its opposite. Aries is opposite Libra, so they are a polarity axis. [The remaining polarity groupings]: Taurus/Scorpio, Gemini/Sagittarius, Leo/Aquarius, Virgo/Pisces. Polarity is actually a very, very important part of our study. When I teach the astrological signs, the way I’m going to teach them is by their polarity groupings. I’m going to start with Pisces and then go to Virgo. Then I’m going to go to Aries and then Libra. The reason why I do this is because each polarity, in a sense, is its own total archetype.

The axis of a polarity, the Virgo/Pisces polarity, for example, corresponds to an entire axis of life experience. We can call that the “axis of service.” The Aries/Libra axis is the “axis of self-other.” And you really can’t understand one archetype without understanding its polar opposite archetype as well.

The intention in polarity isn’t for each sign to become one another, but each sign has to be in “right relationship” to its polarity in order to be healthy. Otherwise, when any domain of consciousness becomes polarized, it’s actually repressing part of what’s natural. When Aries becomes all about “Me, me, me, me, me,” it misses out on Libra which is, “Well, there are other people here too.” When Pisces becomes all about service and unconditional love and giving and surrender and letting go, it can actually lack the healthy and necessary discrimination which is Virgo, and so forth. So, I find that studying and learning through polarity is a very rich, very useful way to delve deeply into these signs.

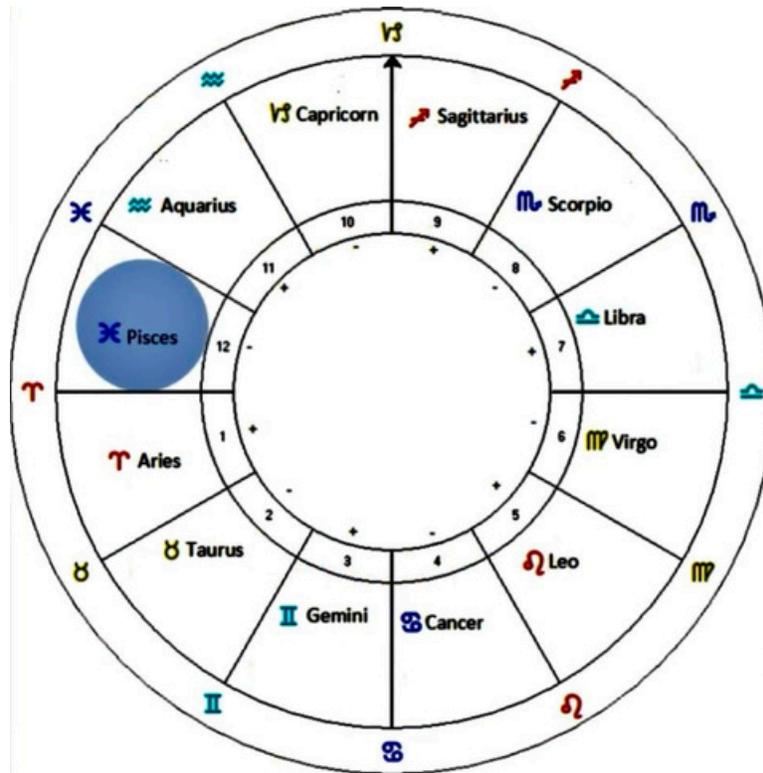
One of the assignments for this segment is to simply look at your chart. Get familiar with the signs. What signs in your chart seem to be really emphasized? How many of the particular

elements do you have? How many of the particular modes do you have? Just start observing some of the patterns that we see manifest in a chart. Are there certain planets in signs that are opposite each other; meaning, do you have a lot of polarity in your chart? These are things to start noticing.

Okay, let's delve in with Pisces and Virgo.

# Pisces

## Pisces



Welcome to Pisces. We're starting with Pisces instead of the more traditional Aries because, to me, Pisces is really the starting point and the ending point. You can say that Pisces contains all of the signs, because Pisces itself represents consciousness itself.

Pisces corresponds to the Source, the Truth, the Oneness, that which is inherently true. It's traditionally thought of as the last sign, but we can also think of it as the culminating sign, the sign from which *all* emerges. Pisces, at the core, represents what is *always* here now. I really like to set a foundation in Pisces and then to go into Aries, which is more of an individuating quality. But for me, starting in Pisces really puts attention to what is essentially true and sets more of a spiritually minded starting point for our studies.

Pisces is a water sign. It is mutable. It's at the end of the fourth quadrant. Again, we can think of Pisces as at the end of the entire chart, but of course it's a circle. Even though it corresponds to the culmination, the totality, it is just one of the 12 signs. And that's the mystery and the beauty of the zodiac that, in the end, it is just a circle. One sign isn't more spiritual, more evolved, or more important than any of the others. You can have a sign like Pisces that corresponds to, and reflects, the idea of Totality, the Oneness; and it's just 1/12th of the zodiac. It's a fascinating thing to think about.

### **Pisces is Truth**

Pisces corresponds to what is ultimately meaningful. And it points to the inherent knowing within all beings that there's a thing called Truth. Now, truth means Truth. It's not a concept.

It's not a philosophy. It's not even something you can grasp or hold. It's like, in the *Tao Te Ching* it says:

*The Tao that can be told is not the eternal Tao;  
The name that can be named is not the eternal name.*

Having said that, I'm going to use a lot of words and names to describe Pisces.

Pisces *is* the Tao. And, the poetry of this whole lesson on Pisces is that you really, at the same time, can't possess it. It's both everything and nothing. When we tune into Pisces, we tune into what is essentially true.

### **The Truth is Everywhere**

So, this Truth is within all beings and is inherent to all creation. This is why it is everything. Because wherever you look, that is where Truth is. Wherever you look, that's where God is.

There's that story of this one teacher from the Sikh tradition that went to a place of worship and he bowed in the wrong direction and someone said, "Hey! You're bowing in the wrong direction," to which he replied, "Show me where God is not and I will not bow there."

So, God/Goddess is everywhere. And nowhere. It's nowhere because, the moment we try to possess something as being ultimately meaningful, it dissolves and slips out our fingers. It's like trying to grab water and pick it up, and be like, "Here! Here's a feather. Here's a cup!" It's actually just water and will fall out of your hands.

The nature of Truth itself is that which is inherent. And so, it can never be controlled or possessed with a concept of it. The inherent connection and knowing within all beings, of Truth, of God, of Love, of Unity, reflects the idea that we all come from Source, that the essential nature of reality, that which we are awakening to, is Oneness.

We actually learn that there are no separate awakenings happening. There are no separate minds here. So, we begin to develop an appreciation and awareness within Pisces, that there is just *one* journey, there's only one here, and this Oneness you is on a journey of remembering itself.

This is programmed within everyone. We may not be conscious of it, but this Pisces impulse within all beings is the impulse to know itself, to know its Creator, to know the Oneness. We all have this sense, this ancient ancient memory of perfect peace, perfect wholeness, a non-conflicted state of being; thus, all beings want to know that. All beings are yearning to return to the state of being-ness, of peace, of wholeness, of unconditional love.

### **Disillusionment**

What often happens is, a soul will give the things of this world meaning, absolute meaning. It can be a relationship, it can be a job, it can be a teacher, it can be an idea of making more money, it can be something you think about something or someone. You can think about this in how many children have this fantasy around Santa Claus. I was speaking to a boy recently who's kind of on that transition point, where he is realizing soon that Santa Claus is not a thing. This

boy really wanted to know that I believe in Santa Claus because he has so much meaning and value invested in Santa Claus being real. If we unpack that a little bit, “I need Santa Claus to be real because I’ve associated meaning with Santa Claus.” Santa Claus means gifts, means “I’m a good boy,” means “I’m loved.” And we do this with all kinds of things. This is why Pisces is everything and nothing.

To really emphasize why it’s nothing, you can look at anything and make it a god, which is different from finding God everywhere. When we look towards something and we say, “This is the ultimate meaning, this is where I will find peace and joy and fulfilment.” It’s a sand castle, and it will be washed away the moment the waters of Truth come in to reveal Reality. Thus, this creates a situation for many souls, within the realm of Pisces, called disillusionment.

## **Responding to Disillusionment**

Disillusionment is a very difficult experience. Disillusionment essentially says that to which we have given meaning, no longer stands. What had fuel in it, kept us moving, gave us a sense of hope and meaning and purpose, it’s not there anymore. The extent to which our sense of living was dependent on that, it can create two experiences, or the soul can respond in one of two ways.

- **Despair and Futility**

One is total despair and futility. This can correspond to a nihilistic, nothing matters, nothing has any meaning, attitude. This is a very common psychological and emotional response to a deep disillusionment experience.

- **Doubling Down**

The other is to double down on the illusion, like “No! This is real!” There’s the story of Sabbatai Zvi, who was a false messiah, somewhere in Europe several centuries ago. People really believed him. He had a lot of followers amongst the Jewish people. Sabbatai Zvi manifested during a particular time when there was a lot of persecution. This has been a common phenomena amongst the Jewish people. There was a lot of persecution, so we were hoping for something. We were hoping for the messiah, *mashiyach*, hoping for the Promised Land. There’s always been something within the consciousness of the Jewish people, yearning for some magical day or moment or person where we will all be saved. So, Sabbatai Zvi was considered to be the messiah, and at some point he was confronted, I think it was by the sultan, under Islam rule, he was confronted with the choice between either death or conversion. He decided on conversion. Imagine how confusing, how disillusioning this would have been for many of his followers. Now, Sabbatai Zvi, the alleged messiah of the Jewish people, is now Islamic. And actually, many of his followers converted with him.

- **Finding Ultimate Meaning & Truth Right Here, Right Now**

So, this is a situation where, when meaning is placed in something other than *right now*, it’s going to set a point, at some point in the journey, where that which gave us fuel and meaning will exhaust itself. What do I mean when I say, “When meaning isn’t placed in *right now*?”

We have to appreciate that, whatever is true, must be true *right now*. Wherever God is, it must be *right here, right now*. Salvation must be here *right now*. If it isn’t, if ultimate meaning is

found somewhere, or some place, or in something, then it can't be ultimate meaning; it's either absolute or it's not. So, experiencing that, becoming available and open to that, means getting curious about the present moment, forming a relationship and a devotional connection to the Truth, *right now*.

- **Reorienting to Source**

The other response to disillusionment is to reorient our attention towards the Source of all things. It's sort of one of those things, an invisible but very real kind of dynamic, orienting to the Source of all things; meaning, it's unconditioned, regardless of circumstance, regardless of what is or is not happening. The reorientation brings individuated consciousness, it brings the soul into direct communion with its Source, ultimately with the truth of its own being. When this happens, it can be a complete game changer.

Most of us, moment to moment in our lives, are either living with a sense of haziness or dullness, a mundanity. "Yeah, life – mundane, nothing interesting happening here." Maybe there are moments of inspiration and creativity and feeling enlivened by some sort of hope, some sense of meaning and value that's really entered our hearts, but that goes away as well.

To actively direct our attention and cultivate a relationship to what is essentially true and ultimately meaningful means that we are bridging a gap. So, the other response to disillusionment is to be so deeply humbled that the soul reorients its attention to the Source of all things, to what is ultimately meaningful, and this to which we orient is not a condition. You can't find it in a thing or in a particular place. So, there's this experience of sometimes being in the dark, being in the void.

## **Emptiness and Revelation in Pisces**

My friend and colleague Stacie Pazura (2011) once described Pisces beautifully:

*When one's inner sense of ultimate meaning has seemingly been severed and no longer transferring to the circumstantial context of the life one is living, this can be analogous to removing all gasoline from the car and then demanding it to drive.*

It's being in a state where we're being asked to move, to go as if we're a car, but there's no gas in it. That which has otherwise provided a sense of meaning and purpose, there's nothing there. It can feel dry and empty. Pisces can correspond to a profound sense of emptiness and futility in life, like it's all meaningless and mundane, to the point that we can almost lose the capacity to feel, just witnessing the things of life.

This can often happen where there is such an effort to do good, to help people, to make a difference, to believe in something that's meaningful: doing volunteer work, joining this organization, doing this relief work, devoting yourself to this, giving all the time. And then people take advantage of it; then natural disasters come and wipe everyone out anyway. There are these experiences within Pisces where it can feel like, "What's the point?" It can very much manifest on an inter-relational level: "What's the point of loving if (fill in the blank)? What's the point of loving anyone if they are just going to get sick again or not help themselves?" There can just be a sense of "Why even bother?"

This can be a very dangerous psychology. The effect of disillusionment, of losing a sense of meaning and deeper purpose in life, can actually be a very dangerous psychology. It can lead to a deep sense of losing a connection to one's own life as well. So, having no fuel but then being asked to go, it's where the soul needs to draw upon, and connect with, a source of meaning beyond itself, beyond its knowing, beyond its understanding. This is the power of Pisces; it's not *of this world*, it's not *a thing*, but it's everywhere and everything because of that. The Tao is formless, yet it's everywhere. This means faith.

### **Faith and Revelation**

Cultivating faith here means drawing upon a connection to what you maybe cannot see, what there's no evidence for, you can't grab it or possess it, but you are giving your whole being to it. It resonates with the principle of "I'm going to give myself to peace first, to the Truth of Love, before I even understand, before I've got this figured out, before I have resolved all of my problems."

In Pisces, there is revelation. Revelation shows us that what we saw as a problem was not, it was just in our mind. The illusions that we perceive in the world, the problems and the suffering, everything that we witness, when we try to heal it or fix it on the level of confusion (you might have moments of things feeling good, but then moments of things not feeling good), Pisces invites us to step away from the seeming realness of the things and experiences of the world, even to step away from the guru. Right? You can have a deep devotional relationship with a teacher who's performing miracles, who knows everything about you, *and* it's just a form.

### **Meaninglessness**

There's a teaching I once heard by Baba Ram Dass where someone went to this monastery in India and saw this man praying to a coconut. This coconut was painted and represented one of the deities. And this visitor saw the coconut and this coconut was filled with light. He actually saw light emanating from the coconut. He said, "Wow! This coconut is a holy coconut! This sadhu must have been praying with this coconut for years. Look how much energy is in this coconut!" And after the prayer, (this is my memory, probably not a correct memory, but the idea of the story is going to be there) after the prayer, the sadhu (the monk) took the coconut and just smashed it against a wall. And the coconut broke open. The visitor was shocked, "How can you do that to this coconut? This is a holy coconut!" And the devotee said, "Oh, it's just a coconut. I'll have more. I'll just paint another one."

There's beautiful teaching here. God is found wherever we orient towards it *and* whenever we orient towards it. Anything can be holy, anything can be infused with the sacred. We can see the holiness in anyone as well, regardless of what they look like, regardless of their condition.

### **Being an Instrument for Ultimate Meaning**

In Pisces, we learn that the things of the world have no inherent meaning. We actually give everything all the meaning that we want it to have. Nothing is meaningful or meaningless, these are all constructs of the mind. This can be very confusing, and even scary, to begin to apply this and look around.

In *A Course in Miracles*, one of the earlier teachings in the course is to look around the room and say, "Nothing I see has any meaning." That can seem very depressing, but that's actually just the first step in reorienting to the Source of all meaning. The body has no meaning. Your mind, your skill, your strengths, they have no inherent meaning on their own. The mind can say, "Oh, I'm a genius," or "I'm really strong and I'm going to do all these things," we're giving meaning, we're finding value and purpose. But these are all given. All the gifts, skills, the things of the world, they can go as quickly as they came. The learning within Pisces is to allow ourselves to be a vessel. It's where the soul learns to be an instrument and to allow The Source of all things to provide meaning for all things.

This is where miracles come from. This is where glowing coconuts come from. When attention and devotion is oriented towards where true value and meaning is, all the things of this life can be infused and oriented and dedicated to what is ultimately meaningful. What is meaningful? Love, the Truth, Oneness, wholeness, wellness. These are all the qualities of Pisces in its essential, whole nature.

Pisces ultimately reflects that which is eternally alright. There's a deep fear within all beings. Right? On our evolutionary journey we are kind of working this thing out, "What if *now* isn't okay?" Often we move through life with a foreboding sense of "there's something inherently wrong." And yet, the good news within Pisces is "No, everything is inherently right." And the journey of surrender here is orienting towards *that*, prior to the conditions, prior to life, doing the things that we do to make us feel good about it.

### **Naïveté and Innocence**

Maurice Fernandez taught a very beautiful conception of looking at Pisces through some phases. What I'm going to share is based loosely on his teachings.

Pisces initially expresses what is innocent and pure. You can think of this similarly to how you would like of a baby: innocent, pure, open, receptive, inherently trusting. It's so trusting that, without appropriate parental guidance, the baby will fall off the changing table. It has no notion at first of gravity, distance, space, and all that kind of stuff.

This innocence manifested through Pisces, for anyone, can be an inherent trust that everything is given. The fruit on the tree, the support I need, the money that I need, it's all provided. But this can also speak to a certain level of naïveté. "I'm just going to be nice to everyone. And I'm naïve in that I'm going to expect and assume and not even be able to imagine people not being nice." There can actually be a total cognitive dissonance in Pisces, witnessing people doing bad things, "Why would someone do that? Why would someone act in that way?" It can be genuinely confusing. There can be genuine confusion of, "Why am I being treated in the way I'm being treated?" or "Why are others being treated the way they're being treated? They don't deserve that." "Why are these people acting in these horrible ways? I don't get it." There's dissonance there and that can be disillusioning. It can also lead to a deep fear of opening up. There can be such a vulnerability in Pisces.

### **The Hiding Archetype**

Jeff Green often described Pisces as the hiding archetype. Pisces can hide, hiding because "I don't feel comfortable or safe in the world. There's too much going on. It's too big." In Pisces

you can feel like a little grain of sand in context of something so much greater. It doesn't matter how kind and loving you are, it seems like bad things can happen anyway. That's why, in Pisces, there can be a deep sense of futility and meaninglessness. It's very easy to start looking at the world from the perspective of "It's all random, it doesn't matter what you do."

This sense of innocence being disillusioned can actually at some point lead to a sadistic mentality. A soul can go from niceness, love, over-giving and lacking total discernment, being really hurt time and time again, to the point where the soul can flip and actually want to hurt others. A soul can also get to a point where they just don't feel, they don't have the ability to empathize or care anymore. Pisces does express these extremes of total meaning/total meaninglessness, total love and total denial of it, or total love and total seeming absence of it. There's a concept in Hebrew called *mistarot*, which means hidden. I like the idea of hidden because, in Pisces, it's either revealed or hidden, meaning that Truth isn't going to go away, but you can be in hiding. Being in hiding means you're just kind of hiding or shielding Truth. Love can't go away, but it can be clouded.

### **Building Immunity**

At a certain point, the soul learns how to build its immunity. Pisces corresponds to the immune system. It's the physical, spiritual, psychological, emotional immune system. When our immune system is strong, we are not susceptible to environmental toxins and such things. So, in whatever way for each soul, the building of the immune system is, "I'm not going to be a vulnerable, naïve, innocent being anymore. I'm going to get stronger." This is where, in Pisces, you can go from nothingness to somethingness. I've seen this very often. The person who was behind in school starts to study and does well. The person who was weak in school gets really buff and strong and starts taking martial arts.

The Pisces archetype can express where we begin to infuse our life with a sense of meaning and purpose as a result of not really having inhabited it. This is a way of dealing with, and healing, that sense of being vulnerable and unprotected and confused in life. This is an important and healthy process. The lack of discrimination, the lack of self-development, means there's no immunity. So, you can go into a crowd of people, metaphorically or literally, and just absorb *everything*. You're just absorbing everything from everyone without discrimination for: "Who to be? What to give? How to act? How am I supposed to use this vessel? What's my mind for? What is this body for? What's my knowledge for? How do I know, on my own, what to do with all of this?" There is something healing in this soul making the choice to cultivate itself, to develop itself.

### **Atrophy vs Inhabiting Life**

The idea of atrophy is a Pisces thing: Physical, emotional, psychological, spiritual atrophy. Anything that's not developed becomes atrophied, and you can't really use it. It's a necessary part of the journey for the soul to choose to inhabit life, to engage. What's interesting is, and this is how Pisces works, it's like water will flow and will fill all the crevices; it will go to the lowest spots.

### **Somebody vs Nobody**

A soul can even become an icon. They can get to a point where they themselves become a symbol of ultimate meaning and inspiration. This could be a soul that, against all odds, built their health, built their strength, and built their immunity. And now, people look up to them as a work out coach or a famous athlete that gives a lot of people inspiration. This can be anyone who's doing work or has some kind of presence in the world, where their being, their works, their body, their talents, their skill, their words, in some way becomes an instrument for collective inspiration. So then, people look up to that person. They may idealize that person or find a lot of meaning in them. This can be a place where a soul gets deluded and begins to think that there is some sort of meaning in its personal self.

A soul can go to a place where they're afraid to be a "self," to the point where then the self becomes a false god. Ultimately, the soul has to come back to a place of surrender in that place where there is fame and recognition, maybe a lot of strength and immunity. Again, there can be an issue of hiding; the soul can be overwhelmed. This could be a spiritual stage soul that develops some spiritual realization, and now everyone wants to be around them. They develop some sort of healing ability, and now everyone wants the gift of their Shakti. Everyone wants to be around this soul because they're always giving, they're full of love, they're full of good energy. You can see this at every stage of evolution: a person that comes to a place of openness and strength within their own being; and people want that. You can lose anonymity in Pisces, where you become an icon that's symbolizing something that people are giving meaning to. That can lead a soul to wanting to hide.

It's all these ways in which the soul is trying to reconcile with somebody and nobody, safety and unsafety. So, once again, the soul is ultimately learning to surrender to the Source of all things so that it's not making itself someone. It's not strategizing, "How do I deal with all the suffering in the world? How do I deal with and reconcile all the problems and pain I see all around me?"

### **Neutrality**

We learn a lesson in Pisces called neutrality. Neutrality should not be confused with coldness or an unfeeling state. Neutrality is a peacefulness that allows everything to be as it is, just letting everyone be where they are. And, in that allowing, a soul is able to orient to the Truth. A soul is able to see with love and do work as an instrument of love, not to change anyone, not to fix anyone, not to solve problems, nor to protect oneself. It's revealed and learned that a soul's deepest sense of joy and security actually comes from aligning with the work that Creator wishes to do through it. This is an important thing to think about on the Pisces journey. We are essentially reconciling between the seeming reality of the personal self and the Truth.

As we'll learn, as we move more into these teachings (especially as we move into Cancer and we learn about the Moon), the personal self doesn't exist. The personal self is just a projection of the soul: self-concept and self-image (we'll learn more about this with Scorpio and Pluto). Here, it is about allowing the ego-identity to open up to something greater than itself, to move through it, to use it.

### **Pisces through the Evolutionary Stages**

Now, for souls at different stages of evolution, of course this will express in different ways. All of these different stages and expressions can manifest at every evolutionary stage.

## **Consensus Stage**

In consensus stages, that impulse for being a conduit of love and service will often manifest through associations with churches, groups, organizations, where one can be giving indiscriminately of anything. You can give to people indiscriminately of background, race, culture, etc.

So, you're in a position where it doesn't matter what your name is, it doesn't matter the name of the people you're giving to. This is the truth of Pisces in all expressions and evolutionary stages. We will have a very common situation where souls will get involved in consensus forms of service, things like Red Cross, church groups, volunteer work, as well as jobs and professions where you're in service and you don't really have a name. It can be anything, like nursing, all different kinds of jobs where you're seeing all different kinds of people; you might even be wearing a gown or uniform. There's a certain anonymity that reflects the spiritualization of consciousness, where it's not about your individual self. The individual self is an instrument for something greater than itself, to serve indiscriminately. Of course, the lesson of discrimination is necessary for all evolutionary stages.

## **Individuated Stage**

The same is true for the individuated stages as well. The soul will always be orienting towards a way to be in service, in allowing themselves to be an instrument for something greater than themselves. The difference here is that the soul will not necessarily be orienting towards mainstream, consensus-type ways of thinking. A soul may not necessarily be working with mainstream organizations; they might be creating their own. The movement within the individuated stages is always to become more available, more applicable, more useful to more kinds of people, in ways the consensus stage isn't capable of apprehending. There's more of a global humanitarian consciousness in the individuated stages.

## **Miracles Happen**

Also, in the consensus stage, the spiritual yearning, the connection to a Source of ultimate meaning and purpose will generally be expressed through one's religion. So, miracles can happen in the consensus stage. You can find yourself in the place of giving love and find the most profound miracles. A miracle is just an effect of Love, where healing happens and wellness is restored. The giver and receiver are the One; they are one, are the same. Whenever we orientate to life in a way where we see no difference between ourselves and another, that's where miracles come in. For all souls, in every evolutionary stage, the Pisces impulse is to be an instrument, to selflessly give ourselves in Love, from Love.

## **Spiritual Stage**

In the Spiritual stages of evolution, this orients as the soul's yearning and desire to have a direct relationship with the Source of All Creation. So, Pisces here is the disillusioning of all ideas and beliefs and places where we've sought meaning, and aligning the individual will with that of Creator. As the soul evolves through the higher stages of the Spiritual stage, Pisces will ultimately express as a soul that knows itself as One with its Source. So, the way the individual self acts is as a conduit for the Will of Creator, for the Will of Love.

## **The Virgo Polarity**

Let's talk about the Virgo polarity. Virgo corresponds to discernment, analysis, and attention to detail. Pisces needs to draw upon the Virgo polarity, it needs to be able to integrate that so that there is discernment. Discernment is ultimately about learning to look at life, not according to one's thinking of it, not putting meaning towards life because one is choosing to, but learning to orient to the Source of all things to give meaning.

So, the discernment here is learning how to discern each experience, each circumstance, from the seat of Truth, not from the seat of what I think it should be, or trying to fix and save everyone and everything. We can be a constant avoider in Pisces, we can avoid suffering because we're so sensitive to it. "I don't want to look at the suffering in the world." A very common experience in Pisces is feeling so overwhelmed with suffering that it's almost like you keep your head in the clouds or your head in the sand, not wanting to look at any problems, not wanting to deal with it. Because, to actually face problems deals with the greater existential issue of "What do I do about it?" This is where the soul really needs to learn how to have a relationship with something greater than itself to inspire and guide their purpose and direction in life.

Pisces, in that sense, also corresponds to meditation. And, through the Virgo polarity, it's the meditation practices and techniques. These are ways of creating space in one's life to consciously orient one's attention beyond the world, so that the soul really learns how to orient towards the Source for all things.

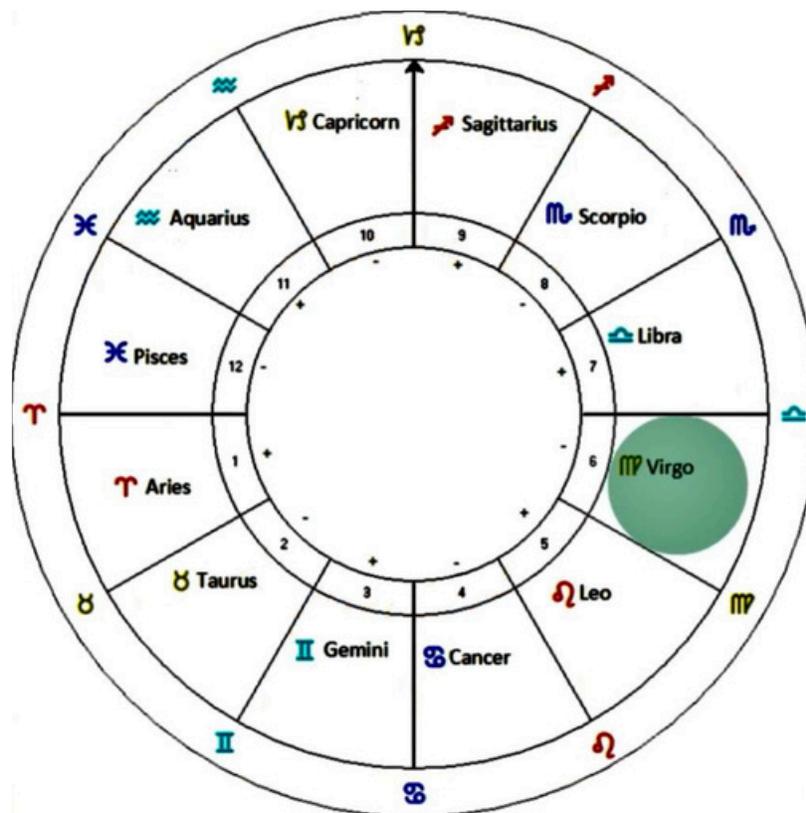
### **The Return to Love**

One final teaching on Pisces: Pisces being the One, that which is inherently True in everything, everyone, everywhere, every time. There's a teaching that all things are, at the core, a part of the greater plan of Oneness returning to Itself. All events, all circumstances, all relationships, the higher purpose within them is the return to Love. From the perspective of the soul's evolutionary journey, Pisces/Neptune (Neptune rules Pisces, and when we get to the planets we'll learn more about Neptune) corresponds to what is eternally and always True. The more we learn to orient everything back to the Source, we actually allow our life to be controlled in a sense, guided. There's a teaching that there's a plan. Everything that's meant to be will be. Life's unfolding according to the Will of the Oneness. And it's not just your life and my life; it's Life. It's One, waking up; and everything is a part of that. The more a soul starts to recognise that and trust that, the more grace and peace and miracles become available for it. Again, this can be difficult. There can be an indefinite period of time where things feel dull and unmoving and unchanging, and there's no meaning in it. But underneath is meaning; it's hidden often. The meaning and the gem of healing is often hidden. Healing is always the return to Love; it's always the return to who we are. It reveals an inherent Truth that was always there. It heals the confusion and the misperceptions of the mind.

This concludes our talk on Pisces. Let's look at Virgo.

# Virgo

## Virgo



Virgo is mutable earth. So, it's mutable. It's the very last sign in the second quadrant. It's earth. At this point, we can begin to feel the energetic quality of what it means to be earth or water. You can really see how Pisces is water. Pisces is consciousness. Water flows to reach every crevice; and it's mutable. We can feel that quality of mutability. It's unformed, it's changing. It can be anywhere, anything. We take that idea and bring it to earth now.

Virgo, being a mutable earth sign, is the accessibility and the utility and the reality of earth as it expresses in all kinds of places, things, and experiences. That's a mutable quality. As we continue through the zodiac we will begin to get a natural sense for what mutable is, what fixed is, what cardinal is. We will also notice that signs that are opposite will share the same modality. Pisces and Virgo are both mutable. Also, water is always going to be opposite earth in the zodiac.

### **Virgo's Evolutionary Intention**

The evolutionary intention in Virgo is to do your best, do what you can, work on it; simple as that. We learn in the domain of Virgo that there is the need for the soul, in the body, having this human experience, to be in presence, to be in relationship with the physical reality that it's inhabiting.

There's a need to groom. There's a need to do chores and take care of basic routines. Our relationship to all of those things allows our life to function. Thus, Virgo really focuses on detail. Virgo is the archetype of detail. And so here, consciousness is orienting and learning to bring a

lot of attention, attentiveness, and devotion to all the details of one's life, and where there is a need for maintenance. What this implies is that there's not just a need for maintenance, but a psychological need for openness and humility to do the work.

### **Overwhelm and Avoidance Through Distraction & Procrastination**

One psychological dynamic that can manifest in Virgo is a perception of there being so many things to do, so much to clean, so many things to fix, that it becomes overwhelming and the soul just doesn't do it at all.

I once had a dream that I was in a garden and one of my dear friends and teachers was with me. The garden was full of weeds. It was outgrown. He just very lovingly and simply bent down and picked one up. The teaching of that is "You are where you are. And the task in front of you is the task in front of you." Jeffery Wolf Green says "The value is in the effort, not in the result, not in where you are trying to go, not in some sort of ideal ending point, but just doing what you can."

There's a yogi tea bag that says "When the time is on, you act. And the pressure will be off." This creates a sense of, "Okay, I'm doing it. I'm starting." And just in doing what we can, in getting started with the work that's in front of us, it creates a sense of ease and order in consciousness.

We have a dynamic of denial. Denial just says, "I don't want to look at the things that I need to do." Dealing with the psychology of overwhelm and avoidance, not wanting to do the task in front of us, often leads to a perpetual state of crisis, looking at all the things that we don't want to do.

The tendency here is procrastination. There is either a video or something I read from Jeff Green that says "You can read a sleazy magazine, or just magazines, and distract yourself from doing your work." Today, this can be Facebook. You can be watching all kinds of things that are just distracting you.

That psychology of distraction is a way of the soul keeping itself from actually showing up *now*, to simply take the next step.

### **Humility - There's Work To Do**

Taking the next step is a humbling thing. It means, "Oh, I'm not perfect yet. My life conditions aren't perfect, aren't ideal, and there's still so much more work to do." This is why Virgo *is* about humility. A lot of souls will think about Virgo as corresponding to this idealized state of purity and humility. It actually often comes about through the soul learning (and this is the learning arc of Virgo) that it's got work to do. It's got issues. Things aren't going to fix themselves.

### **Pisces Escapism, Virgo Avoidance**

Let's contrast this quality of avoidance and denial within Virgo, let's contrast that with Pisces. Pisces avoidance is more of an escapism. "I'm going to stay in this dream reality." It can also very much be watching tv, distracting oneself, but staying in this bubble of illusion, painting a world that actually isn't real. It's actually a delusion. So, in Pisces there's more of an existential

need to escape from the challenge and the suffering of the world, to not face a deep sense of void and emptiness and futility in one's life, or deal with the suffering within and without. Whereas, with Virgo it's actually quite the opposite. It's, "I don't want to deal with myself. I don't want to deal with how screwed up I feel, with how much of a mess I am, with how many issues I have." It's like dealing with the practical needs of one's reality. So, a very common expression of avoidance would be alcoholism. This can be a Pisces thing too, but the psychology behind it is very different.

Any kind of substance orientation with Pisces is generally about escaping and avoiding reality. Here in Virgo, there's actually an underlying sense of guilt and an underlying, "I don't feel worthy, I don't feel good enough, there's something wrong with me. So, instead of healing and doing what I can to bring healing to the areas that need work, I'm just going to avoid it because looking at it hurts too much."

### **Masochism**

There's a deep psychology of self-deprecation at the core of this, and this leads to the psychology of masochism. Masochism here can be a psychology rooted in guilt, of hurting oneself, creating conditions for oneself that are inherently unsupportive and unhealthy, but doing that almost in a way to perpetuate a crisis, to perpetuate conditions that are not conducive to wellness, that are not functional. It's a way of the soul saying, "Yeah, I am screwed up. I am screwed up."

To actually bring consciousness to one's reality, and to begin to address it and take the next step and do what's needed, it opens the soul to a very rich and important field and journey of healing. So, healing in Virgo comes from that place of humility that says, "Oh, I am where I am and I have work to do. I can't avoid this."

Being in denial can easily say we're going to find all kinds of rational excuses for why not to do the thing that we need to. These excuses can go in two directions. Either the excuse is to rationalize to ourselves, "I'm not ready, I'm not good enough or prepared enough." This can show up where we have work to do. For example, you're a teacher and have to write a book. These are the things you need to do. There's a sense of, "I'm not ready or good enough." (We'll tune into it a bit more, in a bit.)

The other can be the excuse of, "Well, the conditions aren't right for me. I can't do yoga because I can't really touch my toes. I can't clean the house because it's too messy." There are all kinds of ways in which the soul will create excuses to avoid itself, to avoid the feelings that arise about oneself. "I'm a mess. I'm not fit. I'm not well." To move towards wellness, towards cleanliness, towards alignment means actually facing those deeper emotions that one may have about themselves.

### **The Work We Have To Do**

Virgo also corresponds to the work that we have to do. We all have our work. This work doesn't have to be some sort of "big deal" work. As I mentioned, it corresponds to our routines, our chores, our maintenance, our grooming. It can also be, if you're a healer or in some kind of service role, it's anything in your life that requires showing up and bringing attention to detail and cultivating.

So, your work is also a Virgo thing. This is not your profession, necessarily. It's not necessarily your career. A lot of people associate Virgo with vocation. What that really says is that these are particular skill sets that you're developing. That's what happens in Virgo. If you do anything, every day, with humility and effort and the willingness to grow and perfect your technique to get better at what it is that you do, you are going to become good at it. On the other hand, if you avoid doing that, you are going to deepen this sense of there being a lot to do, and you'll feel lost to the cause. You will end up hurting yourself. You will create an unhealthy condition.

Virgo can reflect the archetype of a person who's in denial. They're not taking care of their body, they don't smell very good, they're not grooming. On the other end of all of that is a soul who has this potential to heal, to bring many gifts to the world, to do work that will bring benefit to themselves and to others. There's a profound humility in stepping forward and getting out of that place of, "I'm not good enough. I'm not ready enough. The conditions aren't right," or whatever excuses the soul may perpetuate.

### **Master and Apprentice**

With the work that a soul has to do, the soul learns to cultivate a mentality of apprenticeship. We learn to acknowledge that "I am learning, I am apprenticing." Virgo corresponds to the archetype of the master and apprentice, and the soul can really be both. Starting off as an apprentice, you know that you have a lot to learn. If you're beginning to look at charts, you can jump into it and realize, "Oh my Gaia! There's a lot of responsibility. All these details, all these pieces! Let me start from the ground, let me start from the bottom, so I can really learn proficiency." And what happens is, through practice, through training, really getting involved and doing the work (Right? Studying, taking a course, beginning to do sessions, maybe not charging at first, or just asking for small donations), then it grows and you realize. "Oh! I'm actually able to provide a service here."

The mastery that a soul eventually comes into is not necessarily about mastering a field. "I've mastered astrology. I've mastered qigong. I've mastered dishwashing." You are never going to. In fact, no one is ever going to be a master of a thing. The mastery we learn in Virgo is the mastery of ourselves. This happens through doing our work. We learn how to be in relationship to our work, so that we are bringing forth our medicine. It's healing, it's clarifying, it's supportive.

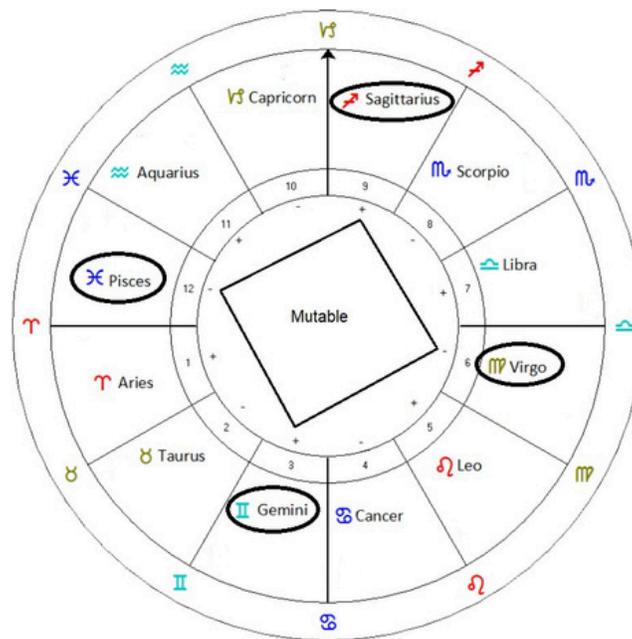
You may not do the dishes perfectly, but you're always improving your technique; which means, you are always opening to a greater consciousness and inward capacity to self-improve, thus cultivating your character. You may not be a perfect astrologer. You may be weak in some techniques, but you're always cultivating and developing yourself. You're always cultivating more self-awareness, willing to correct, willing to look at the areas that need work. In that sense, the medicine and the benefit that's offered is more and more refined. There's a profound teaching for a soul, through Virgo, in really surrendering the fruits of its work.

### **Imperfection and Purification**

I have a lot of Virgo, Sagittarius and Pisces stuff in my chart. For me, the Virgo very much reflects a karmic dynamic of guilt, specifically related to the use of my speech. There's a strong awareness of when I say something that isn't accurate, or when there is lack of integrity in the

words, or if there's another motive or trying to appear a certain way. That awareness has, for me, resulted in a very torturous inner relationship to my work as an astrologer, as a soul guide, as a teacher, not wanting to do it at times. The Virgo purification that I experienced in creating this course (which I resisted for a very, very, very long time) is realizing that I'm not going to be perfect. It's through showing up and doing our best that we learn.

So, this is part of my purification, to be teaching and doing this work. After I taught Pisces, I thought, "Oh. I forgot to mention dreams. I forgot to mention drugs. And I feel like I could have gone deeper into the psychology of escapism. So, do I re-do it? Do I add an extra video? Do I try to put it somewhere else in the middle? But then I'll be recording on a different day; I'd have to wear the same shirt..." All these things come up. I want it to look perfect and seamless, but it's not going to be. So, then I actually realized that, as I'm talking about Virgo, there's a natural flow for me, to be speaking about Pisces in relation to Virgo. I realized, "Oh, the teachings are coming out."



### The Mutable Square Tension Energy

And, just to offer this perspective, when we talk about the modes, there's a square between all of the modes. We have Sagittarius, Pisces, [Gemini], and Virgo. There's a square from one to another, 90 degrees from one to another. We will start to understand and learn that 90 degrees is a tension energy. When we can open that tension, things flow.

Sagittarius, in the middle of Virgo and Pisces (this is very much what my chart looks like), is spontaneous, it's intuitive, it's in flow. Virgo wants to get it all organized. It wants it to look in a way that will create, internally and psychologically, a sense of organization, so then one can feel good about themselves. Pisces is surrender, "Whatever your will is, not how I think it's supposed to look." Sagittarius is just, "Follow your intuition, whatever comes natural, and it all works out."

This is an ongoing lesson. It really reflects, at the core, the need for Virgo to let go of its ideas of control. We can say that Pisces is letting go of control; Pisces is surrender. It's learning to defer

one's personal ideas and illusions of reality to a Greater Will. So, we pray, we open up to align with something greater than our own making, to inspire us and use our body, our mouth, our words. In that sense, Pisces is sort of like, "You're just a vessel and you're being used. There's no one there." Then you go to Virgo and it's like, "Yeah, but I want all of my shoes nicely organized. I want my videos to look this way. I want it to be organized in this particular way." Then life is simply, "As you're cultivating and working on yourself, you're not going to get it right." The simple journey is to make the corrections that you can, make it work. But there's a discernment piece; at a certain point, Virgo has to let go of its fixation on perfection, and just surrender. The job is done. The work is done.

### **Healing Through Showing Up in Service**

I often think of Virgo as this archetype of... the best way I can describe it is, "You're showing up. You don't look great. You can look better. You can smell better. Your life can be more organized. Your room can look better. Everything can be organized more efficiently. And there is often this immanent sense of the knowledge of where everything can be improved." In fact, in Virgo, there can be a hyper-awareness of everything that isn't aligned, or anything that's not in integrity, anything that needs to be adjusted. It's easy for consciousness to get fixated on that. At the same time, the soul is just showing up, they're doing their work. And there's a beautiful healing that happens in that.

This heals a lot of the patriarchal conditioning that we find within Virgo. A lot of patriarchal conditioning really points to the ideals of perfection and purity. This is why the virgin archetype corresponds to Virgo. You think of a virgin as someone who doesn't have sex, but the original meaning of virgin is someone who is sovereign and whole onto themselves. There is a profound sense of respectability in Virgo, where a soul is claiming their own sovereignty, claiming their own Divinity, and showing up to serve in a place of wholeness, not trying to fit into some ideal of perfection and purity. By the way, this idealization of purity, in Pisces, is very much this idea of, "God is out there, inaccessible, far away." So, it's like, "Help me!" waiting for a saviour, where we forget that we have a direct connection to the Source.

### **The Psychologies of Virgo**

In Virgo, there can be a deep psychology of lack, not lack in terms of "I don't have the physical things that I need." That can be a part of it, but that's not directly what it's about. It's a psychological lack, feeling a lack and a deficiency within oneself because Pisces is the opposite. "God is so far away. And here I am, (Virgo) I'm crawling on all fours, and I'm eating the dirt, and I'm sweeping..."

There was this man, a very interesting individual, who lived in the city that I once lived in. I would often see him on the streets, crawling on all fours, picking up trash, just picking up trash. I was a lot younger when I knew him. I haven't thought of him until now, I would love to reconnect with his energy. It would be great to talk to him now. I would talk with him sometimes, and he would engage for a moment and then shift back to continuing to pick up trash. I'm very curious about this individual, I have no particular judgement or interpretation. But, it's like, that can be the energy of Virgo. This could either be a saint (who knows, this could be a soul who's just doing their work to pick up trash and you're in the lowest places, dealing with the details of life), or it could be a psychology of lowness. "I just have to always fix and clean and heal and deal with things." And that can be linked to a sense of guilt. But the humility

that comes with being low is like Jesus said, “The last will be the first,” the psychology of being low, of not being done, of having more work to do, and to bring an attitude of presence and willingness.

In fact, there’s a deep teaching in Virgo around cultivating a psychology of completion even though there’s more work to do so that our attention isn’t always stuck in there being more and more and more; we’ll never rest. But, to be content and to feel complete with what you are doing right now means to feel complete with who you are, which is to know oneself as whole and perfect and well inherently. Yes, there are things to heal, there are things to work on, and the soul’s journey through Virgo is to just do your best and take one step at a time.

### **Masochism and Sadism**

Masochism and sadism are both Pisces/Virgo. Masochism in Pisces is the depleting and giving of oneself, and sacrificing oneself. That same dynamic can manifest in Virgo, but here it’s a lacking of discrimination in terms of what work to do. It’s living in a way where one is constantly doing busy work, and this can be a distraction of what is of essence. If you have a list of things to do, the masochism here can express as doing all the things that aren’t important, like answering all the emails, dealing with all the little things, organizing your equipment. Meanwhile, there’s a book you want to write that you haven’t started.

There’s a need to learn how to create routine in one’s life that allows the soul to account for what’s important, to bring a lot of attention and energy and cultivation to what’s most important *first*, and then all the other things second. That way, when we give importance to what’s of greatest value, we cultivate our spirit, we cultivate our dharma, we cultivate a healthy sense of direction. One of the ways of holding back and creating difficulty for oneself is, “I’ll do the important things once all the other stuff is taken care of.” Uh-uh! [Holds up index finger and shakes head “no”] You have to switch that completely. Do the important thing *first*. Let everything else serve *that*.

The sadism with Virgo basically says, “My life is screwed up. Everything’s wrong. And it’s your fault.” This is just a way of deflecting self-responsibility. The masochism is, “Everything is wrong. It’s my fault. There’s something wrong with me and I don’t want to deal with it.” Whereas, the sadism is, “It’s all *your* fault.” This creates a need to control others. A soul can be incredibly critical of other people, of the job other people are doing, and get very tense about how other people are behaving. “I can’t do my work if your shoes aren’t organized. I need everyone to fall into line. I need everyone to act a certain way to help me avoid dealing with my actual inner sense of being messed up.”

### **Routine and Functionality**

What is very useful for Virgo is to learn how to create the conditions that are conducive to a peaceful state of mind. That means simply doing the next thing that’s necessary. You might want to shower first, clean your room first.

In fact, Virgo corresponds to all the things that we need to do, to do the things that we need to do. If you’re going to eat food, you’re going to need a clean kitchen. If you’re needing a clean kitchen, you’re going to need a space for everything, you’re going to want to find ways to organize. So, you’ll bring thoughtfulness into your equipment and to where things go. If you’re going to want to teach, you’re going to need to eat food first. So, all the things that we want to

do require all the other things that are necessary to get there. Again, the creation of routine, which will include one's practices, one's grooming, one's chores, all the things that are relevant for one's life, can actually be a very beautiful and empowering and enlivening process.

### **Neglect Leads to Crisis**

There are two things that can happen here. One is, the lack of healthy routines, the lack of healthy chores and daily practices in one's life, can easily perpetuate a state of crisis. This state of crisis simply happens when the essentials aren't being addressed. Like, you don't take care of your oral health, and unaddressed oral health affects the rest of your body, which affects everything in your whole life. The more the basic details are neglected, the more it's leading to a state of dis-ease. I've actually noticed on my own soul journey that, when there are certain things that are not being dealt with, it's sort of a sign, it's a red flag, that things are falling apart. If I'm trying to progress and do my work and accomplish all the things I want to accomplish (even in relationships, professionally, everything in my life, *everything, everything*), if the basics are not being dealt with, it's a red flag. And eventually, it leads to a stage of crisis, where everything begins to fall apart. But it's happening because I'm not present for it.

It's like, we work with the extremities first. You know, the hands get cold, which is a sign that there's a need to bring nourishment and warmth to the body. First, the hair falls out, it changes colour, and loses its shine. That's a symbol, an external expression of a deeper deficiency in the body. So, the externals show up. Is your room a mess? Are the dishes stacking up? These are little things to attend to. What is the nature of your environment? What's the nature of your body? What's the nature of your relationships? What is the nature of your work? What is the nature of your money? What is the nature of how you feel? And so, all of this becomes an invitation to course-correct and start over again. Thus, the process of creating routine and rhythm in one's life that is healthy and nourishing can really enliven a soul.

### **Purpose and Meaning - Is it Working?**

The other pattern would be a routine and functionality that is void of purpose and meaning. This can be, you wake up, you have your routine, you sip your tea, you do your meditation, you clean your room. But it carries with it a sense of servitude. You don't really want to do those things, but you need to. It's like you're living in some kind of regimented environment where you're waking up in the army every day. There can be a sense of orderliness but, if it's coming from a forced place, if there's no joy in it, if you're not feeling a sense of alignment and ease and healthfulness, then there's a real need to reflect on that. You can do your yoga practice every day, but is it actually working for you? Everything in life, you have to ask that question. "Is it working? What's my intention, and is it working?" Then, if it's not working, just be willing to adjust. Maybe, before you do yoga, it's actually more about just sitting quietly for a while. Maybe that's what your system needs. Or, before you do qigong, instead of just making yourself do qigong, maybe do some cardio first to open up and loosen your body a little bit. The ability to adjust and flow with it can lead to patterns of trying to control too much on the one hand, and letting go of effort on the other.

I had a dream before I taught this course where I was told that I need to put more weight into my work and laugh at myself more. Michele reminded me of that a couple times in the past couple weeks, and it was so helpful for me. Because, as I am putting more weight into my work, which means what? Better camera equipment, doing more promotional work, building a

platform, creating the whole curriculum. The laugh at yourself part is, none of it is going to work out perfectly in the beginning. Nothing that I've endeavoured to do has been what I wanted it to be. It's actually been a really deep part of my journey of letting go of control and remembering to be light-hearted, remembering to laugh at myself because it brings me back to "What is this for and is it working?" That really allows me to let go of all the things that weren't perfect, that weren't ideal, that I could have said or done better, and to just move on.

Then the Pisces, giving it back to God. The opportunities will present themselves to share and teach and bring forth the information, knowledge or insight in some other moment. It will happen. It's something I always find to be true.

Living in the Virgo/Pisces axis really teaches you to understand what you have control over and what you don't have control over. We have control over the effort, the things we need to do, the ways we need to show up and just do our best. We don't have control over the outcome and how well it's going to go. That's not in our hands. It's very beautiful. Working with the entirety of the axis can bring a sense of peace and quiet in one's mind. There's nothing better than to do one's work and move on.

### **Karmic Clean Up**

There's a teaching in the *Tao Te Ching* which says something like, "What is recent is easy to fix. But what is old, what is sitting for a while will take a longer time to fix and heal. The noble one does their work and moves on and lets go of it." Do your work, address it in the moment and move on. Whatever else is meant to come forward will. If there's a need to do something else, in the humility and openness for reflection, that will arise and emerge within consciousness to do.

*What is rooted is easy to nourish.*

*What is recent is easy to correct*

*What is brittle is easy to break.*

*What is small is easy to scatter.*

*Prevent trouble before it arises*

*put things in order before they exist*

*The giant pine tree grows from a tiny sprout.*

*The journey of a thousand miles starts from beneath your feet.*

*—Tao Te Ching chapter 64*

*(translation by Stephen Mitchell)*

If I said something that I immediately realized wasn't in integrity, I can fix that or I can edit it. But if I post a course and everything I said feels like a total lie and I'm just making this stuff up, that's going to take a lot more effort. And so, Virgo can really manifest for a soul where, karmically, a soul is cleaning up. Karmically, a soul is in a situation where they're facing an area in life where there's either been a lot of neglect or lack of attention to detail. There can be a lot of guilt in that. It can feel like, "Oh, there's a lot to fix." It's like if you have rice in a pot and you don't clean it right away after cooking, it will get crusty and hard, which means that you'll have to let it sit for longer. You'll have to let it sit in water, it'll make the rice softer, you'll have to

scrub it a little more. It's going to take more time, more thoughtfulness and more process, but it can't be avoided.

This is part of a deep spiritual teaching on this soul journey, of things not working. Sickness, disease, things breaking down, life not functioning, can really induce this sense of, "Ah, this is so hard. I don't want to have to do all this work." Spiritual people get sick. Crisis happens, where it feels like all of your efforts, everything that you have done or put together... You know, you can spend time writing a book and then accidentally delete it all. We have all had experiences like that. And the deeper karmic reason behind that isn't always accessible. But the answer is the same for all of us: to reconnect with "What's my work right now?" and to not force it, to not try to get everything done right away or to make ourselves heal. There can be a certain puritanicalism in Virgo, of wanting to have the perfect diet, the perfect way of living, the perfect (fill in the blank). There is so much control in that.

On the other hand, there can be such healing in Virgo by realizing the diet that works for you and being able to cultivate better bowel movements, better health, better wellness, more restfulness, feeling good. Working on the areas of "What food doesn't work for me? How can I improve? How can I make the conditions of my life feel better?" Sometimes we are faced with things that we don't know how to fix, we don't know how to heal. At different levels of consciousness we will have a different capacity to heal it.

### **Evolutionary Stages in Virgo**

In more consensus stages, when there is a problem or an issue, our way of healing it and dealing with that will resonate with consensus ways of thinking. There isn't necessarily going to be a strong capacity for innovation. So, daily practices, daily routines, how to do your work, the way a soul organizes and creates flow for their life, will simply be reflective of their state of consciousness.

Maurice Fernandez once made a really cool observation about consensus Virgo. He used to have an old forum in 2008, in the time where the forum was more popular, before Facebook was really the thing. It was an open space for people to ask questions, share charts, whatever. I remember once there was a rap video, from a rapper in the consensus stage of evolution. It was a really well produced, almost mechanical, predictable video where it sounded what you would expect it to sound like. Everything in the video was sort of perfect, but predictably so. He mentioned a cool observation— "that's consensus Virgo." You're doing your work, you're creating your art, you're producing your content, and it's going to fit a certain conformity. So, your hair, your grooming, it's all going to fit into a consensus mind-set.

Thus, there may be a lot of discomfort with things that might look dirty to a consensus mindedness. But actually, to a soul in the individuated or spiritual stages, it might be very healthy: Like bacteria. Like letting your baby put dirt in their mouth. That can be seen as bad and dirty because it's dirt. But, from a different perspective, it can be seen as, "Oh, there's lots of bacteria, it builds your immune system." The relationship that a soul has to cleanliness and dirt differs. Now, differentiate that from a karmic issue: You can be in a spiritual stage of evolution and have had a lot of sort of Judeo-Christian spiritual conditioning. You're living in a monastery for a while, where everything is really clean and pure and you shave every day and

you have a certain look and everything is always organized, where there can be a fear of germs and disorder. That can be there too.

But, in general, there is more of an openness to get dirty and to actually have a relationship to the earth (Virgo is an earth sign) where one's sense of wellness, one's sense of alignment in doing one's work in life really stems and connects with being in relationship to the earth. In fact, Virgo does point to one's relationship to the healing capacities of the earth. The earth has the ability to heal. It self-corrects all the time. The body does that. You cut yourself, it's going to heal. Trees do that. So, taking care of the earth and being cared for by the earth is a very Virgo thing. So you can have a lot of souls in individuated and spiritual stages with Virgo that will learn a lot about the earth, the healing potential of the earth, and learn how to work with the earth and the body in ways that create healing. Medicine, in general, is Virgo. In fact, Virgo corresponds to the archetype of the doctor.

### **Servitude and Slavery**

One final piece I want to speak about with Virgo is the archetype of servitude and slavery. Often Virgo will correspond to that, either literally or the psychology of it. Virgo can speak to the soul who, in the past, karmically has had a relationship to a subservient state of being. Thus, the psychology of inferiority is contained within Virgo as well, being in a subservient state of being where you're left with the dirty work, doing all the chores, doing all the details to maintain something on behalf of someone else. Or it can reflect life conditions that feel like one is in a subservient stage of being.

Virgo can correspond to superiority and inferiority. The superiority being "better than." "I'm perfect, I don't have to deal with these things." The other end of that is "Oh, there's so much I have to deal with and I'm imperfect." Very often, the soul will face a karmic reality where they have to cultivate humility and do work that will help them purify and refine their own consciousness by bringing attention to details that they otherwise neglected. So, healing the psychology of inferiority and superiority is very important in Virgo.

Another expression of the superiority in Virgo can emanate from a need to criticize everyone else, really emanating from a deeper sense of, "I don't feel good about myself so I'm going to be very critical of others and how poorly of a job they are doing," so, all the issues other people have. There can be a lot of finger pointing in Virgo, which can really bring a soul back to "Oh, I have a lot to work on."

The servitude and slavery thing also corresponds to (and this is the square between Sagittarius and Virgo) spiritual belief systems and constructs that teach (Sagittarius) ideas of spirituality that keep us low. Like, "We are sinners. We have to atone for being a sinner. There is something wrong with us." Thus, the Virgo archetype can speak to an internal sense of "*Spiritually*, there's something wrong with me, so I have to endure a life of lowness as a result of that."

### **Humility Is Not Humiliation**

The patriarchal distortion within Virgo really confuses the truth of what humility is. Humility is self-respect. Humility is sovereign. It is self-honouring. But the humility itself says, "I know that I

am here now, doing what I can now, self-improving and working on myself, but I'm showing up." That's humility: to do your job and live in peace, to forgive yourself and just do what you can, to continue, to keep on going. This deepens one's capacity to serve and heal and to be available in a good way in this life. That is not the same thing as the more patriarchal expression of humility, where there's almost this need to deprecate oneself and remind oneself of how much we've sinned and how bad we are.

There's a practice in the Jewish tradition called *selichot* which is a set of prayers that you say several times between Rosh Hashanah and Yom Kippur. These *selichot* are admittances of wrongdoing. You hit your chest and say "For the sin that I have done..." and you fill in the blank with all these sins that are listed for you. "For all of them, please forgive me, forgive us." Actually, all the *selichot* are spoken in plural, on the sins that *we* have done. There's something really beautiful about that practice actually, it's like a collective acknowledgment of where we weren't in integrity, where we weren't in alignment.

But of course, for the most part, it has become, has been taken, and is taken as this very punishing notion of, "I've sinned because I did something wrong. Let me hurt myself, let me humiliate myself so that I can be purified and forgiven."

When we take forgiveness and purification and we think of it as an external process, it actually coincides with the Judeo-Christian idea of, "I've done something wrong, so let me suffer a whole bunch to atone for the wrong things that I've done." It's a very common notion of, "You suffer, go through enough hardship, and that will purify you." When you take things that way, that's spiritual masochism. And that is very common in all stages of evolution, but you can really take that in the spiritual stage and hold this notion where we keep ourselves away from self-realization because we think, "Well, if I can endure hardship, just go through it and live out a difficult life, it will somehow purify me."

### **Healing Through Self-Awareness and Self-Improvement**

The key is to bring self-awareness into our challenges so we can begin to heal, (Virgo) do the things we need to do to self-improve, but let go of what we can't control. There are certain conditions that you can't control in life because of your karmic reality, because of the nature of your consciousness. Meaning, we need to just give ourselves to the experience and live from it, learn from it. Every experience is meant to come for a time and then go. It's here to teach us, and ultimately meant to heal us. True healing is the returning of Love.

Very often in Virgo, there can be very difficult conditions that a soul has to deal with and work with but it's part of the journey, and the unique healing that it offers is different for every soul. That's an important perspective that feels important to speak to when we look at Virgo. There is so much conditioning in the Virgo/Pisces axis that comes from the Judeo-Christian cosmology.

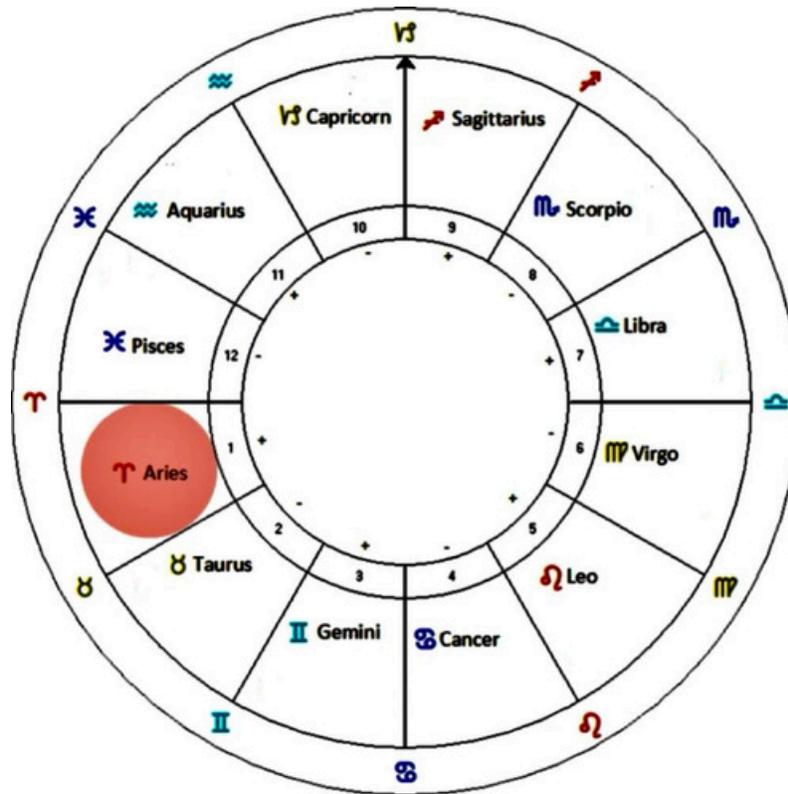
I'll share one more thing while I'm on this. Even the story of the original sin, Adam and Eve eating the fruit and then they are punished, there is a lot that I can say about that. It's a very interesting topic. That conditioning, that belief of, "We've sinned and therefore we deserve to not be in the garden." One of the punishments that Eve was given was that women now have to go through difficult childbirth. You can think of it as, "We've sinned and now we have to suffer." The other way to think of it is, "Oh, if everything is emanating from our own

consciousness, from our own choice to be separate, there's a certain point in the collective humanity where we began to decide, we began to internalize the belief that there's something wrong with us." Now there are women today that are having lovely, orgasmic, beautiful childbirths. That's a direct counter, and a profound confrontation to the story that pregnancy and childbirth has to be difficult and painful. It's the fact that there are souls who have been willing to question the assumptions of how things have to look, how things have to be, and realize, "Hmm, maybe things are difficult because of the degree to which I have not yet brought attention to where I can improve and make things better."

This completes our teachings in Virgo and Pisces.

# Aries

## Aries



Hello everyone. Let's go into Aries now. Aries corresponds to the instinct to become. Aries is cardinal, it's starting the first quadrant (every cardinal sign begins a new quadrant), and it's fire; so, combined, this is a lot of moving, a lot fiery, a lot of potent, enlivening energy. The evolutionary intention within Aries is to engage with life experience. The soul, through the Aries archetype, is simply needing to engage the open playing field of life with action, with choice. Through that engagement, it elicits a reaction from the environment. And this is the way that the soul grows and becomes self-aware along its evolutionary journey. Through action, it will experience reaction. Through doing something, it will experience the ramifications of that: you touch fire, it hurts, you learn about that; you hit someone because you're angry at them, you will learn what happens as a result of that.

### **Freedom and Autonomy**

The need within Aries is to be in motion towards one's evolutionary purpose. This archetype, in totality (which includes Aries, includes the 1st House, and the planet Mars, which we'll learn about later), corresponds to the energy needed for the soul to engage life and do what's necessary in order to fulfill its evolutionary needs. There's an inherent need for freedom and autonomy in Aries. The need for freedom and autonomy means that the soul has to feel that they can choose to do and react and respond in whatever ways are necessary. However, one of the challenges within Aries is where the need for freedom becomes a goal in its own right. "I need to be unimpeded. I need to have total freedom to express my desires, to go where I want to go." There can be a strong consciousness of defensiveness here, where the soul is perceiving a reality of an outward adversary, an adversarial reality, and is in reaction to that.

### **3 Levels of Integration in Aries:**

To unpack this a bit, let's understand the Aries archetype on three different levels of integration. This can be applied at any stage of evolution. It really just expresses the process within Aries of the soul becoming self-aware.

#### **Level 1-Raw and Instinctive**

Initially, it's just very raw. It's gross, it's unrefined, it's instinctive. This is very similar to a child or a baby that's just acting upon their impulses. "I need to feed right now. I don't want this. I do want this." The immediate reaction is clear, unambiguous; it's direct. Consciousness, in this case, is 100% oriented towards the present moment, which is kind of relieving, when you think about it. Right? It's like, "Wow!" There's something sort of, kind of, almost, totally enlightened about the clarity and directness, the honesty of that consciousness that we see in babies or young ones, that are just 100% clear, moment to moment, about what's wanted and what's not wanted, no people-pleasing, no conditioning (just yet) about appropriate or not appropriate, not repressed. You'll poop where you're sitting. You'll feed whenever you want to feed. But, if you take that into adulthood, this isn't necessarily an enlightened quality. Because, this can also express as a very undeveloped, immature, self-focused orientation.

#### **Self-Focus and Narcissism**

All of the fire signs, in general, can be understood as self-focused. They're all a little bit narcissistic, not necessarily in a bad way, but they all require a certain level of self-focus to do what they've got to do. Aries, in particular, which needs a lot of freedom and independence, can get stuck in this need for its autonomy and freedom to do what it wants to do. So, as an adult, this can be very self-focused, very self-oriented, where the soul is unaware and uninterested in the effects it has on others. It's like dancing in a room full of people and not caring if you're hitting a bunch of other people because you're just in your own process, your own thing. That need to be with the energy of the moment (which, again, is a really beautiful thing), to live in that state of being, where you're in the moment, is a very important quality on the soul journey; to be decisively where you are. But, to be blind to how you are affecting the world around you, this is a part of what Libra teaches Aries. "Okay, do what you've got to do. Walk your path. But you're not the only one here. Learn some consideration. Learn how to listen." It's taking the soul out of this really narrow fixation on "My personal needs. My desires. My will."

#### **Impulsiveness and the Creation of Karma**

In this stage, it's just purely raw and instinctive. And there's usually a lot of confrontation. If the soul perceives any kind of adversary or any kind of adversarial situation, it will be reactive to that. This can be true for your personal sense of direction or your activism (Aries corresponds to activism). "I'm trying to go here. I'm trying to do this thing. This is what I'm fighting for. And I'm charged and full of this anger, this charge, this defensive energy relative to where I see the threat is out there. So, I'm going to break some windows, and act on the whim of this instinctive energy." It can manifest sexually, acting upon a strong, instinctual, sexual impulse.

What happens with all of these situations is, there's karma. This is sort of the crisis in Aries.

There's a need to move, to stay in motion, because there's a need for freedom. And then, "Oops! I just acted, and now there are a whole bunch of things that emerged here. I've set in

motion a series of life events and experiences that I now have to integrate and respond to.” So, there’s no shortage of activity in Aries, there’s no shortage of new experiences. That’s important and it’s a big part of the journey, but this can be a challenge when it comes to the journey of acting, especially when the actions are impulsive and not very well thought out. At this stage, there’s a lack of intelligent foresight.

## **Level 2- Cultivating Self-Awareness**

In the second stage, the soul is beginning to cultivate more self-awareness. “I have all this raw energy. I’m charged. I feel anger. I feel passion. I feel desire. I feel purpose.” Aries corresponds to purpose. In the Aries archetype there’s a sense of “I have a purpose. I’m here to *do* something.” The knowledge of what that is or where that’s going isn’t necessarily refined or clarified at first for all souls; usually, it is not. So, that sense of acting upon one’s purpose, in the first level of awareness it can very much be just that sense of “I need to try out all these things and *do* things,” and it’s pretty random.

As the soul evolves, in the second stage, it’s now about “I know myself. I see that there’s something here to work with. I may not know entirely where it’s going, but I need to train. I need to learn how to harness this life force energy and use it. Because, what I’m doing with my energy, really implies the path that I’m walking.” And so, there’s the beginning of wisdom here. Aries really does develop a profound degree of intelligence, but this will happen through trial and error. This will happen through playing out life experience and realizing, “Okay, to really enact a meaningful life and fulfill my sense of purpose, this direction, this thing that I’m here to do, this cause that I want to fight for, this thing that I want to achieve; I need to learn how to harness my energy.” This is where the soul learns how to bring more thoughtfulness into its reactivity. An example can often be where a soul will study martial arts: they’re bringing some form, they’re bringing a container that allows them to use all this energy and wield it purposefully. And, usually, in most practices of martial arts, there’s a certain chivalry or nobility and responsibility that’s taught in having these skills, having this ability and to not use it for ego.

Aries represents the masculine impulse within creation; meaning, it’s not a gender thing. It’s masculine, it’s the moving out, expressing, external energy, it’s yang, Y-A-N-G. The role of that masculine energy is to disrupt the balance; it’s moving out. You’re here, and the masculine impulse is going somewhere. It’s wanting to move into something, someone, some experience. It’s initiating into the next phase of life experience. And so, there needs to be a learning of “Am I using this for good? What are the effects of my energy? What are the ramifications?” As the soul becomes more self-aware, it really learns to orient its energy in a way that’s attuned to its soul’s purpose, at the core.

## **Evolutionary Stages in Aries:**

- **Spiritual**

So, on a spiritual level of evolution, this phase will really speak to a refining, growing, self-awareness of “What is the core evolutionary program here? Why am I here?” We will learn later on that there is an important linkage between the Aries archetype and the Scorpio archetype, between Mars and Pluto. For now, I will express that Aries is conscious choice, conscious desire; it’s what we’re doing. Whereas, the Scorpio archetype is predominantly

unconscious; it corresponds to our soul psychology, the underlying desires that bring us into this life, that we're playing out. With Scorpio, we'll feel strong emotions, we'll be impelled towards certain things and people, and we'll be impelled away from certain things and people. All that is pointing to the deeper psychology of desire, which implies craving and aversion. In Aries, we're not working on a deeply subconscious level of psychology. Aries is really "what we're doing," but it points to a deeper psychology. The choices we make, at the core, point to what it is we're really going for. There isn't, at first, a lot of self-awareness. But as a soul evolves, and especially during the latter stages of evolution, there's a greater capacity to have a conscious awareness of one's soul program. Thus, through Aries, actions become more refined, more clarified, more claimed with the space of self-leadership.

- **Consensus**

In consensus stages of evolution, there's an awareness of "Okay. Here's what I want to do: I want to grow a business. I want to run for political office. I want to make more money. How am I going to do that? Well, I'm going to have to learn how to cultivate courage and confidence and certainty and leadership. It means, it's not going to be very useful for me to be reactive, to express my anger in certain ways, to live in a way where my desires will get the best of me. I'm going to have to learn how to wield it and channel it."

- **Individuated**

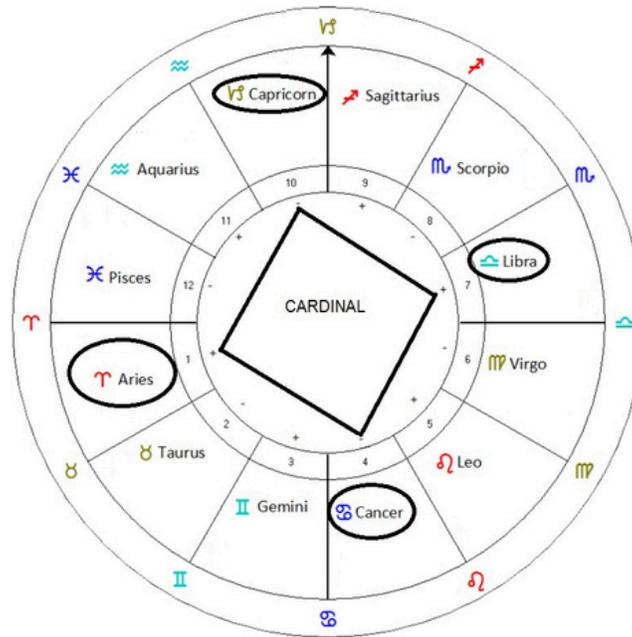
In individuated stages, "If I'm angry at 'The Man,' if I'm fighting for an activist cause, how effective is it if I'm angry and stressed out and running on adrenaline all the time?" This is a part of what the soul is really working out within Aries, in general. We don't necessarily realize at first that the energy with which we do what we do is the path that we're creating. Doing what we do, itself is not "the doing," it's not the objective "I'm doing X, Y, and Z," it's the energy that we bring to it. That's the deeper teaching of life, really; it's always about the present moment. So, if you're fighting a cause, but you're fighting it with stress, with anxiety, with anger, with defensiveness, if that's the life that we're living, that's the life that we're creating.

So, in this second stage of growth and self-awareness within Aries, there's greater self-knowledge and the ability to refine and cultivate and shape one's life in a way that is working, in a way that's useful.

### **Level 3- Becoming a Leader**

In the third stage of development, the soul is now a leader. This doesn't necessarily mean that they're a leader of other people, it means that they're a leader of themselves. Coming into a state of self-leadership is so essential within Aries. Self-leadership means, "I am confident. I am courageous. I can trust my instincts. Which means, I know if I need to withdraw and retreat; I know if I need to charge full ahead." There can be this issue with Aries in not knowing how to retreat. This is linked to the evolutionary need to stay in motion in life, to be engaging moment to moment with choice, to orient towards one's evolutionary journey, so that life can unfold. This process of life unfolding means to not act, to not make a choice, to not be decisive about something, but to sit with it for a while. To be in that state of strong feeling, strong reaction, strong desire, but to give it some time, means the soul has to be pretty grounded in a trust of self. "There is a choice that will be made. I'm in control here. I am the leader here. I can trust myself." It's very similar to the analogy of a general going to war with its soldiers, assessing the

situation, and realizing “All right, let’s retreat. This is not the time to fight this battle. Let’s go back to the playing board and reassess, strategize.”



## The Cardinal Cross:

- **Capricorn Square**

A lot of this learning in Aries is archetypally understood through the square between Aries and Capricorn. As I’ve mentioned before, signs of the same mode are always squaring or opposing each other. And these squares and oppositions are stresses that produce and invite growth and integration and understanding. So, the square between Capricorn and Aries says, “You’re going to learn in time (Capricorn) through trial and error. You’re going to mature (Capricorn) your instinctual impulses, so that you’re ultimately going to be constructive, productive, and purposeful with your energy.” The Capricorn square really is about maturing the raw, lustful, desirous, instinctive energy within Aries so it is directed purposefully.

- **Cancer Square**

And while we’re on it, the square to Cancer speaks to that separation anxiety. Again, children are a great example of that. Cancer symbolizes home, the womb, security, safety. You see a child; they need to both feel like they’re safe and secure, like they’re not leaving the home and what’s familiar, and they need to separate. (Aries) they need to move out from the known and explore. “I need to go over there and touch this thing. *I need to touch this thing!* Don’t hold me right now! Don’t hold me back!” And then, touching this thing and it’s “Oh no! You’re so far away from me!” This can create so much anxiety within the Aries archetype. It can feel like the soul’s just staying in motion, because there’s an existential sense of aloneness.

- **Libra Opposition**

This is why the Libra polarity is so necessary here. The Libra polarity provides reflection and perspective which, at first (and often), the Aries consciousness can lack. Through Aries, because the conscious orientation is so directed towards staying in motion and acting and choosing and

moving forward in life, it's easy for a soul to get stuck in the fervor of movement, of motion. So, the Libra perspective is like, "Maybe, don't do that. That might not be a good idea. Ummm, maybe you should take some time and just sit with it, or maybe get some exercise first before you make that decision." It offers a counterpoint awareness that allows the soul to get beyond the narrow fixation of its little world and gain a greater and more holistic, inclusive awareness of the whole playing field. "If I react now, there might be consequences. Soldiers might be injured. So, let me just take a retreat and get a sense of the whole picture." This is where the Aries leadership is so profound.

### **Becoming a Trailblazer for Others to Follow**

So, this third stage of development brings a soul to a place of knowing that they can trust themselves. This often leads to being a leader of other people. The Aries archetype can correspond to where a soul is trailblazing a path that others can follow. It's happening by way of the soul being anchored in their own independence, their own ability to go solo. And, through that self-trust and that self-leadership, it opens up a door for others to join along. Very, very often, the Aries archetype will then correspond to souls that are here to do something. There's a purpose for them to achieve and they need to get there. Souls like this will usually be very, not necessarily authoritative early in life (that would include a little more Capricorn energy, in general), but they're usually needing a lot of freedom and independence, and they'll have a strong "No!" And that needs to be harnessed and refined and worked with and honored, because these souls have a purpose. They're just going to need to learn how to use this energy constructively and non-defensively, to the extent that they can.

### **The Self-Cleaning Oven**

And, I want to be really clear that, within the Aries learning arc, there's simply the fact that you are creating karma as you learn. This can be a confusing thing, especially for souls in a spiritual stage of evolution, where the underlying desire is a self-undoing. There's a lot of "self" in Aries. I think of the Aries archetype as a "self-cleaning oven" (we'll get to explore examples of this when we look at Mars). The idea of a "self-cleaning oven" means, you have to act, you have to burn and move and set in motion life experience so that you can exhaust it. The actions within Aries sets in motion experience, which then enacts our evolutionary purpose. It ultimately brings us to deal with the deeper evolutionary threads of our incarnation. But, the fact that it's self-destructive is very interesting. This is part of the anxiety: that personal will isn't meant to achieve something for its own sake; it's meant to be used *to be* exhausted and played out. This is also why, within the Aries archetype, we're going to find souls moving through a lot of experiences, starting something, going for it, learning a lot, having a lot of experiences but, very, very often, quick to move on. This could be a karmic situation of starting things but not completing them because of reactivity. Or, very often, the Aries archetype will speak to where a soul was in motion towards something but they were stopped halfway. You were traveling in some past life to deliver a mail package from one part of Rome to another part of Rome. And as you were traveling, some bandits came and killed you. And it sort of leaves a resonant sense of stress and anxiety and "I've got to rush to get this done." There's often this unresolved karma of something thwarting our progress, which can create an irrational, almost unexplainable sense of hastiness in life. And that hastiness will then create more of it. It's like, the hastiness itself creates more incomplete situations, where you're hasty, and then mistakes happen, accidents happen, confrontations happen.

## **Karmic Dynamics**

Another karmic dynamic within Aries is accidents and confrontations. Because of the need to do and to get it done; oftentimes, a soul will learn by getting themselves hurt, playing with fire, creating something where it's like "Uh-oh. That was a boo-boo. That wasn't good." It's like setting the house on fire by accident; now you've got to deal with that. Or getting into confrontations or brawls with other people, other wills beyond oneself. The intention in Aries isn't necessarily to stick with one thing for a long time.

We need to differentiate between creating a trail of karma, starting things and then ending them with unresolved energy there versus what's actually very natural for Aries, which is to start things, play it out for a while, learn from it, but then move on when it's time. The intention within Aries isn't necessarily to stick with one thing long-term. It is an ongoing process and it's just important that the soul is aware of what kind of karmic trails it's creating. Everything creates karma. But there are really two kinds of karma from this perspective: those that are necessary and supportive in the cultivation of our dharma (meaning, in the cultivation of our soul path), and then the kind of karma that will sort of weigh us down, keep us in patterns of resistance, unhealthy ways of being. So, the karma that we generate when we're moving forward and doing what we need to do, it just means that we're setting in motion life experience, a particular set of life reactions and consequences that will propel us forward in life.

## **Decisiveness and Anxiety**

I want to give a little more attention to the ideas of leadership, courage, and decisiveness. Decisiveness is totally the Aries archetype. And we know that decisiveness is really important because it means the soul is here, they're living, they're in the present moment. Present moment living is so necessary for a healthy mind and a stable consciousness. One of the most challenging things for Aries is getting to a place of indecisiveness. Often, the indecision can come from a profound awareness of "Whatever I do, it's going to open the doors to a new set of experiences; and there's no going back." You can be the leader of a congregation and know that, whatever choices you're making in the moment for how to deal with a community issue, are going to have ramifications. Anything you do; you could be a political leader and you're deciding on a certain vote. To have the awareness of how much responsibility comes with one's energy, with one's power, with one's decision-making is really powerful in Aries. This leads the soul, by necessity, to cultivate a lot of self-awareness of "What's my purpose? Where am I going? So I can make choices, be decisive, not get stuck in fear, and simply accept what comes next." It's kind of like getting on an airplane, putting on your parachute, and you're like "I'm gonna jump now. I don't want to jump but, either I stay on the airplane and I live in the fear of like 'Should I jump? Should I jump? I have 5 more minutes to jump. And if I miss these 5 minutes they're going to land the plane and I'll miss my opportunity,' or I just jump now and do it." That place is the anxiety in Aries. We all might remember this, if you've ever been on a roller coaster as a child. I can relate; I never liked roller coasters, but all these other kids loved them. I remember getting on line for a roller coaster, and being like "Okay, I'm on the line... The line is almost ending... I can still get off the line..." And then you get to that point in the line where you go through the turnstiles, you put your seatbelt on, and... there's a certain point where there's no going back. Like, once you're on the roller coaster, maybe I can scream "I want to get off!" Maybe that would work. But, for sure, there's a certain point when it starts moving that you can't get off. Maybe, once it starts moving, you can scream and ask them to

stop it and they'll automatically stop it and a technician will come and take you off. Right? See, these are all choices that will run through the soul's mind. It's like, "Do I stop now or do I...?" That's why, oftentimes, creating a situation where you're burning your bridges, where there's no way to go back, so the mind can have no uncertainty, is a part of it. This is sometimes helpful, sometimes it's not. Aries can do that to itself, and be like "Uh oh. I don't know if I wanted to do that. But now there's no going back." Other times, having the option for an "out" can produce so much fear and anxiety within Aries. There can be a shadow piece within Aries of *needing* to push one's limits.

### **Overcoming Fear Takes Leadership and Courage**

There's a really great movie with Jeff Bridges called "Fearless." There's a point where he becomes fearless and he just kind of loses the fear of death. He was in an airplane crash and he survived. People died; and in the moment he knew what to do. There was a boy, and he knew to grab the boy and be with the boy. He knew to be there for the people moment to moment. He wasn't even thinking. It was just instinctive choice, moment to moment. That feeling is really important in Aries. It's not like deliberating, like "Agh, what am I going to do?" There needs to be a very fine-tuned, sharp, present-moment orientation to now, to now, to now. And there's a way of living in Aries where consciousness is aligned and we're not living according to a narcissistic self-focus, where it is possible to live in that way moment to moment. There's a point in this movie where he was really getting off on this "I'm not afraid of anything. I'm not afraid of death." He's standing on the top of a building, on the ledge of the roof, and he realizes his fear. He's standing there and sees how far the drop is. He's aware that, if he just stepped, he would fall, and he would die. He was feeling fear, but there was this Aries impulse within him to just stand up and dance on the ledge. He needed to overcome that fear.

And this is a very interesting thing within Aries; it's that need to overcome fear, to be able to push our physical, emotional, and psychological limits, and overcome them. It can be a way of the soul getting itself into unnecessary danger; it's like people that are seeking thrills, or always going for the next adventure, or "go deeper, go faster, go longer, go harder." It ultimately comes down to "What's your purpose?" Oftentimes, that particular orientation is a temporary substitute for the true sense of fulfillment that comes in pushing oneself beyond the edges that keep one from living their purpose. What is the soul work that the soul is here to do? Following that path will bring each one of us to the limitations of our comfort and our security. Overcoming that is incredibly rewarding in Aries, and it takes leadership and courage. You can't necessarily replace that by constantly pushing yourself to not be afraid of things that you're afraid of; that's not necessarily helpful.

### **Athleticism, Competition, and Winning**

You could also have the Aries archetype of people that do things like ropes courses, where they'll take kids or adults on trips to climb ropes and do things where they're overcoming fear of heights, pushing their edges, realizing "I can do it! I can do this! I can make this!" So, that can also be very helpful. It's just not necessarily helpful if it becomes a way of living, where a soul isn't able to feel good about itself unless it's like "tackled this obstacle." In this sense, we can really see in Aries a lot of souls that get involved in sports, extreme sports, athleticism, or any

kind of activity (it could be intellectual activity) where they are pushing their limits and overcoming.

There's a need within the Aries archetype to come first. "I'm first! I won!" That can be misapplied and just be a purely competitive "I need to win. I need to go first" kind of psychology. The true meaning of that "coming first" is really about the soul feeling like it's moving forward and it's at the edge of its soul journey, moving into the next experience. It doesn't have to be seen in competitive terms. The usefulness of sports and athleticism and competition; it's a way of assisting that masculine energy by creating a game, winning, using aggression, being very mentally and physically acute and present in the moment, to act. It's a very good Aries activity. And this could very much be a part of a soul's path, living a life that involves these elements. This can be very helpful and relevant for all of us on our evolutionary journey. When I took martial arts when I was younger, just the experience of sparring with someone was profoundly helpful for me. Because, it's the training of the mind to be really present in the moment. Then, when I took a competition, and I fought, and there were judges, that was horrible for me. Because it took it out of the training experience, where it's really about cultivating my mind, and it made it more about winning. And I couldn't relate to that.

### **Anger**

So, one final thought about Aries as it relates to anger. The presence of anger usually points to there being something delicate, tender, vulnerable, sacred, important, worthy that needs care, that needs to be protected, that needs honor, that needs support, that maybe isn't being treated the way it needs to be treated. So, it's very important within the realm of Aries that the energy, the anger, is not just used as a raw expression because then we can forget what it is that it's for, what it's actually showing us.

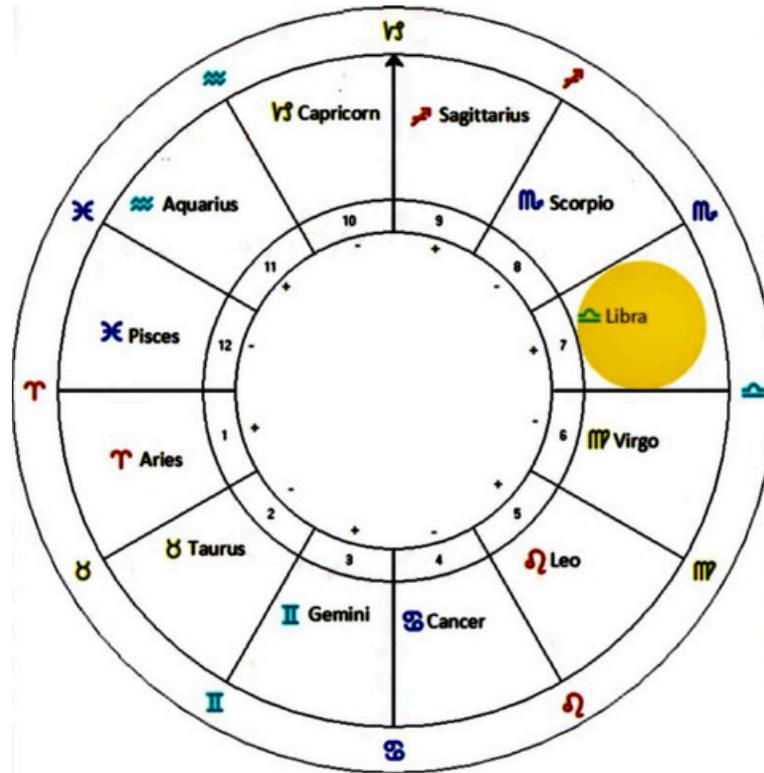
### **Peak Performance**

One more thought on the Aries archetype: there's a need within Aries to really get into a sense of peak performance. This is where we'll find the workout coaches or the self-motivation that speakers will talk about, being fully engaged, fully alive. This itself says that you're removing your blood, you're energized, you're ready to take on the world. The Aries archetype, in general, corresponds to where the soul is learning how to take the stance of readiness.

All right. And this completes Aries. Let's move on to Libra.

# Libra

## Libra



Hello everyone. Welcome to Libra. Libra is cardinal air. It's cardinal, so it starts the third quadrant; air is social. This is the first time that we're looking at an air archetype. In the same way that Aries is initially very instinctual and lacks self-awareness but learns through enacting experience, which will help it refine its sense of self; through Libra, we're actually looking at a very similar process. I think Adam Gainsburg once said, "Libra is as instinctive as Aries, but it's instinctive about other people, or through other people."

### **Discovery of Self Through Relationship**

The self-learning journey within Libra is occurring through discovering oneself through the entire and diverse, very interesting realm of relationship. There's an inherent orientation within Libra for consciousness to not necessarily know who it is, what it needs, what it wants, how to be in relationship with all the others out there. The only way to find that, the only way to experience that or discover it is by trying it out, by exploring relationship. Then we really get to discover what's true for us. Each soul on their own journey has their own nature, their own individuality, their own way of being according to who they are as they were created, their essential soul nature. One thing that you find in Libra (and in some sense, this is an air archetype thing) there are many possibilities, many perspectives, many ways to be.

### **Comparison and Contrast**

So, the journey within Libra is often through comparison and contrast. "Oh, you like to eat sandwiches with mustard, avocado and hot sauce. And I don't like hot sauce; but maybe I

should like hot sauce. Maybe I'm missing something. Maybe I'm resisting something. Maybe there's something with hot sauce that I'm not aware of." Just the open-mindedness is so profound in Libra. This open-mindedness is necessary because that allows the soul to become genuinely interested, engaged, and curious about the world outside itself. In fact, it's that curiosity, and the archetype of curiosity itself, that allows the soul to really learn about other people. It really allows the soul to understand and become attuned to the unique and subjective reality of another person.

## **Communication**

On the Libra journey, in the process of learning about oneself, the soul is, by necessity, going to have to learn about communication. It's going to have to learn how to connect with an inner sense of attunement to the flow of inner and outer. The deeper spiritual teaching is that inner and outer are one. So, the relationships, and the entirety of the world that shows up in our lives, are not these separate outside events. And, on the soul journey, the soul is progressively coming to understand that. The way that it's understood, the way that a soul can practice knowledge of this whether or not there's a spiritual awareness of "inside and outside are one," the way that a soul does that through Libra (and every stage of consciousness) is through the energy of balance.

## **Balance and Harmonics**

Balance is a gauge, and it can't be expressed or described in any kind of linear terms, but it's very real. It's an inner gauge; it's an inner feeling. Feelings correspond to Libra and Venus, which is the planet that rules Libra (and Taurus as well, which we'll talk about later). That inner feeling of balance, that inner sense of harmony resonates with something that actually is a little bit outside of oneself. It's a universal Truth. The energy of harmony, the energy of balance is a Truth. Just in the same way that you can hear a song and you can hear when a song is disjointed: when there isn't listening among the different instruments or different voices versus when the song is connected, sharing the same rhythm or the rhythms compliment each other, the harmonies compliment each other. It's not linear because there's no one particular way to create harmony. There's no one particular way to establish balance. It's actually an expression that, in its very nature, is artful and graceful. Let me show you an example of this. [Picks up his guitar] You can take a note [plucks a string on the guitar]. So, one note. Now, how do you create harmony with that note? You can play another note with it that harmonizes [plucks two strings on the guitar]. And there are other notes that could possibly be played as well [strums a different chord]. That's harmony too, but a different harmony; and it has a different feel. [Strums several chords] Different feel. Or, [strums] that's a little more dissonant, right? Not *bad*, but different. You can do that and you can even go further [plucks two notes an octave apart]. Now, we're working with octaves. Or, [plays a different octave]. You see how many ways there are for two to create together, for two to come together? There's the harmonic, there's the octave, there's the frequency in which it's being played. Human beings are just like that. The ways in which two people are dancing with each other are potentially so diverse. They can take so many forms, so many expressions. So, how does one soul know what song to sing? How does one know the right way to be in the dance with another being? It does come back to that inner feeling. Because Aries is about the personal journey; Libra is also about the soul journey and how our evolutionary needs are enacted, and ultimately supported, benefitted, through relationship, through giving and sharing. So, the inner gauge is an ultimate, very personal sense of "Is this right for me?"

## **People-Pleasing**

In learning how to listen, Jeff Green often spoke about how there's no inherent attunement at first to balance. There might be some level of attunement to it, but the Libra archetype corresponds to where a soul is learning that. This means getting out of balance. We come into relationship and the other person says "Yeah! Let's do all these things together. Let's go outside, let's run!" And then Libra, because consciousness is oriented towards an inherent openness, and also a need to feel the energy of acceptance, there's often an inclination within Libra (and this could be a shadow) to become, to mold, to shape, to accommodate to the needs or the wants of another person. So, that happens, and they hang out every day; they go running a lot together. And then, a soul can really become overwhelmed with this feeling of being outside of themselves. This is where the soul is really learning what balance is, and how to say "No." And that's embracing that Aries polarity, which is "No, I don't want that." But the curiosity stays centered in that place of what *is* wanted, what *is* true, what *does* want to emerge here. The potential here is for a lot of people-pleasing.

If a soul isn't rooted in a personal sense of balance, in that inner listening for inner and outer and the meeting point of that, then there's a great possibility for consciousness to be so outside of itself, that it's entirely oriented around "Well, what do *you* want me to be?" It can create an appearance of balance because people might be satisfied, other people might be happy because you're meeting their expectations.

## **Expectations**

Expectations is one of the biggest issues within Libra. Expectations basically say, without any kind of understanding of one another, without having done the work to communicate needs or wants or preferences or desires, to make requests, to learn "What is the other available for? What does the other want?" expectations can simply set in, where we're making another person, and thus the construct of relationship itself, fit whatever's in our mind, whatever we're wanting them to be. And so many relationships, not just intimate partnerships, so many relationships of all kinds set up shop there in, usually, a mutual fulfillment of expectations. To defy the unspoken agreement to conform to expectations would mean that there will be a loss of acceptance. The need within Libra *is* that acceptance. The need, a very deep and important need, is to feel loved and accepted for who one is. But this is tricky, and it's actually a little bit paradoxical.

## **Learning to Orient Towards Peace**

Simultaneously, the soul needs to learn how to trust themselves, needs to learn: what relationships work for it, how to be in harmony and balance in relationships, how to communicate needs, sometimes how to not give when giving isn't useful or needed or helpful or true. And it needs to learn to have a sense of inner balance within itself, regardless of what other people want or expect. The reason why that's sort of paradoxical is because the way a soul, through the Libra domain, will learn that is through creating the right kinds of relationships where its needs can be met. So, the learning journey ultimately points the soul back to the inner listening function. "I'm going to listen for the energy of balance, listen to my needs, listen to what's being expressed outside of myself, but know how to come back to an inner gauge." There's a profound potential, a skillfulness, an artfulness, for really feeling into the energy of balance and harmony. And the gift is an orientation towards peace.

The orientation towards peace, in Libra, is a deep wisdom that says “There’s no conflict here. There’s only conflict if I’m trying to be or make you be what we are not.” So, the orientation towards peace is a capacity to connect to a state of being where “It’s okay. We get to be what we are. We get to listen to what that wants to be.” The soul can really develop that sense of security in oneself and not get out of balance, which can be a real big issue, especially if there’s a codependency, if there’s a big entanglement, where a person’s sense of value becomes so deeply entwined with being liked and accepted and approved of by another. Then, if there’s something where there’s some reason that one is not pleasing to another, it can really have a deep and impactful effect on one’s mind, on one’s sense of inner balance.

### **The Instinct of Attraction**

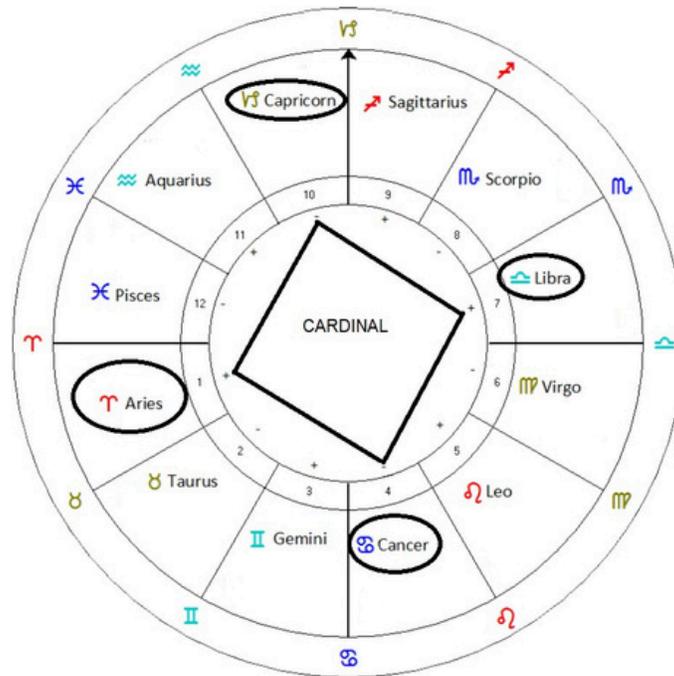
So, coming into balance with oneself so that the right kinds of relationships can be created, I often think of it as letting everything fall into its place by way of staying in this very active dance of tuning into feeling. If you’re in a dance hall with a lot of different people, there’s a sense of attraction. Libra and Venus do correspond to pheromones. We’re all drawn and attracted to people, and that attraction resonates as something that is not rational, it’s not linear. Somewhere, on our own soul journey, we have needs to know ourselves and experience ourselves that can be met and aided through this exploration of sharing and giving. Those needs can be all kinds of things. So, you feel “I want to dance with this person.” There’s a connection in the way that two people are in relation with one another. Then you can feel, “Okay. That was good. I’m going to move on.” Or you can sense “Oh, there’s something there. I want to talk to this person afterwards.” It’s instinctive. You’re just starting; you’re getting started with connection, and you don’t know what it’s for.

### **Compromise**

Coming back to the idea of expectations: this is why it’s so important for a soul to develop the skillfulness, the intelligence of communication and clarity, and an understanding of needs and requests that allows the soul to know when to compromise and when not to compromise. Compromise is a very important thing; but if there’s an entanglement, compromise can be misapplied in a way where there’s actual loss of esteem, a loss of self-value. Compromise is relevant in all kinds of agreements, all kinds of relationship situations. But then there’s a realm where compromise can be hurtful and not supportive.

### **Capricorn Square and Patriarchal Conditioning**

Coming back to the idea of expectations: of course, expectations are useful when there are agreements, when the expectations are relative to what was agreed upon, *as well as natural familial expectations such as a child expecting the care of a parent*. As I mentioned, so often there are these unspoken expectations in relationships. A lot of this relates to the patriarchal conditioning that says “This is how people should act,” in particular, relative to one’s gender. This is most common in consensus stages of evolution. These ideas of “This is how you’re supposed to behave. This is what men are supposed to be like, what women are supposed to be like.” This is reflected in that square between Libra and Capricorn.



Capricorn corresponds to social constructs, including social ideas, agreements, judgments, rules, anything that is ascribed from society that says “This is how things are supposed to be.” In fact, Capricorn itself corresponds to the idea of patriarchal conditioning. And so, Libra in relation to Capricorn so often speaks to a societal construct that’s overlaid on top of all of our relationships, including “How is it that one is supposed to behave? What’s appropriate? What’s not appropriate? What’s fair? What’s balance, what’s not? What are assumed expectations?”

### Evolutionary Stages in Libra:

Abig part of the Libra journey (and this is, in particular, highlighted in the evolutionary stages) is really deepening one’s capacity to listen.

- **Consensus - Societal Expectations**

In the consensus stages of evolution, the journey of balance and harmony is really going to manifest through the consensus orientation to fit into the boxes and the molds that society ascribes. And this is not even in the realm of personal relationship; think about how you’re allowed to behave and act towards other people. What is appropriate? What is not appropriate? Likewise, what is a relationship supposed to look like? You know, if you have a relationship, you’re not going to start sleeping with other people, or be interested in other people, or be open to other people in most consensus relationships. This isn’t necessarily 100% true in this day and age, but in most consensus relationships, it’s not even appropriate to speak about attraction to other people.

- **Individuated - Open-Mindedness**

In the individuated stages, relationship is seen with much more diversity. And there’s a greater orientation and interest in really objectively validating and appreciating the subjective reality of each person, who we are inherently. The giving and the sharing corresponds to “I’m making no assumptions.” In fact, in the individuated stages, there can be such an open-mindedness in Libra that there will be no assumptions made at all according to one’s sexual identity, one’s

gender identity, one's needs. Everything can be approached with this profound sense of openness and willingness to listen. And so, what happens through individuation is the soul is really learning how to create relationships where their essential needs, their essential individuality can be honored and met. There's a lot of learning around communication and sharing and accepting one another for who we essentially are.

- **Spiritual - Unconditional Love and Acceptance**

In the spiritual stages of evolution, the journey is really about cultivating an orientation towards unconditional love and acceptance. We start to learn "What are the tricks of the mind that keep us from being in total peace and acceptance and love of another person?"

There are two things that I want to clarify here. Libra inherently doesn't correspond to unconditional love. It's conditional in the sense that Libra corresponds to all the conditional kinds of relationships that we create, not in a bad way; but every relationship has its conditions. What are the agreements? What are the intentions? What is each person giving to one another? Whether it's a business relationship, a client-student relationship, a student-teacher relationship, a romantic relationship, a family relationship, every relationship has its own unique qualities. So, the form is a condition, and the giving and the sharing is very specific to the needs of that particular relationship.

What the soul begins to understand is, in the spiritual stages of evolution, it doesn't matter what the form is, what the conditions of this particular relationship are; when we begin to identify our peace and our well-being with how another person is behaving or acting towards us, as well as with who they are, how they're living their life, we create a condition that basically says "My awakening, my realization of the truth of the Love that we are, depends on you. It depends on how you are behaving. It depends on how you are acting."

In a relationship where the underlying orientation is one of unconditional love and acceptance, where *that* is more important than *anything else*, then the soul is able to listen. This isn't incompatible with agreements and expectations. You're going to show up on time for a meeting. And, if you don't, maybe there are feelings that arise, but the underlying orientation, the bottom line, is the desire to see the other person as they truly are, which is whole, blameless, sinless, free, always deserving of unconditional love. We develop the appreciation, through Libra, when consciousness is oriented towards true acceptance, true peace, that everyone has their struggle, everyone has their journey.

### **Giving the Gift of Authenticity**

There's a need within Libra for "someone to recognize *my* life, what *I'm* going through, how hard it is for *me*, what it's like to be who I am; someone to really be able to hear me, to really listen, to really hear my heart." Venus corresponds to the heart chakra. That need within Libra to really just feel like "Ahh, someone can just really hear me and appreciate me," it's basically saying "I need to know that, no matter what, I'm lovable; no matter what, I'm deserving of love and acceptance and care and appreciation." And so, to cultivate offering that to others is a powerful, powerful practice, to cultivate seeing other people in their wholeness and to love them no matter what. The thing is, it's impossible to do that the moment there's an entanglement. The moment a soul says "My peace depends on you being a certain person," it means "I can't actually just love you no matter what."

So, there's a deep journey in the Libra journey, especially in the spiritual stages of evolution, in clearing the slate and really listening to what's wanted. "What does this relationship want to be? How can we find balance?" There's a need for listening. There's a need for curiosity. And that opens the door for each relationship to become a gift, where two souls are giving to one another in a way that really supports essential needs. The giving is coming from a place of wholeness, of wanting to give. We learn that, through authentic giving, everyone receives. If it's people-pleasing, that's just another entanglement. So, there needs to be that Aries polarity there. There needs to be that ability to not be pleasing to another, to not give what the other person wants. In fact, often, to stay in love, to stay in true acceptance, we have to stay clear in ourselves and not give when giving does not align with the energy of balance. Jeffrey Wolf Green often said, "There's a lesson in Libra that, often, not giving is the supreme act of giving." So, the journey of coming out of balance will often imply that a soul will get so deeply swung to one extreme of giving and sharing and depending and then need to go to the other extreme of being alone. This can also express as always needing to be around someone, never wanting to be alone, always on the phone with someone, always seeing "Who can I hang out with? Who can I be with?" There can be a dynamic in Libra of lacking a healthy anchor in oneself via the constant need to be in relationship.

### **Entanglement Creates Role Polarization**

Let's talk about a few other issues that often happen within Libra. There can be polarization in relationship, where each person is kind of stuck in a particular role that depends on the other person's role. This could be healthy if it's a clear intention, like counsellor-counselee or student-teacher. That's an agreement; it means, each individual isn't predominantly inherently defined as either role and isn't needing the other person to assume that role in their entirety. It means, "Here's an agreement. For this time, or in this way, we're playing this role for each other." But we could have relationships where these roles are happening and they're unspoken. So, one partner is the counsellor and one partner is the client, or one partner is the teacher and one partner is the student; and they depend on each other. And so, they're both going to play out karmic patterns of resistance by kind of keeping each individual in check. Often, in the entangling of these roles and polarizations, there can be a feeling of deep imbalance. And it's almost like, when you remove the unspoken agreements and expectations, it brings up a whole bunch of needs and wants and emotions and feelings. And there needs to be a container for that, such as counselling or any kind of practice where two people are in a container that nurtures a space of listening. Libra corresponds to the archetype of the counsellor.

### **The Psychology of Listening**

As I've mentioned, Libra corresponds to the psychology of listening. This is a very important topic to go a little more deeply into. Listening can be misused. There can be people-pleasing listening where one isn't really listening, but it's just appeasing a sense of being listened to and there's no intimacy there. And then, listening can actually be manipulated. The dark side of Libra is enacting relationship skills, knowing how to make a person feel loved and accepted, because you're wanting something from them. It's where we can be playing that relationship in a way where we're actually trying to get our own needs met; we're not actually interested in getting the other person's needs met. So, the listening can be (it's not necessarily a dark manipulative, it can just be an unconscious way of manipulating), "I'm doing this because I'm needing something as well. I'm wanting something from you."

### **Knowing One's Boundaries**

One of the very important lessons in Libra is this lesson around really learning how to attune to when one isn't really available to listen, when one isn't available to give. The ability to (this is the Libra/Capricorn square), the ability to know one's boundaries is so important. And, it's not like a universal "This is how I always am"; it's in the moment. Knowing when one is not available to listen and to share their energy does mean defying these set expectations. It can go as far as, you're a professional who does counsellor type work, and you realize one day "I'm grieving. I'm not available." There have been occasions where I have needed to cancel sessions on the day of; which, of course, professionally, I don't like to do. I don't like to do that to people. I like to do whatever I can to feel and be energetically, emotionally available. But, if I'm going to show up for a session and I'm not present, no one benefits. It's sort of "checking out" and just kind of giving, but it's not an authentic giving. Whereas, if I'm showing up and I'm fully present, every session is a mutual giving; everyone is receiving.

### **Indecisiveness and the Need to be Heard and Accepted**

The final thing I want to speak about with Libra is the archetype of indecisiveness. Aries, I've spoken about as decisiveness. And the need to be able to make decisions, to engage the playing field of life is so important. On the flip side, Libra really can struggle with indecision. Here, the indecision is: you're on the ride for the roller coaster and all of your friends are like "Come on! Let's go! It'll be great! Oh, don't worry, you'll really enjoy it. Trust me, I know you'll enjoy it." You: "Oh, I'll enjoy it. They're really enjoying it; maybe it means I could enjoy it too. I really feel really wheezy and uncomfortable, but they're saying that I will like it." And then one person says "Yeah, I feel like, if you don't do it you'll miss out and you'll feel a lot of regret." You: "Oh, I don't want to feel regret. What if I miss out on it, and then I'll feel really bad about it." The mind can be clouded with the consideration of either actual or theoretical voices coming from the outside. So, there's a need within Libra to know, first and foremost, "I'm going to be loved and accepted, no matter what; and if I make this choice I can always either change my mind or just learn from it, and afterwards make a different choice."

The need to know that one is free is actually really important within Libra. The need for freedom here isn't like the Aries kind of freedom, but it's the freedom that says "I can be myself. I know that, no matter what, I can make choices that honor and respect my own being." Oftentimes, the issue with indecision roots in a learning that one's inherent needs aren't valid. So, in Libra, a soul can easily develop a pattern of looking on the outside, "Who do *you* want me to be? What do *you* want me to eat? What would *you* like? How much of *this* do you want me to have?" It's almost like there's more security with "If I know the other person is satisfied, then I'm going to be satisfied."

It's really, really important to understand what's going on here because this can be a pattern. We see this a lot in Libra, where a soul only inhabits themselves to an extent and then sort of sets up shop in life where their security, their sense of value, becomes entirely derived according to the outer world, the outer reality. So, what's actually going on here is, at some point along the soul journey, the soul developed an inner orientation that has come to believe "I am not loved and accepted and worthy as I am."

There's often a journey within Libra of just needing to be heard, not as one's decisive nature, but in one's indecisive nature, without feeling any pressure to be decisive. Just the experience of experiencing indecision and not knowing what to do or where to go or what to give or what not to give or who to be or what's true for oneself, for that to be heard and listened to without someone providing an answer (this can very much be a counselling thing), it's a profound gift that is needed within the Libra realm. And to offer that allows a soul to get to the core of where the healing is, which is "Oh, I'm just needing to know that it's okay to be me."

Aries corresponds to purpose; and we also know that you can have a purpose for a time where you're doing something, and then you move on from that because there's experience, there's activity; it's not about one thing. In the same way, Libra is the purpose of each relationship; and that can shift. Two people come together for whatever thousands of reasons people can come together, and they play it out, and there's a learning. And that can shift and change forms or physically seem to move apart for a time.

### **Forgiveness and the Return of Love**

Ultimately, from a spiritual perspective, the purpose at the core of every relationship is forgiveness. Forgiveness is Pisces; and Venus, which corresponds to Libra, is the lower octave of Neptune. So, Venus is sort of the relational sphere of human connection; whereas, Neptune/Pisces is relationship with the Divine. They're both about relationship. So, a deeper teaching within the Libra archetype points to "What's the purpose of all this anyway? What's the purpose of every experience, every person, every relationship, every encounter?" While there might be specific karmic dynamics unfolding, everything ultimately points to the return of Love. So, in Libra, it's not necessarily about having this awakening experience and realizing "Oh, you are Love. I am Love. We're all here. We're all One." It's not about a unity experience. Libra is simply the purpose of every relationship. But, as a soul spiritualizes, it understands that all of the giving and the sharing and the needs that are being met and the ways that we learn how to meet each other, they are for a time; they take a form, they take a shape for a time. And they are to be played out. And so, the giving and the loving and the sharing happens, and everyone grows as a result.

### **The Gift of Holding Space for Another**

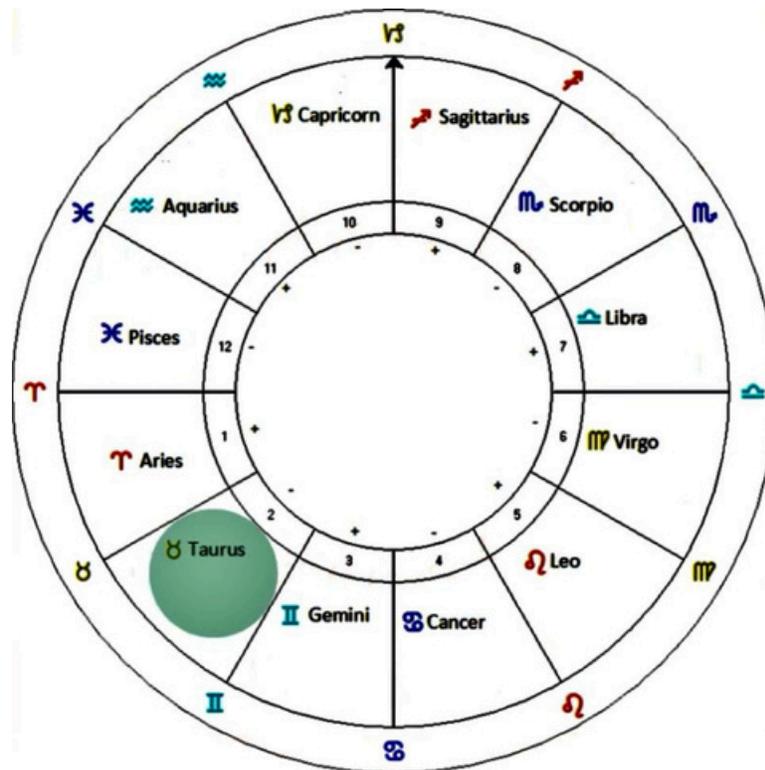
I'll share one more thing that arises. In the Jewish tradition, when someone's sitting *shiva*, which happens when an immediate member of your family dies, there's a tradition where you sit in your home for seven days; you don't leave. And the community comes to support you, to take care of you. Some people cook food, people will set up the daily prayers (you pray three times a day), and you have visitors. And, as the visitors come, there's a certain rule for the visitors. The idea is to be condoling with, to be there for the mourners; but, the rule is, you don't ask any questions. You don't try to make them feel better. You don't try to do something to help their process. The teaching in Judaism is, if you're visiting a house of mourning, you just listen. And you don't ask questions about the individual that died unless the person that is mourning brings it up and shares about it. I'm sure there are particular *minhagim*, certain customs that I'm not remembering and specifics to this custom, but a general idea that I remember that really sits with me is "Don't try to initiate direction." And I love that. That's actually been something that I've taken with me throughout my life, and I think it's really useful in general, even when we're not dealing with someone who's mourning. It's powerful, because it says "I'm going to be here for you in your process." Oftentimes, in Libra we make the mistake

of thinking “Oh, I’ve got to give a certain way” or “I need to help them have a certain experience” or “They think that I need to do something for them.” Or there’s an expectation that I’ll say “Oh, it’s okay” or “I’m sure he really loves you” or “I’m sure you’re feeling really bad right now” or “This is really...” you know? And these words can have a sort of natural place where it’s aligned, but there is a profound wisdom and healing in just listening and following the lead of “What’s wanted right here? What does this person need right now?” And to get outside of oneself and one’s ideas, to just listen, is so peaceful and so beautiful. It’s one of the biggest gifts within Libra, a gift to give, and it’s a profound gift to receive from someone.

All right. This completes our teachings on Libra and Aries.

# Taurus

## Taurus



Hello everyone. Now we're redoing Taurus. Taurus is fixed earth. Fixed is always the second sign in each quadrant. Taurus is the second sign in the first quadrant. All of the fixed signs have a quality of grounding, centralizing, consolidating, stabilizing, focusing.

### **Taurus is Survival**

Taurus is all about survival. At the core, the evolutionary intention within Taurus is to live, to survive, to inhabit one's life and ground in a sense of personal value, personal meaning. Consciousness in Taurus is oriented towards a very basic survival and biological reality. The soul doesn't need a body; it's not defined inherently by body, or form, or time or space. The soul doesn't need food, it doesn't need water. And yet, on its journey, coming into the earth's sphere, there is a need for the soul to want to be here. The soul has to want to be alive. And thus, it has to value its life as a human in human form. If there's no value in this life, if there's no "I value this life. I want to be here. I want to survive. I want to sustain my physical existence," then there would be no capacity to enact the evolutionary purpose of this life. There would be no capacity to grow. It's like, if the caterpillar didn't have a core instinct to eat whatever caterpillars eat, it wouldn't be able to play out caterpillar reality.

And so, the Taurus dimension within consciousness is where each soul is wired to be oriented on a very primal, instinctual, biological level towards its own survival. Thus, we have the idea of food, water, and shelter; and every soul needs that. The way that we all need that is through sensation. If you watch a baby, it's incredibly uncomfortable with its discomfort. Its relationship to hunger is very immediate. Its relationship to being tired is very clear. The sensual experience

of needing basic things is an immediate experience. And we all know that. We all know what it's like to be thirsty. We all know what it's like to be hungry. We have a sensual experience of thirst, of hunger.

### **Comfort and Discomfort**

This instinctual experience of core needs is very different from Aries. The instinctual nature in Aries is outwardly directed. It's towards "I want this. I desire this. I'm looking for this. I'm going here, forging direction and a path in life." With Taurus, we're actually bringing it in. We are consolidating resources and establishing a sense of continuity and security in a way that is in service, that is relevant to our most basic human needs for survival. So, in Taurus, consciousness is orienting towards "What do I need in order to be comfortable?" And the idea of being comfortable is very relevant here because the survival mechanism means we're able to know what pain feels like and what pleasure feels like. So, on the most gross level of consciousness there is a natural resistance to discomfort, to pain. Again, like the baby cries immediately if it's uncomfortable. And there's a natural gravitation towards what is comfortable, toward what is pleasurable. And because we have that function, it's a very primal function that allows us to know how to make sure we don't accidentally kill ourselves. It's a way that consciousness is sort of solidifying and sealing the deal of being here, alive, in a body.

### **Sexuality in Taurus**

Likewise, our sexual urges, at the core, point to a primal instinct to procreate the species. Sexuality within Taurus, in part, really just corresponds to the need to procreate. It may not be consciously orienting in that way; meaning, you're not thinking "I really want to procreate right now" (although that actually could happen too). On the most basic level, the human biological instincts for food, water, shelter, sex, and comfort are all a part of the general way in which the soul is sustaining its existence and sustaining the future of human existence through offspring, procreating and surviving the species itself.

### **Personal Expression/ Preference**

All of this instinctual and very core biological energy within Taurus, on a very gross level of understanding, simply says "Survival." We see it all around in nature. It's a very basic thing to understand about the human experience. On a more subtle level, the need to survive points to the need for the soul to form a conscious relationship to the meaning and the value of its own life from within. This meaning and value isn't like an existential Piscean meaning and value. Whereas, in Pisces, it's more about the source of all things, or something greater than one self, something greater than just one's immediate reality gives greater meaning and purpose to life; here, it's a very direct, tangible, tactile sense of "What do I value? What makes my life personally meaningful?" And it's a very personal thing. It's a very intimate thing.

Consciousness within Taurus is going within. It's withdrawn inside of itself in order for the soul to know what it needs, and not just what it needs, but what it likes, what it values, what is enjoyable, what is pleasurable, what is grounding. You can really feel the quality of this. From a Taurus point of view, home is Taurus. It's the place where you are protected from the elements. So, when there's a big snowstorm, your home is protecting you. It's our very survival; we don't often think of it as that because maybe some of us might take it for granted (if you have a home or if you've experienced what it's like to not have a home); but on the most basic level, all homes are, from a Taurean perspective, a way of protecting the body from threat. And

then, as you go deeper into that, there's a unique way in which the home is put together. Every home allows for a certain flow of energy. You can walk into a home and feel "Ahh. Space. Breath. Spaciousness." Or, you can walk into a home and feel clutter. There's a lot of stuff everywhere, and it just feels really busy, and it doesn't invite a gesture of rest. So, the inner reality of a home, the inner reality of the space that we create to live and survive, goes beyond just a very pure, gross level of straight-up survival; it's actually reflecting how we are living this thing. That's why we have taste buds. That's why consciousness can become oriented toward a particular preference, or even addiction, a patterning around particular sensual experiences. "Oh! This feels good. Chocolate feels great. Velvety, cushiony couches feel great." And so, the fact that we are able to feel and sense with our senses, our faculties, something that is pleasurable means that we all form a value system. We all form a very intimate internal relationship to our lives.

## **Balance**

Now, Venus rules Taurus. Venus also rules Libra. We'll talk a lot about rulership down the road, but we should understand at this point that every archetype has a sign, a house, and a planet. And it's just meaningful for this moment to say that Venus corresponds to both Libra and Taurus. At the core, Taurus and Libra are similar in the sense that they are both about this energy of balance. Libra is relational; it's an air sign. It's yang in terms of polarity. The essence of Libra, I would say, is really an integration of yin and yang. By its very nature it's about seeking balance; but it's air, which is inherently social, relational. It's also cardinal; it's moving forward, it's interested in exploring the reality of what is outside of itself. So, Libra is learning balance through the journey of intimacy with "other," and thus learning of itself through that. Taurus is learning balance due to its relationship with the physical world, which emanates from an inner sensual experience. The reality of balance and harmony that is learned in Taurus happens within. It's much more of a quiet, solo, hermit-like kind of process.

## **Values and Authenticity**

So, you walk into a person's home and you can really tell (especially when there's been a lot of thoughtfulness put into everything in the home) how the home is put together in a way that resonates with that person, with how they want to live. It allows them to fall into place, to rest in a state of beingness. In Taurus, I often think of the Zen culture and Taoist culture. The Tao itself is Pisces. But the culture of Taoism and Zen is so Taurus. Oftentimes, there's a certain minimalism to it, where there's not a lot of extra stuff. When I spent a little bit of time in China, my teacher there taught me something like "Too much comfort..." I forgot what the rest of it was [laughs]. Something like, "Too much comfort creates stagnation in the mind, but just having what you need and filling the space of what you have fully." There's also that teaching that "less is more." When you love what you have, when the things that you own are relevant and resonant for you, it means you're building a life that reflects authentic value. And you can breathe easy. You can feel [takes a deep breath] spaciousness in it. When you have a lot of things you don't like... So, you walk into a house and there's a lot of books, and it's like "Do they really read those books?" Or "Are these things really interesting to them?" When there's a lot of clothing, or a lot of furniture, or a lot of things that are just taking up space, you can feel if it's not really an intimate relationship. It's similar to a relationship between two people where, maybe there's a lot of construct there, a lot of roles, but is there real listening going on? And so, the journey within Taurus is coming into a balance with one's reality. So the teaching of "less is more" really does point to this feeling of "When what I have is really relevant to who I am and

how I want to live, I can open up more there. I can blossom more.” And there’s this quote that I once received from a friend of mine. For years I thought it was “Less is more. Nothing is everything. You can do more with less. You can do everything with nothing.” Or something like that.

*Do less, more happens*  
*Do nothing, everything happens*

It’s like, “Oh, I like that.” The functionality of a life; when there is less, you can do so much more. The mind has a greater capacity to even apprehend the possibility of survival, of thriving, of joy on a much greater level of self-awareness because it’s not clouded by things that are not really true for itself, not really relevant.

This subtler level of understanding beyond just the gross survival element is self-value, the ability of the soul to be in relationship with its own values. And this itself points to not just “I want to be here,” which is fundamental here in Taurus, but you also have to want to survive. You have to want to be here. You also have to really want to fully inhabit your life.

### **Resourcefulness**

Within Taurus, the soul cultivates what we call resourcefulness. And that resourcefulness is rooted in the attunement to “What can I do with my hands? What can I create? How can I orchestrate and work with life in a way that will allow me to create the life that is most relevant and resonant and ‘Mmmm’ for me?” So, it might be: “I’m going to learn how to build things or craft things with my own hands. I’m going to dig a hole and create some space and actually work with the resources of the earth to create a space that allows me to just feel emptiness and spaciousness and quietness in meditation practice. This is how I want a kitchen to feel”; and so, you look online and find the cabinets and pantry. All the things that we do that relate to how we live, how we thrive, how we feel a deep sense of embodiment of presence in life; that’s Taurus.

Resourcefulness basically pushes a soul to engage with the outer reality with respect to the inner.

### **The Shadow of Complacency**

The issue with resourcefulness is that the soul will often be limited in what it is able to see as a possibility. The problem within Taurus is that the soul is very often shallow in its perspective. We know what we know. We are familiar with what we’re familiar with. And so, simultaneous to the quality of resourcefulness, there can also be a certain level of laziness linked with familiarity and continuity.

The shadow within Taurus can be going the route that requires the least effort. Now, this *is* itself a sort of enlightened quality, meaning the energy of effortlessness, being in flow, not creating complexity. But in its shadow, this can be not putting in thoughtfulness, not really doing the work to care for one’s survival or to care for one’s life. So, an example of this would be, you know where all the food comes from. You have money and spend it on the things that make you comfortable. And, what is implied here is, there’s a dependency on certain external resources (Right?): the food in the supermarket, the restaurant you go out to eat at every night.

And then, what happens if you run out of resources? What happens if you run out of money? The crisis that happens within Taurus is where the soul is unable to depend any longer on the known resources. And that's where it has to depend on a deeper resourcefulness to figure it out. What do you do if there's a snowstorm and you can't go to that restaurant, or it's closed one day? So, simultaneous to the profound capacity (which can be a very graceful and artful and creative capacity within Taurus) to make it work, there's also this tendency to be shallow-minded. Jeffrey Wolf Green often described this tendency as "the frog in the well," and the frog in the well can be understood on multiple levels.

### **The Frog in the Well**

So, the frog in the well simply corresponds to a soul that's in a well, a defined and sort of fixed situation. In that well are all the things that it knows. So, this is its world. This is its home. This is where all of its resources are, where everything comes from. Thus, it's what's familiar. Everything in your well provides a sense of continuity and security, which is what's needed in Taurus. The issue in the well is that you only can see a very small portion of the sky. This small portion of the sky that you can see is your whole world. That's what is out there; these are the possibilities that exist. From the point of view of the well, depending on how expansive that well is, the potential options that are out there are very limited. And this is where the Scorpio polarity comes in. There can often be experiences that will push a soul out of the well so it can draw deeper within itself and find the resourcefulness and capacity to survive and thrive and get its needs met without depending on the old ways of dependency. Evolution is constantly asking us to not get stuck, to not get too comfortable in that which always changes. You can say Taurus represents life and the blossoming of life and the procreative elements of existence. In the northern hemisphere, that would be springtime. And yet, everything has to go through cycles; everything has to decompose.

### **Trash and the Taurus/Scorpio Axis**

And a very interesting observation that I have made over many years is, with souls that have particular karmic issues with Venus or Taurus, there's a lack of understanding around trash. Because, if you think about it, trash isn't very natural. Everything in nature wants to recycle and decompose. The generation of trash doesn't make any sense according to what's natural (it's hard to even conceive of it, if you really think about it), as well as a general discomfort with anything that smells bad. Noses, smelling in particular, is a very Taurus thing. Animals rely predominantly on their sense of smell. This is oriented to where a consciousness is very defined by that survival instinct. And there can be all kinds of reasons for it. But the decomposition, the smell of things breaking down, the smell of death, that's Scorpio.

### **Isolation and Possessiveness**

Another teaching that resonates with the frog in the well analogy is that in the well will be all the things that are valuable to you: your money, your resources, your riches, your inner values, your gifts, your art (if you're a singer, if you're an artist, if you're a musician). What can happen is a soul can become very, very isolated in Taurus, and either hold onto what it has out of fear of losing it, or just sort of stagnate in a place where it's not really circulating its energy and thus not sharing its gifts. In both cases, what happens is the soul can enter into a consciousness of poverty. The nature of Taurus itself is thriving. It's a state of being where we are in connection to the life force, which is always provided for. Everything in biological life is thriving. Nature

takes care of all things. So, it's a very natural impulse within us to feel like we are alive and we have what we need and we are secure.

The issue here is that there can often be a hoarding or a holding back of either one's gifts or one's resources. And when we don't share what we have, it creates stagnation. This is, again, where the Scorpio polarity (Scorpio is sharing. Scorpio is circulation.) comes in to say "You have to let go of what you have." Often, the fear can be "If I leave this world of familiarity, if I share what I have, I'm going to lose it. I'm going to become ungrounded. I'm going to be exposed to too much confrontation." Similar to Pisces, Taurus can really want to stay very simple and peaceful. "I got my world here. It's nice. It's peaceful. I have everything I need. Just leave me alone. Don't bother me. I like my solitude. I've got my television. I've got my chocolate. I've got the things that I do. I have the money that I need. It's all good." And again, that's just sort of staying on the level of "This is comfortable, there's continuity here." But oftentimes, we are pushed to look deeper, to move beyond that.

And, what happens in Taurus is, because there's such a profound sense of self-intimacy, there's a profound sense of self-knowledge and self-familiarity that is cultivated in Taurus, the soul can really create a lot of beauty. A lot of art happens in Taurus. Taurus corresponds to song, anything that you're doing with your own hands, and beauty. It's not beauty in the sense of Leo, in something that you're expressing and actualizing in the world necessarily. It's not like that level of purpose. It's just your way of living.

But, if you hold onto that beauty, if there's an attachment to it, that creates stagnation. And so, all of those things can become a point of possessiveness. And possessiveness is an issue in Taurus. Possessiveness basically says that the soul is identifying its physical security with what is known and familiar so it has continuity. Possessiveness, however, is different than being able to own something and use it fully. Possessiveness really implies you're not using it. Possessiveness is more a state of protection and wanting to assure it doesn't go away because, "If it goes away, I will be insecure."

So, this can be applied to anything. In Taurus, the consciousness of possessiveness is basically anything in our life that we have commodified. "I need this. This is a thing for me."

### **Graceful Living Flows**

Once again, the lesson in Taurus is to connect with one's values. "What am I using this for? What is the purpose of my own life? How am I choosing to inhabit this physical world in a way that feels really open and gracious and loving, peaceful, artful?" However it might be for the soul, it's that sense of "My life should feel graceful, one way or another." Gracefulness is a sign of really being alive.

### **Numbing Out With Pleasure Seeking and Self-Gratification**

Laziness can often be expressed as just numbing the senses, seeking pleasure, seeking comfort, seeking to hold onto what is known, and going the quickest and easiest route. But, that's not necessarily living in a state of grace. A good example of that in Taurus would be: you sit on a couch, you put on your movies, you have your snacks, and you just watch that for hours. And you make that a habit, every day. And so, what happens is, the mind gets to relax and the body gets really comfortable. Think of what's happening. The senses are all being stimulated. You're

on a cushy couch, you're eating, the sensing faculties are satisfied. You're watching something, you're hearing something. Everything is being engaged. And what that means is, consciousness is distracted. And these things are great. To be clear, it's wonderful to do anything that's relaxing. But the pattern within Taurus can become a habit, a habitual way of living in a state of self-gratification, which is actually a way of numbing out and not feeling.

It's interesting, because Taurus is all about sensation and sensuality in the physical world; but it's very easy to create a pattern of not actually feeling because of the strong movement, strong gravitation towards sense gratification. And so, in this strong sensual gratification, there's a certain level of numbing out. "I just want to feel comfortable all the time." And a strong pattern within Taurus can be that sense of "I'm comfortable. I don't want to deal with it. I don't want confrontation." And again, this can be a real issue when evolutionary forces set in and say "You have to be able to evolve beyond that."

### **Masturbatory Living**

The other issue here can be living life in a masturbatory way. The need for sexual gratification is very common and very natural in Taurus, because this is a way of grounding out. Basic sexual gratification and self-pleasuring (both sexually, but also in ways such as taking a nice bath or cooking a meal that tastes delicious), these are ways in which the soul comes back to itself, but it can very much be pleasure-seeking. And, when that's applied in relationship, when that's applied in the world beyond that little well, life outside of the little world that is known, this can create a lot of karmic issues.

### **Self-Interest**

One strong issue within Taurus is the psychology of self-interest. And self-interest basically means looking at life, entering every experience from the orientation of "What will this get for me?" And again, this is different from the Aries narcissistic self-orientation, where it's about "I need to do what I need to do." Taurus is more about walking into a candy store or jewelry store, or seeing someone that you're attracted to, and thinking entirely in terms of "Ooh! I want that. That will feel good."

*Clarification: the issue in Aries is impulsive action based on the need to be unrestricted and free.*

*In Taurus, the issue would be objectifying or commodifying for one's own self-interest because of the need to own, possess, and sustain one's life with whatever the soul identifies as a personally valuable, life-enhancing, or pleasure-enhancing resource.*

### **Lessons of Mindfulness and Transcending Resistance**

One of the learnings that happen in Taurus is to inhabit a deep sense of ground within oneself and one's ability to receive and to experience pleasure, but to not grasp for it. Thus, the learning is to experience a deeper sense of fulfillment in the present moment. Where the mind goes towards seeking outside of itself is where it's entraining a pattern of dependency on what is outside of itself. The capacity within Taurus to experience pleasure and unlock the deeper potential of pleasure is as infinite as a soul itself. So, in different evolutionary stages, the understanding of what pleasure is will shift, will be different.

The deeper spiritual understanding and knowledge of where true pleasure comes from, that true pleasure actually isn't in the body, true pleasure isn't in the fulfillment and satisfaction of

gross physical urges and needs. True pleasure actually comes in a state of deep contentment, and that can be realized at any stage of evolution.

In the spiritual stages of evolution, the fullness of that realization can be quite profound. Contentment means an underlying understanding that “Now is enough. Now is all that’s needed.” And there would be less of a running away from discomfort and a running towards pleasure, more of a capacity to inhabit the present moment as it’s arising. There’s a very interesting fine line between pain and pleasure.

When the mind has transcended the more instinctual resistance to what’s uncomfortable, we actually begin to understand that pain, and what we experience as pain, is not just a physical experience; it’s our resistance to it. Likewise, what we think is pleasure is actually quite tortuous. When we’re wanting more of it, the mind is actually in a crazed state of being, of seeking something more, something more, something more: the next bite, the next experience, the next sexual gratification, the next orgasm, the next piece of chocolate. And so, true pleasure is the ability to inhabit the present moment and to feel what is now. And this is really where art comes from, where song comes from. In fact, the ability to sing and enjoy, to be in that place of connection to the present moment, and the energy of the present moment, that always expresses as artful, that always expresses as graceful.

## **Evolutionary Stages in Taurus:**

- **Consensus**

In the consensus stages, in general, Taurus will correlate to the most basic consensus understanding of “What is comfortable; what is not comfortable? What is pleasurable; what is not pleasurable?” If you feel discomfort in the body, you will do whatever you need to do to make that go away. The orientation towards survival itself will also reflect consensus values. “What does consensus reality regard as the way to survive? What are the value systems to hold that relate to our own living here?”

- **Individuated**

In individuated stages, one’s sensuality will be explored to a great degree: your own values, how you live, how you survive. You don’t need a house, necessarily. There are many ways to do it. So, there’s a greater capacity to drop in and connect with one’s values, to really feel what feels livable and enlivening. “What do I like? What do I actually enjoy?”

- **Spiritual**

In the spiritual stages, there’s actually a lot more of a quietness that’s cultivated in Taurus. I often think of Taurus as sitting in a very simple room. You have your tea and your tea cup. And your tea cup is beautiful. You can look at the tea, and you can contemplate the nature of the universe in a cup of tea. You have the hotness of the pot, the smell of it, the feeling of the steam on your forehead. It’s almost as if everything in life is full and pregnant with life. A leaf falls and the sun shines. You can feel full and nourished by everything. It’s because there’s less of a seeking. What’s understood is that there’s not a need for a lot. You don’t need a lot of things.

In consensus stages, the things that you need will very much be defined by obtaining things; you know, the new phone comes out and you’ve got to get the new phone. Of course, not

everyone will think that but, in general, it's the commercialism, the commodification that one is taught will predominantly be what one values. There's a progressive elimination process that occurs. And, in the spiritual stages of evolution, the Taurus archetype is not about straight-up minimalism. It's about inhabiting consciousness so that form holds space for non-form. Because, this Taurus dimension will fall away. The life that we have, the body that we have, as beautiful as it is, it will age. The things that we have will break or fall away, or we will lose it at some point. So, it's always about letting something be a vessel for something that is beyond the physical, something that can be appreciated and held in a deep space.

### **Inner Resources**

A couple more points about Taurus. There is the capacity to cultivate a level of intimacy with oneself, one's inner resourceful energy, one's life force. So, things like Qigong, sexual practices, sexual cultivation (from a Taurus point of view, not a Scorpio point of view), from a Taurus point of view it's cultivation. And the practice here is, with breath, with stillness, with a non-grasping mind, one can actually connect with an internal wealth, an internal resource that can nourish and heal oneself. So really, Taurus does speak to our inner radiance, our inner resources. And there are many souls out there that don't eat food. They just look at the sun and they do a lot of practices. The capacity to be nourished doesn't always depend on external resources.

There's a very interesting teaching that I want to share here too. There's no such thing as true self-reliance, in an ultimate sense. The soul's always going to depend upon something. Even if it's depending upon its body, it needs to have a relationship with that body. Meaning, you can't just be like "Okay, Shakti! Okay, life force! Okay, kundalini! Flow and nourish me and open my heart and make things really good!" There is a need to cultivate.

### **Cultivating Your Garden**

Taurus corresponds to gardening. That's a great analogy for all of this. You have to garden, you have to work the soil so that the fruits can grow. This is so, even if you're working your own internal energy system. It's true if you're building something, or you're creating a home for yourself, or you're building a really nice sauna. You're resourceful, but you didn't create the earth, you didn't create the tree. You have to have a relationship with it and learn how to work with it. So, the truth of resourcefulness is really about the soul coming into a relationship with what it never created, and using it and molding it so it's functional and can be used in a good way.

Coming back to the idea of gardening: The earth is there. You can say "I'm really self-reliant. I grew my own food!" Yeah, but you didn't make the seeds, and you didn't make the earth. It's all there; life is designed to be used, but we have to put in the effort (Taurus) to use it. So, this simultaneously needs a certain level of self-trust and self-capacity, but also really yielding to the nature of the earth itself, yielding to what life is actually providing. There can be a lot of intelligence and beauty and wisdom that is cultivated in Taurus, in really knowing how to flow with the seasons, how to be in harmony, in relationship to the earth and to the body, so it can be used.

### **Self-Esteem**

Lastly, I wanted to zero in on self-esteem and self-worth. Self-esteem is so essential in Taurus to even want to live, want to survive, and want to have a good life, to cultivate more vitality. "Vitality" is a good Taurus word. Vitality in the body, in one's resources, fundamentally means that there's a level of self-value and self-esteem. We've spoken about the issue of being too entitled or living in a self-gratifying, masturbatory way. The other end can be true as well. Within Taurus there can be karmic issues around lacking the necessary self-value and self-esteem. And there are many reasons or ways in which this can show up for a soul but, without the necessary self-value, the soul won't be able to own and possess its life in a healthy way. Not possessive in an "I'm going to possess and control" way, but there's a certain healthy level of "This is my body. This is my home. This is my garden. I need to shape it and work with it in a way that feels good for me."

When there are issues with self-esteem, it doesn't always show up as the "I have low self-esteem. I don't have any worth," and thus being commodified, not really having good boundaries within oneself, not claiming one life or one's body as one's own. It could also be lacking in that sense of "I have the ability to do things," and thus always depending on what's being made available, on what other people are able to do for oneself, or just what's here. This is because there actually isn't a trust in one's ability to be resourceful. Once again, often life will be molded to teach a soul, to help a soul learn that they can do it, they can figure it out. All of life (really, all of the earth) is designed to support our survival. Thus, it's inherent for each soul to be wired to figure it out, to make it work. And the journey and the experience of figuring out that you *can* do it is an incredibly great experience.

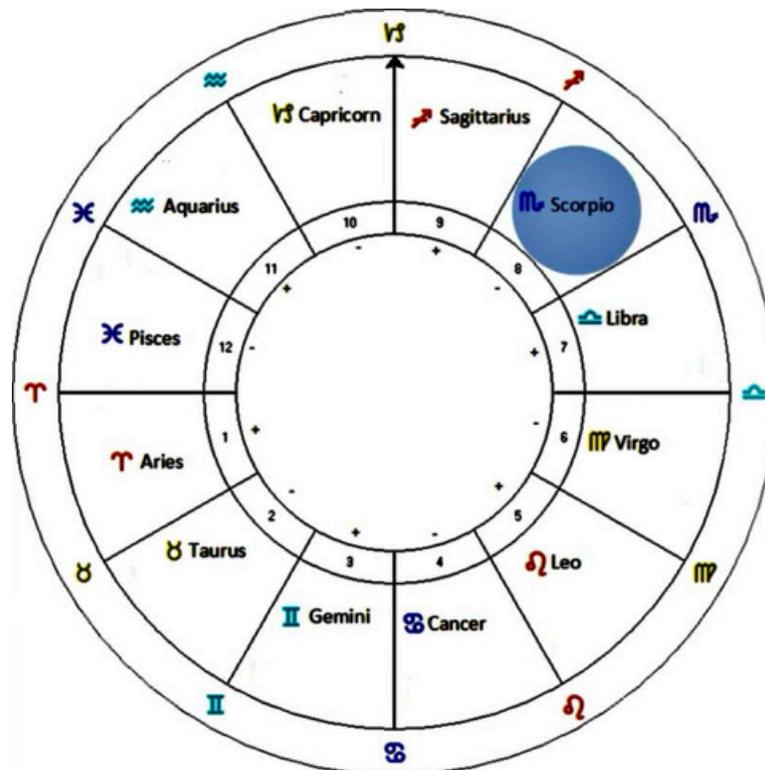
### **Self-Knowledge and Self-Intimacy**

The process with Taurus always points to a deep level of self-knowledge and self-intimacy. And it's really important to be alone in that. In Taurus, there is no comparison. You're not comparing yourself. Unless Taurus is somehow combined with Libra or an air archetype, inherently, within Taurus, you're not looking on the outside. You're going to do what you need to do to get, and figure out what you need to do to get and figure out; the inner orientation is just that. And that's a very powerful and necessary thing.

All right, let's move on to Scorpio.

# Scorpio

## Scorpio



Scorpio is fixed water. It is the second sign in the third quadrant. And water is always the polarity to earth. Scorpio is the opposite of Taurus. So, where Taurus is dealing with physical survival, our biological reality to be here and survive and to determine our values, Scorpio is basically death, or not being here. Scorpio points to, at the core, the nature of the soul. Thus, Scorpio is dealing with the psychological component underlying our human existence.

As we've learned in segment one, the soul (which we can define as desirousness itself) is always orienting towards something, because the soul's nature is to return, is to belong, is to unify. And so, the energy of the soul is generating desire, it's orienting desirousness, it's directing the whole being towards whatever will provide a sense of security and wholeness. And yet, the evolutionary journey is such that the ongoing practice, the ongoing process, is one of forming relationship, learning from it, growing it, but then moving on. And on the soul's journey, evolution, at the core, is the exhaustion of all desires until the only remaining desire within the soul, within us, is the core desire to know who we are, to return and really orient back to our essential eternal self. Scorpio speaks to, and thus Scorpio represents, the deeper psychological motives underlying our very incarnation. Scorpio corresponds to the 8th House and to Pluto. And when we look at Pluto, we are going to go very, very deeply into understanding the deeper soul psychology in the natal chart.

### **The Evolutionary Purpose of Scorpio**

In the modality of Evolutionary Astrology, the Scorpio archetype and Pluto is given a lot of emphasis because it correctly understands that desire is the bottom line. Desire is the

determinant for the entirety of the program of this life that we experience. So, when we are looking at Scorpio, we are looking at the entirety of our human experience from the perspective of, on the level of, consciousness. What's unraveling? What are we working through? Where are we looking for security through experience? Where are we either moving into a new phase playing it out, or needing to exhaust it and move on? Scorpio really does point to the ongoing evolutionary journey of the soul. So, the sole evolutionary intention within Scorpio is the evolutionary process itself, and thus, at the core, it speaks to the choice to either collaborate or resist evolution.

Within Scorpio, consciousness is very much oriented towards a black and white reality. Because actually, in Scorpio it *is* black and white. Whereas, Aries and Mars are a lot of things. You can make a lot of choices. You can respond to things in a multitude of ways. "Do I say yes? Do I say no? Do I want to go here? Do I want to do this? What's the path that I'm creating for myself?" Scorpio is not innately directly related to, or concerned with, the specific contextual choices that we are making in a day-to-day way; that really is about Aries. At the core, in Scorpio every choice points to whether we are cooperating or resisting evolution. Every choice at the core speaks to our underlying intention behind the choice. And so, from the Scorpio perspective, we are either choosing to cooperate with evolutionary imperative, or we are in resistance to it.

### **Evolution is Impersonal**

And we have to remember that evolution is an impersonal principle. You cannot create it, you cannot uncreate it. We can't do anything to make it other than what it is, and it doesn't really care about our preferences or the nature of our ego construct. It just says "everything evolves." The principle of evolution is such that it implies a reality of unchanging. For everything to be evolving implies that there is nothing not evolving, that there is an underlying truth to reality, and that is Pisces. Pisces, as I've mentioned several times, Pisces (and Neptune) is what's True, always, here and now. And then, Scorpio is the elimination process, everything coming and going, to eventually arrive at what is Ultimately True and here, now. Thus, Scorpio is a far more dynamic process of moving through experience, forming attachment and dealing with a whole beautiful and diverse psychological human realm of attachment.

In the psychology of attachment, the psychology of desire, we are either craving something or averting something. And, to the extent that consciousness is hooked in the energy of craving and aversion, it will be orienting it's life at the core and the perspective of what it is craving or what it is averting. In Scorpio, as we deal with the whole realm of human attachment, we have to completely go through it in order to come out on the other end. And the way in which we go through it, the way in which we come to terms with and take full responsibility for our own inner psychological reality, can happen through lots of challenging experiences or loss and eventually, you have to let go; but it was hard. It can also come through a progressive realization of what is not needed anymore, or what I am ready to move into.

### **The Four Ways of Evolution**

And so at this point, I want to explain this a little more deeply by teaching something that Jeffrey Wolf Green taught: The four ways in which evolution happens. This is a teaching about Scorpio and Pluto. Evolution basically happens in four ways, and you can put that into two categories. So, one category is cataclysmic, and one is non-cataclysmic. Cataclysmic is

challenging, disruptive, painful, hard. And non-cataclysmic can be more uniform, more gentle, more gradual.

## **Cataclysmic Evolution:**

### **Attachment and Enmeshment**

So, two forms of cataclysmic evolution would be where something happens in our own life that basically presents the loss of something that otherwise gave us a lot of security. Our sense of security and power was linked to the prevalence of this person, place, thing, experience, identity. It could be the loss of a relationship. And then you feel really betrayed. I can be the death of someone, and you can just feel profoundly lost in that. There is the potential to experience, as well, a level of betrayal and a violation of trust. Because what happens in Scorpio is you give trust; and that's actually often a very important part of the evolutionary journey. "I'm being completely vulnerable. I'm opening myself. I am forming an attachment, and through this bond we're going to grow, we're going to heal, we're going to face emotions and just be there for each other." But, if that trust is met in a way where it's like you're back with yourself and the rug was pulled out from underneath your feet it can be incredibly traumatizing, like trusting someone in a monogamous container and then you were cheated on, or trusting that you can share everything you want with your teacher and then they go and rattle about you. Anything that we form a deep attachment to, from the Scorpio perspective, this trust is incredibly important because then we can really grow and heal and have experiences that allow us to find more within.

But a lot of the cataclysmic type evolutionary experiences that can happen here are the ones that are so devastating to the soul that there is the potential of becoming deeply jaded. There is a potential of getting to the point where "I don't want to open up. I'm not going to trust. I'm not going to love." You know, there is the potential for loss. "I can't trust people. I don't want to be vulnerable." There can be a fear of letting go. There can be such a deep permeating vulnerability in the Scorpio archetype that there is a fear of really letting go, of really trusting; that's one response. I often think of it as (it can be literally as well as metaphorically) wearing black all the time because, here, consciousness has withdrawn into itself. It doesn't want to live. It doesn't want to open up. It doesn't want to face its emotions. It doesn't want to face the possibility of more hurt. So it can close up.

### **Victimization and Abuse**

The other example can be one of victimization, feeling victimized because of abuse, being manipulated, abandonment, betrayal, loss of trust; it's where the soul can become incredibly victimized with the thought, with the idea of "I was treated in a way that was hurtful to me. Now I need to take revenge." So, it's the idea of taking revenge, being vengeful, as well as jealousy and all kinds of psychologies that really emanate from a state of consciousness where we are feeling like our power is at stake here; it's in someone else's hands. Someone took it from us or we believe they have it, and what they are doing or not doing takes it away from us.

Now, very often, within the Scorpio realm, there is that very difficult human experience of all forms of abuse and violation. This can be incredibly impactful to a soul's sense of security and empowerment. Very often, within the Scorpio realm, there can be patterns of getting into entangled dynamics where one person is the perpetrator and the other is the person being perpetrated: the victim and the oppressor. Getting out of that, if you're the one being

perpetrated, if you're in the victim place, there is often a necessary journey to find empowerment. It's like, "No! I don't have to take this!" And at the core, fundamentally, it is the ending of an old identity. "Who I thought I was (the caterpillar form) is not relevant, not useful anymore. It's time to evolve. I am this. I'm stronger." Thus, the capacity to claim and own one's power is often something that occurs through these really difficult and challenging experiences.

### **Disempowerment**

But it could also breed a deep psychology of disempowerment, where the soul could actually fall into a trap of perpetuating these experiences, or form addictive relationships with anything that it basically gives power to.

We'll talk a little bit more about this, but Scorpio can really speak to, via osmosis, whatever we are directing attention to, where we give our power away and become dependent on something outside of ourselves for that power. And that's a very deep psychological state of not being centered in one's sovereign soul being.

So, coming back to this cataclysmic experience of challenges, oftentimes, however the soul responds to it, the loss, the hurt, the victimization (mind you, this can happen from the beginning of one's life; a soul can come into a reality where they are faced with cataclysm from the very beginning), from a soul perspective, there's a purpose for it; it's relevant to the soul's ongoing evolutionary needs. We have to be really attuned to cultivate insight and perspective for how and why that is relevant and useful. Ultimately, what's most important is that we are directing the soul back to themselves to see where the possibility of healing and self-empowerment is to return to one's sovereignty. This process can often lead a soul, for many years, to need to work that out. And that's where we need to appreciate that a very big part of the life journey oftentimes is having the necessary experience that will catalyze a period of time of doing deep inner soul work and healing. So, the cataclysmic forms of evolution can, but not always, take a big part of a person's life. Fundamentally, ultimately, at the core, depending on the soul's capacity (and ultimately choice) to orient towards themselves, is what determines the soul's capacity to heal and actually evolve through these experiences. Sometimes the soul does not have the ability yet. It needs to endure certain experiences and kind of play out certain emotions for a while. And that's just often how it is.

### **Addiction**

The other form of cataclysmic type evolution is where there is an addiction. Now, as I mentioned, the soul can give its power to something outside of itself. This can be another person. And so, how the other person treats me will determine how I feel about myself. And this is beyond just the niceties of Libra, the codependency of Libra. This is an actual entanglement of life force energy. And so, one's sense of aliveness, one's sense of living, one's very soul, one's very *beingness* becomes entirely entangled in that of another. And this is what can easily perpetuate unhealthy dynamics and dependencies. But because I'm feeding off of it, it's feeding me something, there is an inability to let go.

There can be an awareness of this. And the tendency for addictive psychology can be with a person, can be with a substance, it can be with one's mind. Patterns: not being able to let go of a negative way of thinking, not being able to let go of jealousy or vengefulness, a deep feeling

of hurt and disempowerment. There can be a looping of negativity, and the soul doesn't know how to get out of it.

So, if a soul is doing the work, they'll be maybe working with therapy, or doing shadow work, or just doing whatever they can to get underneath it. At the core, it requires a lot of self-honesty, where the soul is nakedly coming to terms with "This is what I am carrying. This is all mine." The challenge is that the temptation of staying hooked to the outer form can be very, very strong. So, what happens as the soul builds an intensification of awareness, it focuses and grounds life energy deeper and deeper and deeper into the energy of addiction, into the energy of resistance. And what that can do, via the intensification of concentration, is simultaneously make it a lot more uncomfortable and a lot harder for the soul to even function.

### **Clearing Impurities**

The closer a soul gets to the energetic core of the addictive mindset, the harder it is to do anything, because it's just like right there. And that is often the breaking point. It's kind of like with a fever: when you start with a fever and you get sick, it's actually when the illness is on the way out. Before the fever, it wasn't moving. And when the fever breaks it's actually a good sign. But, of course, that's usually when you feel the worst. There, it's through the intensification of soul concentration, which we have to appreciate is how Scorpio works; it's desire.

And we are all sovereign beings, 100%. We just don't all know it. And we don't all have the capacity to know it. But we are. And the potential for that realization is available for everyone. Because we are all sovereign beings, the world that we experience depends entirely upon the fixation of our concentration energy. And so, as the soul gets focused on what we can call "the impurities," they come to the surface to be cleared out. But that can be a very intense process. A lot of things might be put on hold. This can be an involutory period of needing to go into a very dark place to process and move a lot of energy. It can be occurring within a period of time in one's life where there are dynamics occurring that are just bringing up an intensification of purging. It just has to be gone through. You can't resist the process of Scorpio. It's just what it is.

### **The Power of Concentration**

And I'll just say one more thing about the energy of concentration. Linked to the energy of desire (and that the soul's evolutionary journey is entirely determined by desire) we are always going to be focusing our attention towards people, places, things, objects, mandalas, chants, symbols, or whatever, that symbolize whatever we are trying to osmore and awaken within. So, Scorpio corresponds to anything that can become a symbol of power. A mantra is an essential energetic vibration that can symbolize a particular quality of realization; focusing on that mantra can have an effect on one's consciousness. Same thing with a mandala or an image that we're looking at. Any symbol, anything in any realm, can become a source of concentration. And this source of concentration can go in all directions. We can focus on things like black magic and ways of using power to achieve manipulative results. Scorpio really just reflects that whatever we direct our attention towards is where we're going to be focusing a powerful stream of energy. If we understand the power that we have, that the soul being one with its Source has infinite creative power within it, there's a profound degree of power within the realm of concentration.

## **Non-cataclysmic Evolution:**

### **Progressive and Gradual**

Now let's look at the non-cataclysmic forms of evolution. Jeff Green taught two non-cataclysmic forms of evolution. One form is very progressive and gradual. It just happens through a natural osmosis of experience information that affects one's consciousness over a period of time. It's like being around someone who's acting a certain way or living a certain way, and that ultimately really affects you. It's like water dripping on a stone and it makes an imprint after some time. And this leads to a point where the soul is able to come to a place of understanding and realization and to make changes in their life or to make new decisions.

### **Powerful and Direct**

The other form can be a more powerful and direct experience, but not cataclysmic: You go to a lecture. You have a session with someone. You meet a lover. You watch a television show. You watch a movie. And it affects a profound realization. Little things like that ultimately say, "Karmically, the soul was ready." There's nothing that happens in our realm of experience that isn't a match to the space that's been created for it. So, when we have these powerful evolutionary leaps, it means we were ready for that. And things can come along to catalyze the necessary changes. This, of course, can be like, "Okay, I realize I could be a famous author." And you write that book; and then, a whole scandal comes out. So, these non-cataclysmic forms of evolution can easily lead to a whole bunch of cataclysmic experiences. In the end, the kinds of evolutionary experiences we have through the Scorpio archetype – "it is what it is."

None of us are aware of our karma; meaning, none of us are fully aware of the deeper unraveling that is occurring in this lifetime and the context that has been brought into this lifetime. So, we have to appreciate that we're each given what we're given. My friend, Bradley Narigan (an evolutionary astrologer), once created this T-shirt with the glyph for Pluto, and it said underneath it "Resistance is Plutile."

### **Lotus Flower Symbology**

There's a common symbology in Scorpio linked to the lotus flower. In several spiritual traditions, the lotus flower is seen as a symbol of awakening and transformation. The lotus flower has its roots deep in the muck. It is nourished by the compost deep in the earth: smelly, decaying, thick. And it grows and it flowers above the ground, above the water. And that metaphor is very symbolic of the process within Scorpio, connecting with the deeper unconscious stuff that we have inside. And again, "there's no way out but through," through toiling and actually connecting with it which, in some way, is contrary to the most basic survival instinct. I think Ken Wilber once described evolution as like driving a car into a brick wall. It's like, who would want to do that?! That's the thing; evolution is actually a death process, to come into contact with the muck, with the discomfort, with the shadow (which can be all kinds of emotions), but to stay in your center.

This is where the Taurus polarity comes in. You can think of cultivating the lotus flower as gardening the garden of your soul. And Taurus is stability. Taurus is pleasure. Taurus is contentment, peace, grounded. "I'm alive. I'm breathing. I'm connected to this present moment." That's so important for Scorpio because it means "I am facing, I am bringing my breath, bringing my presence, bringing my life into this present moment instead of contracting in fear, jadedness, victimization, hurt, distrust," all the different energies that can happen in Scorpio. So we need to be able to come alive and be here.

## **Death**

Of course, Scorpio itself can correspond to all kinds of death experiences, including taking one's own life. This could be a dynamic in Pisces as well, especially when you combine Pisces and Scorpio. The idea of evolution being hard and not wanting to face the truth of death, which is the death of ego, it's the death of a self-concept, that's the only real death that actually happens. The soul's evolution only happens that way. All other deaths are just things coming and going. The real death is the death of identification. And so, actually doing that work can be profoundly uncomfortable, but that lotus flower grows.

What happens with a soul in Scorpio is they actually go through the stages. At first you can think of it as muck, difficulty, disempowerment, anger, fear, revenge, vengefulness, jealousy, just the darkness. Or feeling a deep disempowerment. This can express for a soul in Scorpio as not being connected with their own capacity, their own right or entitlement to being a sovereign whole being, living in a way of entrapment and being outsourced, their power constantly being outsourced. That can be one state of being. When you start connecting with that, it's uncomfortable. There's a lot of content there.

## **Moving the Kundalini Energy**

And eventually along the journey, this energy grows above the surface. And, we can say, this is like the kundalini energy. Wherever consciousness is fixated is where the kundalini energy itself is fixated. So, if we're fixated on core survival, self-worth, self-esteem, power, possessive stuff, the energy of the soul, our life force, can't go beyond that; it can't abide at least beyond that.

So, as we work through these knots (in the yogic system, as I understand it, chakras are just nodal points; they are currents where energy channels cross), when these nodal points are blocked, energy can't flow. The energy system corresponds to particular psychological states. When the root chakra is blocked, when energy can't flow there, that corresponds to particular psychological dynamics that are being worked out. As we work through these different psychological layers, the energy channels can open and the life force can flow. And as it flows, it reaches that place where it's like "Joop! Joop! Uh oh! Here comes some more stuff!" And you can't do anything other than let it happen. There's nothing you can do. You can't avoid it, so you have to go through it. It can take a month, a day, it could take several lifetimes. The journey of evolution is what it is for each one of us.

## **An Alchemical Crucible for Evolution**

As we work through these different psychological layers and the energy awakening within us, we gradually come to a place of solid, stable power. And this again is the Scorpio archetype relative to Taurus; the power awakens, but we are whole and sovereign within ourselves. You can really think of the Scorpio/Taurus polarity as how the soul is a crucible, a container for his own evolution, for its own awakening. And in the inner stability there's a capacity to go into dark places and not be triggered by it, to go into places of addiction and fear and hurt, dark, dark places. And a lot of souls with a strong Scorpio in their chart will actually have gone through this. You hear these stories all the time and you meet these people all the time, souls who have gone through (and you might be one of these people) these experiences, some of the darkest of human experience. And they've learned from it; they've grown through it. And thus they have the capacity to have profound psychological insight and awareness of human

experience. They understand addiction. They understand darkness. They understand jealousy, hurt, avenge, revenge. And they can go in there. This is where Scorpio is about sharing. You're able to really open up. You're able to be deeply intimate with people in their pain and their process, in the deeper work that they're doing because you've been there. But you evolved, so you can't be brought down by it.

Likewise, through Scorpio, a lot of souls will have a deep respect and appreciation for death. In fact, there can be a death fascination. Souls with lots and lots of Scorpio can be fascinated with death, almost like toying with death, kind of playing on the edge of it very often. It's often unconscious, but it meets a psychological need to die, for something to die. There can be a death wish which, again, is reflective of "I'm really wanting to evolve." But that deep respect and appreciation for death reflects a soul that is able to go into the underworld, is able to go into the darker places where there's nothing to hold onto. Everything that has provided security is no longer available, is no longer dependable. And it's not afraid to go there; and thus, it's not afraid to die. We learn through Scorpio that, when we physically leave this world we take nothing with us, except for on a soul level. The energetics within us, our consciousness, where we are fixated, that's what brings us back for experience time and time again. Playing it out, over and over and over again.

### **Intimate Relationships and Facing your Shadow**

Scorpio corresponds to both marriage and divorce, both of those. Marriage symbolizes that energy of committing to something or someone. In that commitment, there is a total orientation to do the work for the growth, for the evolution that is made possible through that commitment. And the level of trust that is needed (if it's an actual marriage between two people) means the deeper psychological content within each soul will emerge. Marriage itself, by the way, is not a Libra thing; it's a Scorpio thing, marriage in the sense of two souls coming together for the sake of evolution. Libra can correspond to marriage from more of a traditional point of view, where it's arranged. Libra square to Capricorn includes arranged marriages, systems that are more of a contractual agreement. It's not necessarily about evolutionary work. In that construct, it's not so much about the Scorpio dimension of facing all of the deeper content, working through it, and evolving.

In Scorpio, we're dealing with the energy of desire, the energy of craving, the energy of aversion, the experience of being deeply triggered, of deeply wanting. All of that comes up through the vehicle of commitment. At the same time, everything has its course. All experiences within the realm of this human life are meant to come and go. So, someone will die, or circumstances will change, and it's time to let go. You can commit to this astrology course and say "I'm doing this! I'm putting myself into this and investing my life force into it (money, for example, time, energy) so that I can osmore it and find something more within." That's the same example. But at a certain point, everything that we've come into relationship with on the outside we have to osmore and kind of get what it is we're looking for. Nothing should become a perpetual dependency, because nothing lasts forever. The same thing could happen with a teacher: forming such a strong dependency on a teacher or on the spiritual experience that is received from that teacher, but not actually osmosing the teaching and the power that is actually already within your own soul.

So, evolutionary forces will bring a soul “into” and “out of,” constantly. And the ability to experience that and to fully play it out, that means knowing how to be vulnerable, knowing how to expose oneself and to face one’s psychological limitations. Part of the journey within Scorpio is coming face-to-face with the most uncomfortable psychological weaknesses within us. Like, “Oh! This is where I’m really attached. This is where I’m really jaded. This is where there’s a core fear that I don’t want anyone to see. Great!” There’s profound potential, through the vehicle of what we come into relationship with, to face all of those things that we otherwise would not face were it not for the commitment. So, we do the healing, and then the form changes, the journey continues, and you move on.

## **Sexuality in Scorpio**

This is a good segue to speak about sexuality. We spoke about sexuality in Taurus as being, at the core, a procreative expression: it’s biological, it’s procreative, it’s about the survival of the species, it corresponds to a very basic need and urge to survive and feel good in one’s body. Sexuality within the realm of Scorpio is about two souls, that desire nature of Scorpio that wants to belong and merge, it wants to come home. Through sexuality, we’re basically doing the very best that we can to merge to the extent that we can within the physical realm. It’s like, you’re getting as close as you can physically, psychologically, and emotionally. The sexual act in Scorpio is “I can’t get close enough!” There’s that desire to merge. But it doesn’t actually happen. And this is where Scorpio really needs to connect with the Taurus element. The bodies aren’t actually going to merge. You’re going to have the sexual experience, and then it’s going to be over. The intense desire for “other” can be so strong and so powerful. And usually, such relationships, where there is such a strong desire nature, will be countered with lots of struggle, lots of power struggles, lots of power dynamics, the whole dynamic of craving and aversion, all the suffering that comes with desire.

So, this Taurus polarity is actually about the wholeness of the soul. I cannot stress enough that each soul is complete. Each soul is already complete. That is our true nature. It’s complete, like its Source. To understand that every external object that we wish to unify with is actually pointing us to the unity within our own soul means, when we embrace that Taurus polarity, we find stability within ourself, within our own experience. Otherwise, we’re just completely losing ourself to desire. This can form really deep bonds, really deep attachments which, on a soul journey, can be incredibly healing and incredibly useful, but it’s not the final stage. That deep love and connection and wanting and bonding and trust is great, but ultimately the evolutionary journey is taking the soul within, to their whole self.

**Fear of Entrapment** I’m going to close with one more thought on Scorpio. Scorpio, just as much as it corresponds to the craving or the wanting and the moving towards something outside of oneself, there’s also a correlative fear of entrapment. And this can present the situation of “I’m craving and wanting something and someone.” You get there, all this content comes up, and it’s like “I want to get out of this!” So, there’s a need within Scorpio, when we’re working with this energy of craving there’s also the fear of getting stuck, the fear of getting entrapped. And it’s working through whatever is present, whatever needs to be worked through. When a soul reacts from that fear of entrapment, this very much speaks to the Aries energy.

When we work with Scorpio and Aries, there's an inherent relationship between the two. We can think of Aries and Mars as a lower octave of the Scorpio/Pluto archetype. So, in Aries, there's that "I need my freedom!" In Scorpio, there's "I am a whole and sovereign full being! I am whole as I am!" And yet, evolution: we are impelled into experience. And so, there's a great process within Scorpio of a learning, essentially (and this really opens up as a soul evolves through the evolutionary stages) to move into life experience but maintain a connection to one's inherent freedom and sovereignty such that, even in the midst of challenges where things are hard, there's a ground in one's capacity to make choices, in one's capacity to orient towards whatever evolution requires of that soul at that time.

### **Evolutionary Stages in Scorpio:**

- **Consensus**

Now, I will say a few things about the evolutionary stages. In consensus stages, the Scorpio archetype corresponds to how consensus will view the entire realm of psychology: how we look upon, how we think about the deeper undercurrents of human behavior, human psychology, human addiction.

- **Individuated**

In individuated stages, there's going to be more of an open-mindedness to broader concepts like shadow, deeper process work, a greater capacity to connect with the idea of the unconscious and bring out areas of self-awareness that the consensus stage cannot actually fully access. Likewise, in the individuated stages of evolution, there's a greater capacity to understand processes of change and evolution, thus a greater ability to let go, more of an understanding of the nature of life and death and impermanence.

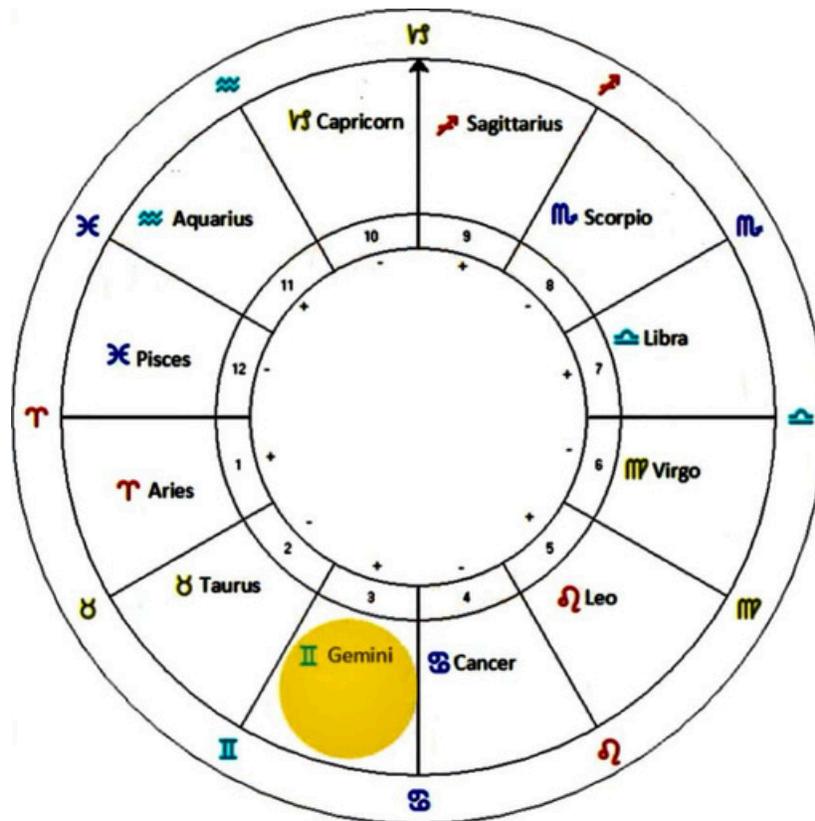
- **Spiritual**

In the spiritual stages, that's even more refined. The essence of the spiritual stages is really where the soul comes into a deeper understanding that the whole life journey, at the core, is the elimination process of what is not eternal, of what is ephemeral, what comes and what goes. So, in spiritual stages, the Scorpio archetype will increasingly give a lot of attention and focus on where the soul is concentrating ever more deeply on symbols and experiences that will bring its attention towards itself.

This completes our teaching on Taurus and Scorpio.

# Gemini

## Gemini



Hello everyone. Now we learn about Gemini. Gemini is mutable; it is an air sign. So, it's mutable, meaning it completes the third sign in the first quadrant. This is our second mutable sign that we're relearning about. The evolutionary intention of Gemini is to build upon greater and expanding context for understanding the interconnectedness within all things in phenomenal reality.

### **Learning and Context**

The Gemini journey really corresponds to what we call learning. Learning: taking in information, synthesizing it, getting that information in a way where it then adds context to the existing mental frameworks that we already have, which allows us to form more complete thoughts about reality, which then allows us to communicate.

For example, I'm talking about Gemini right now in the context of an astrology course, in particular, a Soulful Evolutionary Astrology course. For me to be talking about Gemini and even speaking about astrology or evolution or the Soul means there needs to be, within you, an existing framework of understanding that allows you to get this new Gemini information and fit it into an existing context. If I'm talking about the idea of an evolutionary intention but there's no understanding of what that is, then it's impossible to build upon that understanding and go into what Gemini means. So, everything that we learn, everything that we take in, requires some framework that allows us to build upon it.

## Logical Systems

It's literally like you're building brick upon brick upon brick; and to build a whole structure, a whole system of understanding, a whole system of knowledge, there needs to be a series of logical premises that all follow one after the other. So what's happening in Gemini is we're creating cohesion in our minds in a way that allows us to simply learn more. That cohesion means we're starting with a logical premise and that logical premise sort of accepts a certain fact. To give another example: "I am sitting on a chair." That is a statement; it's a factual statement. But to understand that, you have to also have already established what a chair is, how it works, what its function is. Without that, I could say "I'm sitting on a 'wobbly-wah'," and you don't know what a *wobbly-wah* is, and so there's no understanding for that. In fact, your mind will assume a *wobbly-wah* is a kind of chair because you know that chairs are things that you sit on.

So, for us to communicate and to learn and to be able to interact with one another, there's a certain collective agreement that we have a certain way of communicating, a certain language of understanding, that implies certain things. "Chair" means something. This becomes an issue when you travel the world and you're in a culture, in an environment where they're speaking a different language. So for you to say what you want to say means you actually have to develop a whole new vocabulary, and more than the vocabulary (because Gemini is not just language), the hand motions, the gestures, the ways in which ideas are conveyed [makes hand gestures for the words "ideas" and "conveyed"]. It doesn't matter whether you're speaking or not.

## Mimicking

Actually, the first way in which we learn communication isn't verbally. My daughter does this [pursed fingers tapping together]; that's for "more.". The way that we actually learn communication initially is through mimicking. You don't even understand, necessarily, what it is you're doing or you're saying, but you're going to hear the words, see the gestures, see the movements; and babies will naturally adopt that. It's actually through mimicking that we begin to develop a framework of communication, gestures, and words that allows us to interact and participate with life. And it's just important to understand that mimicking is what happens first.

## Understanding is Composed of Logic, Thought, and Conclusions

Understanding happens second. This is why, as a child, they might ask "Why is the sky blue?" Why is anything what it is? And because there are not a lot of existing, defined, logical premises already established in the mind, you could probably tell them anything. "Y'know the sky is blue because Santa Claus decided one day that blue makes him feel happy." That would work for some children. And it's logical. Santa Claus is real, I know what it's like to want to feel happy; therefore, that's why the sky is blue.

So, logic can actually prove anything. Logic doesn't have to be true. Logic just means that you're taking whole thoughts (premises) that the mind has decided are true, and you're putting them together to form a conclusion. And the same thing happens with our gestures. This [gestures with hands] means something. And so, the baby is looking at you and will see certain things and logically put it together to mean certain things, and it's not even happening through a language.

This is why you can have thought, and thought doesn't have anything to do with language. From a Gemini point of view, thought is the way that we are logically piecing together the data that we're intaking to form certain conclusions.

### **Environment and Security**

Another example that comes to me is just the idea of "yes" [nods head] and "no" [shakes head]. These are gestures that mean something, but in this western culture. This [head bobble], in India, looks a lot like "no" [shakes head]; but it's actually something entirely different in that culture. So again, we learn from mimicking. My daughter knows what this is [gesture for "no"], and knows what this is [gesture for "yes"] already.

And so, the language that we develop immediately implies the environment, the immediacy of the world that we are living in, and thus what is familiar and, actually, what is safe, what is known, what is comfortable, what is secure for us. You'll find that, in some way, every archetype can orient toward security in one way or another. The security, the sense of safety, will imply a certain experience of familiarity relative to that particular archetype.

In Gemini, it's "I know what everything means, where everything is, what's being translated through different gestures and words." This is why there can be insecurity in being in an environment where the mind has not yet established a context for how to interact, how to relate.

### **Gemini Logic, Sagittarius Intuition**

So, in the Gemini archetype, there is often a need for maps. Maps can literally say... I'm driving, and the map says "This is where everything is," so I know. You see a road sign and that road sign says "Right Turn" or "1 Mile." This is all very concrete information that allows me to logically understand and piece together the greater context of the road that I'm on.

Compare that to the Sagittarius polarity which does not want a map. It just wants to drive and intuit where to go and where to turn, because the Sagittarius orientation isn't working through logical premises. The Sagittarius orientation is working through an intuitive sense and connection to the meaning and the purpose of life. It's orienting from a completely different place where it's following something that has no empirical basis.

### **Truth and Logical Conclusions**

What Gemini needs to learn from Sagittarius is not to construct and build the entirety of its life according to logic, because you can't. You can't arrive at truth from logic. When the mind tries to do that, it actually gets stuck. An example of this is simply where we might take in social cues, like: you looked away or you made certain gestures or you said certain things, and I'm piecing the data together and using that to conclude "This is how you feel about me," or "I'm concluding that you're lying." It's basically taking logical data, we're taking it in and we're piecing it together to form a logical conclusion.

But the issue here is, the mind is going to form the conclusions according to what it knows, and there's always more data. It ends up that this person just got out of a really difficult argument with someone they care about and was feeling and processing a lot of emotion. Well, that's new information now. But, without that information, the mind will gravitate towards whatever

it's inclined to know which, really, ultimately corresponds to our personal experience, our personal memory, what we've already established as factual or logical in our world. And we say "Oh, acting that way means this," but then more data comes in and then you're like "Oh, okay. Acting that way can actually mean many different things." So, you can't depend purely on logic, because logic is always going to be limited by the data set that we have.

## **The Senses**

We speak about data in terms of what we absorb from the environment. It's not just what we see, it's not just what we hear, it's also what we taste and what we smell. The Gemini archetype actually corresponds to the hands. And, in fact, what happens in Gemini is we're taking in data through all of our senses. At that level, it's not data, it's just raw experience; and the mind makes it information. Right? You're touching [stroking one hand with the other hand] and the mind says "Kind of soft." You can feel the air, "Warm, a little chilly." And you have the ability for the mind to classify and identify the diversity of possible flavors, textures, experiences, emotions, temperature levels, modulations, notes, tones, frequencies, velocities, sensations, color tones.

## **Classifying and Organizing**

In life, you could actually take anything and find an infinite number of shades, expressions, tones, modalities, magnitudes for it and the mind will label it. So, we have manometers, ways of measuring frequency, ways of measuring volume and temperature in objective ways, whether it's Celsius or Fahrenheit. This is what the mind has done. It said, "Okay, let's call *that* '32 degrees Fahrenheit'. Let's call *that* '0 degrees Celsius'," labeling it and finding a way to objectively measure it so we can say "This thing is a fact. This is a piece of data called '0 degrees Celsius'." And this allows us to build upon more premises from which we can grow our understanding of reality and actually learn more about life. Once we've established certain facts about reality we're able to use these facts, given that these facts are solid, these facts are determined. We know that they're real. We've seen their objective reality and we've given it a name. So now we can take that name and say "Here, this is a thing. Let's study and practice this thing and learn more about this thing."

What happens in Gemini is we can learn an infinite number of things about an infinite number of things forever. There's really no gauge for how much the mind can learn about something. In fact, the more information we have about anything, the more information we can possibly uncover.

## **Mutability and Research**

So, in theory, Gemini corresponds to mutable air, air being a mind thing. Mutability (we'll learn more about mutability, but you might be already starting to get a sense of it) is sort of diffuse, it's open, it can be anywhere. This is where the idea of research comes in with Gemini. So you can research anything; and researching just means we're uncovering information, uncovering data that will build upon the existing data that we have. Again, research can go in any direction. This is why you can't rely on Gemini for the truth. If it's integrating the Sagittarius polarity there can be an intuitive gauge, because otherwise anything could potentially be true.

So, I mentioned this, but I want to go a little more deeply into this. If I want to research the correlation between cheetahs appearing in the front of my house and my sleeping patterns, I can, in fact, do a study on that. And I'll say, "So far there have been no cheetahs that have ever

appeared in front of my home. And so far, every single night, I've gotten at least one hour of sleep. The conclusion is, the lack of prevalence of cheetah equals a certain threshold of minimum sleep." Obviously that's insane, but how do I know when I've come to a clear conclusion? How do we know when we've really gotten it all? And the answer is, we never do.

### **Confusion and Defensiveness**

There's always more information. That's why we actually have to always keep an open mind. And the purpose of Gemini is for the data and the information to be functional, to allow for communication of ideas; that's it. Yes, we can learn a lot and reveal a lot of information and really build a more holistic understanding of reality, but the moment we try and arrive at a completion "I know it. I've figured it all out now," that's where we end up in confusion.

The pattern within Gemini can either be this mental confusion, kind of a lot of ideas that aren't quite connecting, and trying to connect it all together. It's like throwing a bunch of LEGO's or puzzle pieces on the floor and trying to put it together. Or, it can be defensiveness.

The defensiveness within Gemini is wanting to defend the logical constructs that have been established because of the need for security. "I know the answer, I figured it out. I already have the data sets together." But when new information comes in, new perspective, new data, that can feel very threatening to the ego structure.

### **Statistical Analysis**

Another example of research can be a statistical analysis. So, for example, "What was the frequency of online astrology courses in the year of 2019, pre-COVID-19? What was the frequency of online astrology courses post-COVID-19?" And you can say, "Oh there was an increase in astrology online courses post-COVID-19." But we'll have to gather more data. We'll have to say "Okay, over the arc of several years, Covid not included, was there a general increase of online astrology courses?" You have to gather a lot of data to be able to understand things more accurately, more clearly. You'll never have the full picture.

But if there's intelligence, if there's thoughtfulness, we'll know there are more things to consider and think about, thus more data sets to take into account. So, a good statistical analysis will actually be very considerate, very thoughtful of the data field, the information, the questions that it's asking. We see this in polling.

Polling, for example, for politics and presidential polls, when there are people running for office, the polling can be very misleading because you can poll certain populations, or poll people through calling them on the phone, and do that at certain times of day which would statistically correspond to a certain population of people that would be more politically inclined towards a certain position. But, if you called at a different time of day, the data collected would be more likely to be different. I mean, there are all of these different considerations; and a lot of pollsters will know these facts, know this data (this is my hunch, at least). You're going to poll in certain counties or certain regions where there's a certain kind of population that is inclined towards a particular political orientation. So, it's very easy to, either intentionally or unintentionally, skew data towards a particular logical conclusion.

### **Overthinking**

Oftentimes, within the Gemini archetype, a pattern would be to almost think one's way through. We do this all the time. We utilize the Gemini/Mercury function all the time to get ourselves out of ruts. It doesn't usually work because we need to actually reference a different way of being in the present moment that isn't mental. But oftentimes, what we'll do is think a lot (often just in our head, or maybe out loud), and it's like attempting to find some sort of answer or conclusion or intellectual cohesion with the mind. We can do this with a situation that was emotionally distressful for ourselves, going through it in our mind and arguing and trying to put together a perspective with our judgment and our perceptions. And thus, the data and the facts that we are perceiving, it's never really going to bring us any sort of sense of clarity. Or, we can talk about a topic and, instead of feeling into the truth and letting ourselves connect with a more intuitive, holistic connection to the field that we're speaking about, we say "If I can talk more, if I can use more words, then I'll land on it."

It's similar to the Virgo tendency to overcompensate. It's like fixing something indefinitely until it's actually ruined because you're trying to make it perfect. The Gemini mental function is purely mental, it's about thought; whereas, Virgo is about what we're doing, and how we're developing self-accuracy and precision within ourselves, within our actions.

### **Overstimulation and Mental Exhaustion**

The situation with Gemini would be: you end up getting yourself more and more lost by engaging more and more thought to try and get to a place of clarity. You never actually get there. This is a situation where the soul can actually create a profound degree of mental exhaustion and overstimulate the mind, overstimulate the nervous system.

Gemini corresponds to the nervous system, where there is so much excitement and reactivity to environmental stimuli. This can be a situation where either you're thinking or you're having a conversation with someone else, and every thought triggers a new thought. There's the well known teaching that thought creates counter-thought, and then counter-thought creates counter-thought. And if there's a ground, there will be a period at the end of that sentence. You can close that chapter, or you'll be able to close that book and feel content, feel complete. But there's the potential for it to go on and on and on. Imagine if you're having a conversation with someone and one of you will insistently stray from the topic.

### **Grounding Thought With the Sagittarius Polarity**

So, the Sagittarius polarity is: What's the thesis? What's the learning? What's the intention? What's the underlying purpose that we're trying to achieve and get out here?

Sagittarius creates a point of synthesis for all the data and information and communication to connect toward some sort of meaning. And everything has to have meaning. Everything has to have a greater purpose that brings us insight and understanding. Otherwise, the communication and the exchange of knowledge and data has potentially no end. Even a thing like an encyclopedia or an instruction manual, it's specific; it has an intended meaning. Without the Sagittarius polarity, Gemini can represent a mind that doesn't have a reference point for where it's going, so anything can just be an indefinite process of thinking.

### **Social Tool for Understanding**

We learn in Gemini that the purpose of the mind, the purpose of communication, of language, of exchange of data, is to enhance and aid in our evolutionary journey so that we're learning and expanding our understanding, to be able to interact (air sign), relate to one another. It's meant to be a tool, meant to be a communication device.

One of the tendencies within Gemini is the energy of social adaptability. We learn initially through adaptability, through mimicking. That's how we actually build our capacity to understand, ultimately. And to be able to relate and to share and to communicate starts with that mimicking. So, you take that into life; it's a social survival mechanism. We had to learn how to do that. But this can become an issue of duplicity or duplicitous behavior.

### **Duplicity, Lying, and Dishonesty**

Duplicity means that, around certain people or in certain environments, you'll express yourself, act, communicate, speak in a certain way to elicit and express a certain thing, a certain energy. But, in a different environment or around a different person you'll mold and chameleon, you'll adapt yourself accordingly. And, it might be because you're trying to belong, you want to be acceptable, you want to present a certain idea and make it seem believable. You could be a politician that's wanting to be convincing to this particular group of people. There are all kinds of reasons why a soul might be duplicitous; but it's not honest.

When chameleon-ing and adopting becomes a way of presenting a certain mask, it's not honest. It's manipulating the Gemini function, the communication function, to create the appearance of a certain reality that isn't true. And it's happening all through logic, because we know the mind will piece together certain things when it sees us acting in a certain way and sitting a certain way and implying a certain gesture, like [leans back in chair], "This looks comfortable." I can act this way to present myself in a certain way, whether or not it's true. Right? But, if I'm wanting to convey this, I can play the role. I can act a certain way.

Actually, Gemini corresponds to lying and dishonesty, which can be Gemini, can be Sagittarius, can also be Pisces (and I'll speak more about this in a little bit). But, the dishonesty within Gemini is the pretending to look like something that you're not; it's using duplicity. And it's actually very easy for Gemini to get away with things like stealing and all kinds of crime, because it can know how to act in a way that communicates something that isn't actually true.

### **Open-Mindedness**

On the flip side, the gift of all of this is open-mindedness. Gemini has that inherent open-mindedness where it can be around different people, be in different environments. And, if there isn't a fixedness of the mind, there is the capacity to learn all kinds of things because of the ability to adapt to the social climate, to the intellectual climate that one is in. This is where there's the possibility of being able to talk to anyone, interact with anyone, have all kinds of conversations, and learn all kinds of things from all different kinds of sources, as well as being able to translate ideas in ways that different kinds of people from different levels of understanding, different cultures, different ways of communicating, can understand.

### **The Soul's Program**

Every soul, in their own way, will be faced with that Gemini challenge of learning adoptability. Some souls are very skilled at it. Some souls need to learn how to do that. It ultimately depends

on the program of the soul. What are the evolutionary and karmic needs of the soul? What's the reality of their soul journey? Some people are learning many languages. Some people find themselves needing to translate particular ideas and write about it or communicate it, and thus create logical premises.

The Gemini stuff in *my* chart corresponds to spiritual ideas. When we look at my chart down the road, you'll see that Sagittarius and Gemini are actually intertwined in my chart; and we'll learn what that means. So, part of my work is using logical premises to communicate more conceptual, spiritual concepts and ideas.

So, the kind of communication that we're doing, how we're communicating, what we're communicating about and the information that we're drawn to learn, the information, the data that we're wanting to acquire, is all relevant to our ongoing evolutionary needs. And that question: When do you stop learning? When do you stop taking in information? It comes back down to the soul program. We're all going to learn and know what we're meant to learn and know.

### **Research and Bringing Dualities Together**

If there's a need to research more, we will feel that, and we will set upon the life path to research that, and we'll learn that. This is the thing, because otherwise, in theory, we can go on and on and on about anything. A soul needs to be connected to an underlying "What's the purpose? What's the meaning of all this? What am I looking to find?"

There's a quality within Gemini of bringing dualities together. Because of the fact that we're taking thoughts about reality and learning more about the wholeness of reality, it's very common within the Gemini archetype for a soul to find itself studying things that are seemingly completely not related and finding the connection. I was talking to someone recently that was doing a collaboration, two people that are collaborating with something about Persian history or Persian migration patterns and something about Celtic culture. Like, I never would have thought of Persia and Celtic culture together. But you can do that. I mean, you can find that, the cross-breed, the cross-connection, the cross-study between any two things. Oftentimes, that's part of a soul's work with Gemini. In other ways, because it's not always about this information we're researching or studying, it's how the mind is reconciling between the seemingly irreconcilable aspects of reality and bringing it together.

### **Concentric Circles**

Lastly, I'll just share one teaching from Jeffrey Wolf Green. He often described Gemini as concentric circles, one within another. And I think that's a beautiful way of thinking. One thought adds another thought, adds another thought: words, sentences, paragraphs, chapters, books. So, we learn whole things about reality through building upon our context and our understanding. And then we can share that and communicate that with people that have a completely different framework. This is how, in the evolution of consciousness, progressively, through the exchange of data and information, we're all building a more brilliant and full and complete understanding of reality. It's like the Gemini is this giant Wikipedia page where, the more we learn, the more we're able to share and communicate, which means the more we learn, and connections that we never knew are put together. And it's a really beautiful thing.

## **Evolutionary Stages in Gemini:**

Let's close with looking at Gemini through the evolutionary stages. At every stage of evolution the information, the data that the soul seeks, as well as the connection that the soul is capable of creating about the wholeness of reality, will be very different.

The thing to understand here is, the world of data and facts and information comes from the questions that we're asking. The questions we ask create and imply the field of results that we can find. Change the question and it opens up a new possibility of data and information. Because, once again, data and information is infinite. There's an infinite number of things that we can learn about reality. All we need to do is ask the right kind of question, and that will give us a whole new stream of data points that, otherwise, we never would have known about.

- **Consensus**

So, of course, in consensus stages of evolution, the information and knowledge, the context of reality that the soul will be able to piece together through its learning, will be limited to whatever fits within consensus models. There won't generally be an openness or a capacity to access information that is beyond the logical constructs that have already been established. So, things like astrology might be classified as "evil," or "wrong," or "unscientific."

- **Individuated**

Whereas, in individuated stages, there's much more of an open mindedness. And so, the logical capacities of the mind have opened up to greater possibilities. More inclusive and thoughtful questions will be asked, which will then yield a greater field of results. There's the capacity to interact with points of view and perspectives and mediums of thinking and communication that are beyond one's immediate reality. And so, there's a greater potential in the individuated stages for information and knowledge to be shared through a great diversity of communication and sharing.

- **Spiritual**

In the spiritual stages, it's understood that all of reality is not just what we see with the physical world. So, in terms of the questions that we ask, it's possible for the mind, through Gemini, to access information at any level of attunement to reality. It really just depends on the soul's program, but following a logical stream of thinking to form conclusions, and thus a more whole understanding of reality, can happen in regards to one's spiritual nature, one's spiritual identity. It very much reminds me of a teaching from Ramana Maharshi: Self-inquiry is like a practice of using a little stick to get out a splinter. It's using wood to get out wood. The mind can be directed in a way where it actually reveals knowledge of our true self. Likewise, in the spiritual stages of evolution, the soul is really learning who it is. And so, there's a general disidentification from one's thinking.

## **The Mind as a Tool for Communication and Expression**

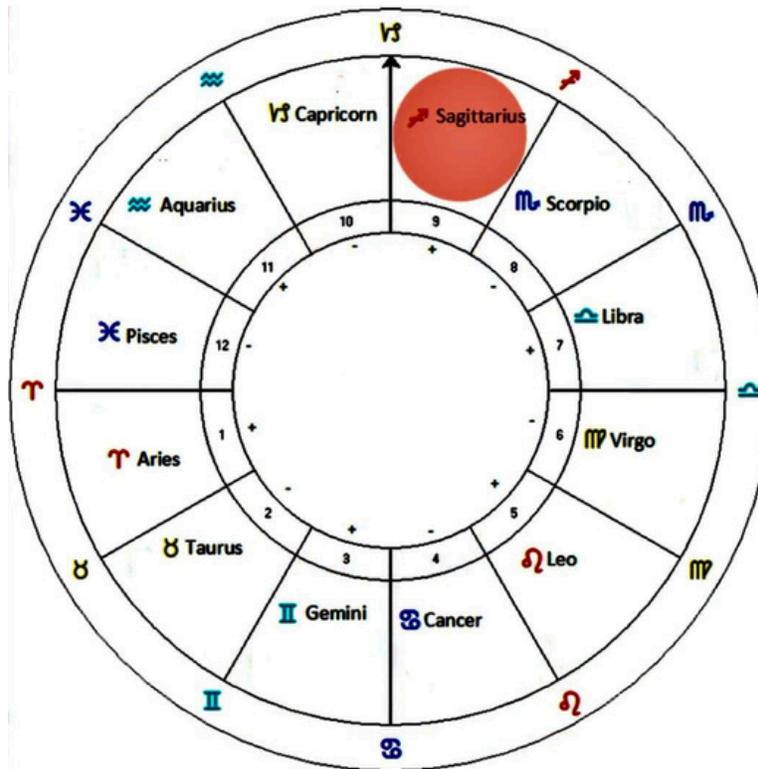
In the western world in particular, but really all around the world, there's strong identification with the linear function. Gemini corresponds to the left brain, the linear, logical brain. We're usually just thinking all the time, and often basing our sense of security on our thoughts, what

we can know, what we have the answers to, what makes logical sense. And there's a degree to which, on the spiritual journey, we have to know how to be in relationship to the mind so that it's not the basis for our sense of self, it's not the basis for our security. Thus, we really learn, ultimately, that the mind is a vehicle, a vessel for communication, for knowledge. We learn, ultimately, to use it as a tool so it serves the function to communicate and express what we are meant to.

And that completes our teaching on Gemini. Let's look at Sagittarius.

# Sagittarius

## Sagittarius



Hello everyone. Welcome to Sagittarius. Sagittarius is mutable fire. It is the third sign of the third quadrant.

The evolutionary intention in Sagittarius is to expand one's understanding, one's insight into the nature of reality. The Sagittarius domain really points us to this natural need within every soul to understand its place in the cosmos. You can imagine this as standing where you are and looking all around you, looking at the stars and saying, "What's the purpose of all this? What's this all about? Who am I? What is the nature of life?"

### Understanding of Truth

Our orientation to come to an understanding and a greater insight into what this is all about is what Sagittarius is; which means, we're always expanding our understanding of the truth. Now, Truth with a capital "T" is Pisces. Pisces *is* the Tao. Pisces *is* Oneness. Pisces *is* Love. Pisces *is* Ultimate Meaning.

Sagittarius is our understanding of that; it's our comprehension of it. So, Pisces would be the Tao; Sagittarius would be Taoism, any kind of "-ism" or philosophy or a way of understanding reality, as well as any path or practice or philosophical construct, or spiritual teacher or spiritual teaching that will bring us into a more full direct experience of what is True.

### Evolving From Truth to More Truth

The nature of this expansion is going to occur through our unique nature. We all have our own cultural context that we come from. We also just have our own nature, our own soul path. According to our individual program, our own soul nature, we're going to have realizations and come upon a greater understanding of the truth in our own unique way. There's as many paths in life as there are souls, as there are people.

The Sagittarius journey really takes us into the energy of a personal drive and a personal path towards greater revelation. My friend and colleague Steve Wolfson once said something like, "In Sagittarius, it's not that you're evolving from falsehood to truth." He explained that we evolve from truth to more truth. We all have some level of insight, some level of realization, but there's always more to see, there's always the next insight, the next "Aha!" And what happens as we deepen our insight and deepen our awareness, we are able to appreciate and live and apply the principles of truth into more aspects of our life.

When we stop learning, when we stop growing, when we stop encountering a more full and direct experience of reality, we risk the possibility of setting up shop in a very partial and incomplete understanding. We could have some kind of amazing experience and then think we have it all figured out.

Likewise, it's very easy to convince ourselves, to tell ourselves "I have this great knowledge, this great insight, this great understanding because I was meditating and I had this amazing vision. Now I'm going to teach people how to meditate and have this experience." It can be very easy to convince oneself of a certain quality of realization and insight that hasn't actually been fully integrated yet.

### **Teachers and Students**

On the Sagittarius journey, as we walk this soul path, we're going to come across teachers. And oftentimes, we will be these teachers. In fact, we can say, everyone is both a teacher and a student. We're always coming into resonance with others who will learn something from us; and we're teaching, not necessarily by teaching something overtly, but just by how we live. The sincerity and authenticity with which we live and how we do what we do *is* our teaching. People will often have a karmic relationship with us where we will play that role of teacher or guide, or we will come into relationship with other people who will play that role for us in some way or another; and again, this role isn't necessarily a formal teacher/student. But, whenever we find ourselves in such a relationship, it's very, very important that we understand that no one's path is the same. The actual revelation of Truth has to be a direct experience; it has to come from one's sincere and honest direct experience.

There was once a class that I was attending with this teacher that was kind of working with a whole group of people and channeling guides and just brilliantly working with everyone and was really on, really relevant, really addressing people on a soul level; and I was impressed. I asked him "What's your spiritual practice like?" I was curious; like, what's his daily practice like? And he said to me "*My practice is my practice, your practice is your practice.*" Your practice is your practice— I really appreciated that.

### **Authenticity**

I was really thankful because I've had this tendency (I'm a Sagittarius, I have a lot of Sagittarius in my own chart) to look outside. "Oh look! That looks really good. Let me try to be like that." What can happen in Sagittarius is we can see a path, we can see a possible vista over there, a greater realization, and want to achieve it. And we end up trying to replicate something that someone else did. This can just be telling ourselves that we're on a certain path towards a certain experience, a certain realization, but we're just playing out a belief system. So, the journey has to be very authentic. And for it to be authentic it really means we need to feel really "in the moment."

### **Expectations and Living in the Moment**

Our journey of realization and discovery, which is not just spirituality, but we can say everything is spirituality. It can also be business, it can be making more money, how to win friends and influence people, any area of our life has the potential for expansion and growth. There's more to discover, there's more insight that can be had there; and thus, there's the possibility for more success, more growth, more expansion.

So, it's necessary that we're really living in the moment. We're not trying to force a particular experience. We're not convincing ourselves of where we're going and what it's supposed to look like, how it's supposed to be. This is one of the main teachings in spiritual practice that we learn from so many teachers— not to have any expectations. If you're sitting down and you're meditating, don't try to hold on to or expect any kind of experience. This is true for the life journey.

### **Freedom**

Sagittarius needs a lot of freedom. It needs a lot of space. Because the energy of space and freedom, the freedom to roam, the freedom to not really know where the next day or the next moment will take oneself, it really resonates with the need to be in touch with one's intuition. And intuition is kind of the antenna, it's how we gauge the wholeness of life and follow the sense of "I'm going to go here, I'm called to do this." Our intuition resonates with a space of personal authenticity. When we're following intuition, it's authentic; it's true for us. Following that intuition means we are really open to the journey, we don't have a lot of preconceived constructs. Lao Tzu said in the *Tao Te Ching*, translated by Stephen Mitchell:

*A good traveler has no fixed plans and is not intent upon arriving.*

*A good artist lets his intuition lead him wherever it wants.*

*A good scientist has freed himself of concepts and keeps his mind open to what is.*

"A good traveler has no fixed plans." This need for spaciousness and freedom really says "On this soul journey, I am following a path of unfolding that actually isn't of my own making." This is what we're doing in Sagittarius. We're connecting with something greater than what we fully comprehend yet. We're letting it teach us. We're letting it shape us. We're following the Tao. We're learning how to listen to the truths that want to teach us and speak through us and to us, everywhere we are.

### **Open to Experience**

My whole life, I've had this need to kind of wander, not wander necessarily, just walk a lot and take turns that I've never taken and go places I've never gone. It's never really been "I'm going

to go somewhere new today,” just every once in a while I'll find myself on roads that I've never walked before, encountering things that I've never encountered. And I love that. I love the experience of just setting off and going, and not necessarily looking for anything, but just enjoying the journey. Just yesterday, I believe, I was taking a long walk in my neighborhood. I've lived here for a year and a half, and about 10 minutes away from my home is a home that has a few llamas in their front yard. I live 10 minutes from llamas. That's great! I love that! There's just an appreciation of how much there is to learn, how new, how expansive life actually is when we're just open to the experience.

### **The Issue of Seeking**

Now, one of the issues that can happen in Sagittarius is that of seeking. So, that's different than being open to the journey, being open to the pilgrimage of life. Seeking is “I'm restless. I'm looking for the teacher” or “I'm looking for someone, someplace, some other experience beyond here, now.” That can really create a lot of irritation within the soul where there's this perpetual sense of “Here isn't where the teachings are. Here isn't where the growth is. Here isn't where the healing is. Here isn't where the love is. Here isn't where awakening is.”

It's a tricky thing because, on the one hand, Sagittarius and that need for freedom will often say “Yes, there are places to go.” In the soul journey, we'll find ourselves in all kinds of experiences. We can get on a plane and travel somewhere far that we've never been before. We can find ourselves in relationships and places and with teachers and doing things that we've never done before that will all be a part of the expansion of awareness. And, it doesn't always have to be that way.

### **Stabilizing and Integrating**

One of the deeper wisdom aspects within Sagittarius is “Here, now, where *you* are.” And that's where that sincerity and that self-honesty becomes very important. Because there needs to be the capacity to integrate and assimilate the teachings, not always be going somewhere else. There could be periods in our life where there is a lot of adventure and movement, but there could also be periods in our life where you're just in one spot. There's no qualitative difference between the two. This reminds me of a song by George Harrison.

*Arrive without traveling  
See all without looking  
Do all without doing*  
[from the song “Inner Light”]

And so, there needs to be that ability to stabilize, to integrate, to assimilate, and be where we are.

### **Alienation and the Psychology of Misunderstanding**

One of the dynamics that can manifest in Sagittarius is that of alienation. So, alienation can happen; you can feel alienated, like you don't belong, you don't belong in this culture, or you're supposed to be somewhere else.

This can manifest very tangibly in terms of you coming from a particular culture or racial background. And you know, race and culture really says a lot, from a Sagittarian point of view,

about how you look at reality. Coming from a more tribal nature-based culture and then moving into a big city in a Western civilization, that's a culture difference and also really speaks to a very prominent difference in worldview. Big cities can be consumerism, more activity, more doing, walk quickly. All of that points to a particular way of thinking of reality. Whereas, coming from a more natural "forestry" nature-based living, it might be slower, there might be more of a communion with nature, with the cycles of the earth.

A soul can feel very alien, can feel alienated. And so, there's a possibility of either *feeling* misunderstood or the karmic dynamic of *being* misunderstood. The psychology of misunderstanding is a Sagittarius thing because what happens in being misunderstood or misunderstanding, or the fear of being misunderstood, it really ultimately points back to the level to which we are clear in embodying our path, our nature.

### **Alienating Others**

There can be this dynamic of needing to prove oneself, needing to explain oneself, or needing to (what Jeffrey Wolf Green said) "convince and convert others." The need to be understood, likewise the need for other people to have the same beliefs or understanding or insights that you have, really points to the security mechanism in Sagittarius. "I feel secure if other people see things the way I see things, if I have my own way, or my own cultural way, or my own way of doing things." You know, even eating with your hands versus eating with a fork, the way that we interpret things is Sagittarius. So we can interpret [raises his fingers to his mouth] "Oh, that's really primitive and messy. Eating with a fork, that's noble and that's respectable." It's just two different cultures, two different ways of relating to reality.

There can be that experience where a soul is really called upon to just be themselves, be natural. And yet, at the same time, there can be this issue of alienating other people. This is, again, where the soul has to learn the Gemini polarity, which is some sort of tact and social awareness.

I think I heard a story once where someone went to China and asked for sugar in their tea. No one puts sugar in their tea; you don't drink tea with sugar. I don't remember what the story was, but it was this whole thing around the waiter at the restaurant (or whoever was serving the tea) not being able to relate to that, like "We do not put sugar in tea." And so, there's a need to appreciate that, if you're in a certain environment, there are different ways of thinking, different cultural ways of being, and to not try to fit your way into another person's way.

A very common example of that would be what we can often think of as proselytizing. You can come from a fundamentalist religion or spirituality and think that it's your role in life to go to people in places where they don't have these teachings, they don't know the gospel. "I'm going to go to this country where they never knew Jesus, they never got the gospel, and I'm going to preach to them." So, this can be very alienating as well.

### **Inner Knowing**

The deepest teaching within Sagittarius is that the Truth doesn't need to be explained. It doesn't need to be proven. It doesn't need to be justified. There's no empirical basis for our inner knowing. We're not coming to our insight and our knowing of our path and our insights about reality through some kind of logic. If we have to explain it and justify and prove it, then it

actually probably isn't totally clear inside of us. It might not be entirely true. There might be a lot of belief construct that we're trying to uphold. The Truth rests inside of us, silently and peacefully. There's that Buddhist teaching that says, "Just like the ocean tastes like salt, tastes salty, the Truth tastes like freedom."

## **The Principles of Truth:**

### **Nature Holds the Answers**

I want to share now an important correlation between the Sagittarius archetype and Nature. Sagittarius corresponds to Nature, to what is natural, to being natural, as well as being authentic (which I've spoken about). This is so because, if we want to understand more of reality, look at reality. Right? Look towards Nature. Look towards what is natural. And this will reveal the nature of Reality.

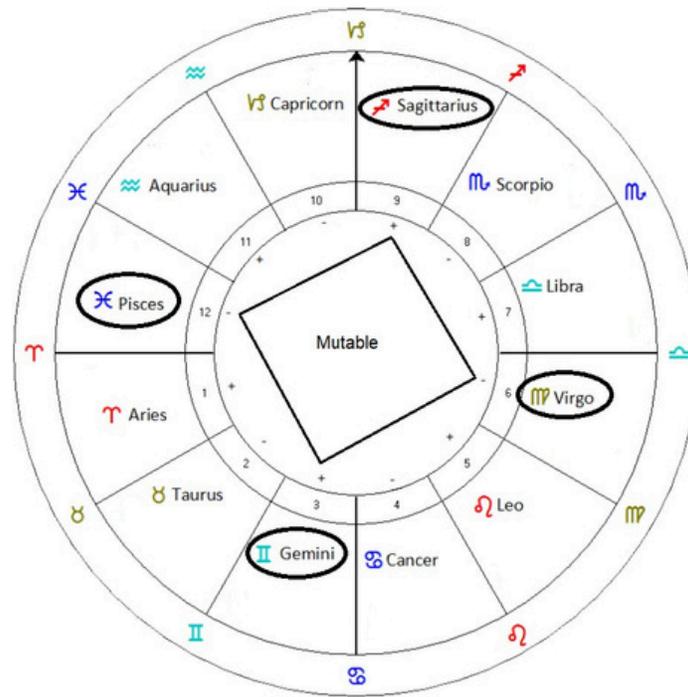
So, there's a natural inclination within Sagittarius towards Nature itself, but also experiences within Nature that will be revelatory. Being out in the forest and just sitting by the trees, there are so many teachings, so many insights, because Nature itself holds all the answers to life. If we're inside of an office building, the same principles of truth that are manifest in the forest are also manifest in the office building.

### **Honesty and Dishonesty**

What's happening is we're learning these principles of truth and then we're learning to apply it, we're learning to see it everywhere. There's nowhere that the Tao isn't operative. There's nowhere where life isn't *what it is*, it doesn't matter whether we've cut the trees down or not. Thus, the energy of sincerity and authenticity is so important because only through being honest can we resonate with Nature and Reality, which is totally honest. Nature doesn't lie. Reality is totally and sincerely itself. Thus, the archetype of honesty is a very important quality in Sagittarius. And thus, dishonesty is a natural shadow expression as well.

Dishonesty would be trying to convince oneself or others of something that isn't true, but trying to make it so. It could be exaggerating yourself based on some sort of partial realization or a potential, but not actually knowing where you are. It could be me saying, "Oh yeah, you know, I made a whole lot of money. Come to my house, I'll throw a big party." And I didn't make a lot of money. I had an idea about some kind of business project that I was talking to a friend about and if I launch it, then there's the possibility of making a lot of money, like a LOT of money, but that'll be in a few years. So, it's like the Sagittarius arrow, I see where I want it to go, but I'm still here. So, there can be this issue of dishonesty and being very focused on this idea of who we think we want to be, or it can feel very big and glamorous.

But there's something really relieving and, again, it's about freedom, we actually free ourselves in being completely honest: honest in our words, honest in our actions. And I want to speak about this a little bit because I mentioned this in the Gemini video, that I would speak about this more later.



### Gemini and Lying

When it comes to the idea of lying, there are a few ways to understand this. At this point, we've taught all of the mutable signs. So, I want to actually speak about them and just mention how lying or dishonesty can be relevant, but in a different way for each one of them. So, as I mentioned, with Gemini that's duplicity. It's using the languaging and gesturing to formulate logical conclusions in other people's minds. So, we're presenting something. We might not actually be saying anything not true, but it's creating a reality that will logically produce certain conclusions in the mind. It's the ability to change/chameleon oneself according to circumstances.

### Pisces and Deceit

In Pisces, we're actually looking at deceit. Pisces corresponds to illusions. So, in Pisces, there's a possibility of either becoming completely deceived by others or deceiving others by way of absolutely pretending to be something that you're not entirely.

### Sagittarius - Exaggeration and Persuasion

In Sagittarius, it's exaggeration and self-convincing, and also the archetype of the salesperson. "I'm going to convince you to buy this comb." [holding a comb up to the camera] And I might say things that I might not believe in, but I'm going to be so convincing and persuasive that you're going to buy three at the end of my little sales pitch.

There can be a way of living in Sagittarius where a soul lives their whole life, sort of in that salesperson mindset, convincing themselves and others of ideas and concepts and things to be/things to do, but they're not necessarily honest. And they may not be honest with themselves. They may not actually be looking in themselves to say "Is this really true for me? Do I really believe in this comb?" [holding a comb up to the camera]

**Virgo and Excuses** Lastly, the Virgo dynamic with dishonesty is that Virgo can be dishonest towards oneself with all the excuses that a soul could make and rationalizations for why not to work on oneself. Right? The house is a mess and your health is declining, all the different excuses that a soul will make to not deal with what needs to be dealt with, rationalizations that are fundamentally dishonest, that keeps the soul from doing the work that needs to be done.

### **Being Present on the Pilgrimage**

I want to share this perspective that, in a way, we can think of this whole soul journey, this journey of each one of us being here in a body on this earth, from a Sagittarian perspective this is just like one big trip. This is one big pilgrimage, where we're all going to be encountering these profound lessons and realizations as to the true nature of reality.

We each have our evolutionary program and we don't know where it's going. None of us can really know where it's going. None of us can have a complete view, an insight into the full program of this life. And there's a need to be present with it. There's a need to be where we are, to be present with what the journey is right now.

### **Optimism and Pessimism**

And so, this does ask for a quality of optimism. Optimism within Sagittarius says "This is great! Here we are! This is about learning and growing and healing and waking up. Expansion." The Sagittarius archetype in the chart really points to that possibility of cultivating a very healthy, optimistic attitude towards life. This optimistic attitude basically appreciates that there's always more to grow, there's always more to realize, there's always more insight available.

At the same time, Sagittarius can correspond to a quality of pessimism. How we interpret phenomenal reality, how we interpret our life, is Sagittarius. The pessimistic attitude can be a belief system that kind of keeps us perpetually not where we are, or not content. And so, where there is that pessimism, it's not about spiritual bypassing or just making it all good and light, the wisdom in Sagittarius is that there's another way to look at this.

### **Interpreting Phenomenal Reality**

We have to remember that Sagittarius corresponds to how we interpret phenomenal reality. And, oftentimes, things will get really big just to reflect back to us the nature of our own minds, how we're interpreting things and so, to come back to a place where we are, in a sense, willing to start over again, willing to come back to the path. You can think of it as you're traveling down the road. And remember, Sagittarius doesn't use a map.

Gemini will have a map; it'll know where everything is, and wants to map it all out because security here is linked to being able to logically piece things together in the mind.

### **Feeling Lost**

Sagittarius is orienting through intuition. So, there's no map; it's just driving. And it might think it's going somewhere. Maybe it was operating under some kind of belief system, telling itself "This is where I'm supposed to go." And boom! You get to this place and it's not where you wanted to go. And you can blow that up with "Oh, this is wrong! I'm on the wrong path, I don't

know where I'm going!" In Sagittarius, just as much as there can be that insistence on knowing and/or the seeking, there can also be this consciousness of "I can't really know the truth. I need someone else to tell me. I have to look outside of myself to find out." And so, to feel lost, or the psychology of being lost, the psychology of the wanderer can be very strong in Sagittarius.

### **The Journey with Pisces**

Then, it's like giving up on the journey, as if the journey was actually about a particular destination or a particular place. And so, the invitation is always to pivot back into "Okay, what's the opportunity right now? How can I learn?"

When you're driving on the road and you're going in the wrong direction for four hours, the moment you catch that and you correct your thinking and you begin moving in the right direction, it doesn't matter if you haven't arrived at the place yet. It doesn't matter if you're backtracking the same road you've already driven. The moment we are moving from a place of honesty and sincerity, that's where all the magic comes in.

This is really the relationship between Sagittarius and Pisces. We walk our path in the present moment, grounded in the sense of freedom and authenticity, and then (Pisces) the Oneness interacts with us along the way. The Tao will teach us and show up however it is able to show up according to the space we've made available for it.

### **The Journey with Virgo**

The Virgo square to Sagittarius really asks us to make sure our beliefs are working. Imagine you're sitting in meditation and you're telling yourself for years, "This is the practice that I need to do to have this kind of experience." And so, Virgo has to come in here and say, "Okay, great. Are you healing? Is it getting you anywhere? Is it working? Is it producing a greater direct experience and understanding of reality? Is there evolution happening here?" So, the self-honesty of Sagittarius relative to Virgo is to really look at "Are we living in a conceptual world that isn't practically yielding any kind of results?" So, we have to check ourselves. And there's really no value in beliefs.

Jeffrey Wolf Green once said something to the likes of (and this is not an exact quote), "With Sagittarius, it's not about beliefs. There's nothing to believe, but everything to know."

[Exact quote]

*Nothing to believe, everything to know.*

*And what you know you do not need to believe because you know it.*

Jeffrey Wolf Green

Knowledge is irrefutable. True knowledge, from a Sagittarian point of view, comes from within; and when it's realized, it's just there.

### **Letting Go to Receive**

There's an important correlation in Sagittarius between being free for the journey and having an optimistic, positive mindset that's able to grow and learn from experience. We oftentimes need to let go in order to receive. Letting go in order to receive is a very basic concept. It means, if you're holding on to something, nothing else can get there unless you let go of the

thing that you're holding on to. But, in Sagittarius, it really does point, at the core, to our beliefs: the way we want the path to go, the way we want it to look, our expectations of the journey. So, often there's a need to let go. And this "letting go" can easily take the shape, can manifest in letting go of people, places, things, jobs, whatever. But that "letting go" is really just guided from a place of deep sincerity and authenticity, where we realize "The holding on no longer feels true or relevant for me."

There was a time in my life where I was wearing a *yarmulke* every day (my whole life I was, up until I was 19 years old or so), and I realized at a certain moment that I didn't need to wear the *yarmulke*. I'd had that thought before, but I never let go of the *yarmulke* because it represented so much to me. There was so much ramification for not wearing it, the possibility of being misunderstood (Sagittarius). "Here I am (I was living in Israel at that time) walking through Jerusalem, not wearing a *yarmulke* on my head. People will see me; they'll make all kinds of assumptions about me." So, I had to get to a point where I realized that this *yarmulke* has nothing to do with God, not to say it doesn't have meaning or value or relevance for some people. Of course it does. But, for me, I realized I would have to hold a belief that it has something to do with God and that I have to always be wearing it, for me to continue to wear it. And I realized, at a certain point, that my relationship to the wholeness of reality has nothing to do with what I'm wearing. Once I realized that, I was able to own that and live that.

And then there was a matter of walking down the street, and I realized (and this is a progressive realization over a period of time in my life, when I was letting go of a lot of the orthodoxy that I lived for many years), the progressive realization was "I'm letting go of what I was." And that means, "The worldview, the constructs that I no longer fit into, I can't go back to that anymore. I can't lie to myself." But that means everything that's come since then was able to come in: "Letting go to receive."

### **Philosophical Cohesion**

And there's that security in Sagittarius, like I mentioned earlier, "If other people believe what I'm believing I can feel secure." That security need in Sagittarius is philosophical cohesion. So, if a whole group of people share a similar way of thinking, then I don't have to really think about whether it's true for me, I can just settle into it. So again, the need for self-honesty is very important in Sagittarius; the reference is inside.

### **Evolutionary Stages in Sagittarius:**

- **Consensus**

Of course, in consensus stages of evolution, the Sagittarius archetype will predominantly manifest through whatever consensus reality provides as a construct for realization; that's generally religion, the immediate beliefs of your culture or nation or society. And yet, it's not just religion or spirituality; it can also be, "What are the ways to think about reality, or how to do business/how to live?" (our cultural way of relating). The tendency will be to adopt whatever mindset is held within one's consensus reality.

- **Individuated**

In the individuated stages, there is a greater receptivity to thoughts, to ideas, to perspectives, to ways of thinking, insights in reality, beyond the consensus. And so, a

soul is able to study philosophy and ways of thinking, ways of understanding reality that are far broader and maybe even aren't directly connected to the culture or society that one grew up in. So, there's a lot of really broad intellectual thinking (Noam Chomsky is a great Sagittarius example that comes to mind right now), just the ability to think of broader concepts and see the meaning, interpret reality in ways that are far more expansive and clarifying.

- **Spiritual**

In the spiritual stages of evolution, the Sagittarius interpretation and understanding will be progressively oriented towards understanding the underlying meaning of life from a spiritual perspective. And so, the soul is going to find themselves progressively interested in connecting with a path, a practice, a way of being, a way of understanding, a philosophical system, spiritual ideas that will help point them back to their own true nature. Of course, this can take so many forms and shapes and go through many different phases.

### **Nature**

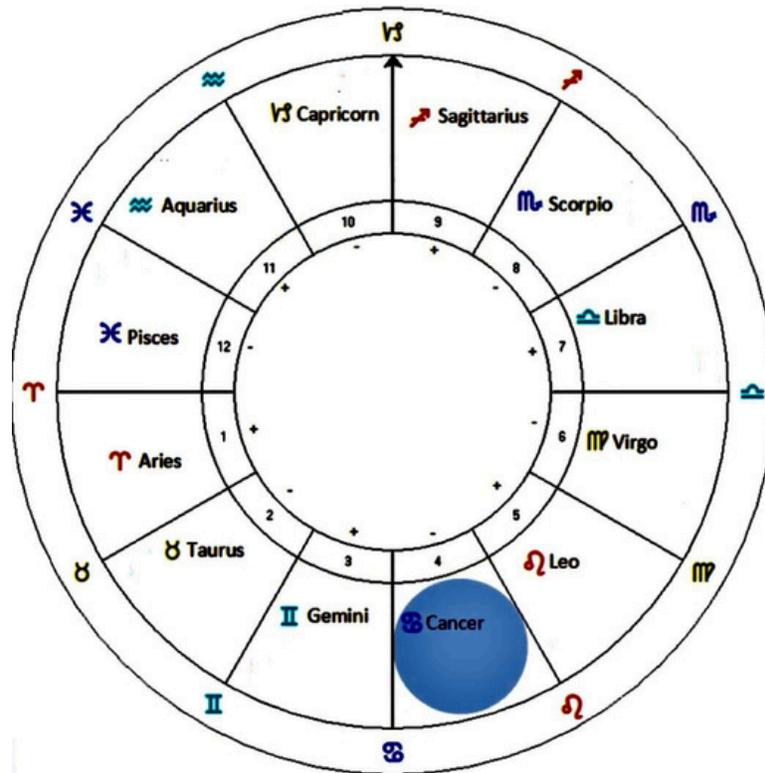
In general, throughout all evolutionary stages, Sagittarius does resonate with Nature and, in general, being outdoors, because the resonance here is with life and Reality. And so, there's a general need within the Sagittarius archetype to connect with Nature on some level.

### **Polarity: Relatability and Context**

One more point about the polarity of Gemini and Sagittarius is there's often a teaching in Sagittarius to make one's teachings and insights translatable or relatable. There can be an issue, whether you're a teacher or whether you're just sharing something about your life and experience with someone else, if it can't be understood, if there's no context in people's minds to understand the references that a person is making. A lot of time our references for reality are very specific to our particular path. Right? I can be talking about things like "the soul" and "God" and "Spirit" and "Love." But it's like, what if a person has never thought of the word "soul" and doesn't know what the word "soul" means? So, a growth edge for Sagittarius is to be open to that Gemini polarity and be open to other ways of thinking about the ideas, the truths, the concepts that are being pointed to. In that way, the soul won't get stuck on a particular way of expressing oneself, a particular way of speaking about the realizations, and can stay open to more perspectives, more ways of coming into this understanding. All right. This concludes our teachings on Gemini and Sagittarius.

# Cancer

## Cancer



Hello everyone. Welcome to Cancer. Cancer is cardinal water. It's the first sign of the 2nd quadrant. The evolutionary intention within Cancer is to nurture the growth and the development of the soul through the human experience. When we start looking at astrology from a soul perspective, the Cancer archetype is a really fascinating and important area to understand. From the point of view of the soul (the soul being infinite, free, inherently sovereign, one with its Source), on this evolutionary journey, moving through desire, engaging experience to evolve, to move through all these different phases of life experience, gradually awakening to who it is, it's happening through the template of human experience.

### **Womb and Protection**

All souls, it doesn't matter how evolved you are or what happened in your last life, we all come into a baby form, through a mother, through a womb. And all babies, all of them, need to be held, need to feed. All babies come into this world completely dependent on care and nurturing. This care and nurturing is expected, not in terms of a Libra expectation, but it's sort of biologically expected. It's innate. It's a part of the fabric of this human biological existence. Babies will go to feed almost right away and the biology of the mother is to provide that. Life is designed to support the nurturing of this process of a baby coming into the world. And as this baby grows, there's a need for protection, there's a need for a lot of care and safety from the environment. It needs to be held in a container that will allow it to evolve, to grow. And there's an aspect to this journey where it's not like "Okay, let's look at this baby's chart. Well, I can see that this baby has a lesson of learning how to do a lot of Virgo. This soul is really doing a lot of Virgo work in this lifetime. So this baby really needs to learn how to pick up after itself."

### **Ego Development (Self-Concept)**

It doesn't matter what your soul-work is in this lifetime, the energy of Cancer, for everyone, starts off in this incredibly vulnerable place of needing to be cared for, needing to be nurtured. As that happens, there's a development that occurs within consciousness if there's healthy ego development, healthy nurturing. And when I say ego development it means the imprints that we're getting from the environment allows for a natural process of experiencing emotion. You have to be able to cry. You have to be able to experience and express your emotions. And, if we're doing that, the ego will develop in a healthy way. When I speak about "ego," I'm speaking about our self-concept, how we look at the world. If we have a healthy self-concept, we'll walk into a new environment and we'll feel secure in ourselves. But, if we don't have a healthy self-concept, the littlest things can trigger insecurity. So, with the healthy ego development, this baby, this soul, will grow in the human experience and gradually be able to engage in life experience with a greater and more fortified sense of wholeness within themselves.

### **Security and Attachment**

The process within Cancer is, we are always just where we are, in terms of what is safe and accessible. And it's not rational, it's not linear; it's totally emotional. It's like a child being dropped off at nursery school, and then their parents leave. I've seen this so many times. There's a lot of fear and insecurity. "Why, why are you leaving? Where are you going? You're gone!" "I'll be back soon." There's no "soon." There's no "I'm going to be back soon." There's just this moment. "Just this moment, I'm experiencing separation. Just this moment, the source of my life, the source of my care and my security and what has provided a profound and necessary sense of safety, emotionally and biologically, is not with me." So, there's a process with Cancer at every stage of life, no matter how old you are, of having healthy attachments and maintaining them. And progressively, the ego structure, the self-concept, is able to acclimate to the changing reality.

### **Change**

What is life? Life is change. This is what we learn in Scorpio, the other water sign that we've learned. Scorpio is about the soul; it's about the evolutionary process. Everything here is impermanent, it all comes and goes. And then we have Cancer where it's not about permanence, it's not about "I need everything to stay the same"; within Cancer, the soul is needing a certain level of continuity, just enough, and for just long enough, so it can begin to feel secure within itself.

### **Self-Intimacy**

At the core, Cancer corresponds to the way in which the soul is gradually cultivating self-intimacy. It's the ability of the soul to be intimate with its own self. This means having a relationship to its emotions. So again, when we're really young, we can't hold space for our own emotions. We don't know how to modulate. We don't know how to work with our environment. We don't know how to create a reality around us that will nurture and protect the tenderness of the present moment so that we can feel it, experience it, move on, integrate it. We need others to do that for us. As we grow, as we learn, we learn to do that for ourselves.

And the interesting thing within Cancer is most of us didn't have perfect childhoods. Even if you did, we all come in with karma. What I'm trying to say is, there's not one human soul that isn't doing emotional work along their soul path, some more than others. For some there's a lot of

karmic stuff within the Cancer domain; which means, as an adult there will be strong and important lessons in having a healthy relationship to one's emotions. So, let's understand what emotions are and how this operates, how this works.

### **Emotions and the Integration of Life Experience**

Emotions are essentially indicating where we are in this present moment. It has nothing to do with the objective reality, with what's actually happening, with what's being said, with what's going on around us. Our emotions essentially indicate to us the degree to which and how we are capable of integrating our experiences in life in a way that can help shape and form a healthy sense of self. Our emotions are always an indication of where we are right now and where the journey actually is.

Again, it has nothing to do with what's going on around us. It's not objective. It's not rational. And so, emotion needs to be integrated. In fact, nothing in life is real until we can emotionally integrate it. When we integrate our emotions it means we're able to let it move, we're allowing it to do its work; and there's just its own process. The ego structure, the human identity, just needs to move through emotion. It's hard to even explain it because it's not an intellectual thing; it's an emotional thing.

### **Patriarchal Attitude About Emotions**

Actually, in patriarchal society, in the way that we've been living in the world, there is a general lack of emotional intelligence, or a lack of appreciation for the importance of the emotional body and the role that it plays. We might favor certain emotions over others, feel shame about certain emotions, not have a context for certain emotions, or we might expect the world to make us feel safe.

There are all kinds of mechanisms where (and a lot of this might be linked to gender and gender conditioning) it's not necessarily easy for most human beings to have a healthy relationship to their emotions. And if you ever see a soul doing that, it's a beautiful thing.

### **Integrating Through the Emotional Body**

It's the ability to connect with the present moment, with whatever's arising: letting it arise, letting it move through. There's a teaching that the more deeply we feel emotions, the more knowledge we have of ourselves. Michelle was saying recently,

*The deeper you feel emotion, the more truth is revealed.  
-dream message Michelle received*

So, emotion is something that needs to be integrated, needs to be experienced.

One core teaching in Evolutionary Astrology is that the evolutionary journey of the soul is facilitated and integrated through the emotional body. And again, it's because nothing is real until it informs our sense of self.

### **Example of the Dog Who Feels Unsafe**

Let me give an example of this: Dogs correspond to Cancer. So imagine you walk into a room and you see a dog, and you're like "Oh, cute doggy!" and the dog freaks out. It either runs away and hides its tail or barks at you and tries to attack you. What's happening there is the dog's

experience of you is occurring through a filter. It's not seeing things clearly. It doesn't know that you're all loving and that you want to nurture it and pet it. It's seeing threat, unsafety, insecurity; and why? Well, maybe its last owner would hit it. There may be all kinds of reasons why there's an imprinting within this particular being to perceive forward movement as threatening.

So, if you want this dog to feel safe, if you want this dog to actually open up and relax around you, you have to work around the ego structure. You can't force realization. You can't force security. You can't force safety. You have to be able to work with where the dog is at. So, a common technique would be just to cultivate a ground of presence. Allow the dog to feel safe with you just being in the room. So, what's happening is, the emotional body is getting a sense of "Oh, I'm here. I'm myself. I'm safe right now. And simultaneous to me feeling safe, there's this other person there. And there's no threat, I'm okay. If this other person tries to do too much too quickly, I'm not going to feel safe anymore, and I'm going to associate this other person with unsafety," so, just being there.

And then there's this experience of maybe getting closer, but maybe not facing the dog, just sitting next to the dog, but you know, being turned outward so there's proximity, but there's not too much intimacy too quickly. In time, this basically creates an acclimation, where the dog will feel safe and comfortable, and then it'll open up to you and, you know, progress that. This dog will see you, get all excited, and be like, "Here's safety, here's security, here's love, here's friendliness!" And this is what happens with Cancer.

With a healthy process of nurturing a sense of security and familiarity, all souls will gradually develop within themselves a sense of "I'm secure. I'm safe. It's okay to be where I am. It's okay to be in the world. It's okay to be with this person. I know who I am."

### **Childhood Environment, Imprinting and Evolutionary Needs**

That gradual process of acclimation is really necessary as we come into all experiences, and it's necessary in the soul's arc of evolution within its lifetime. The fact that the soul comes into human form as a baby means that the nurturing imprint that it experiences and receives growing up will be very karmically relevant to its evolutionary needs in this lifetime. We have to understand that there's reason, there's purpose, there's relevance for why we each come into the life that we come into. And the emotional imprinting is Cancer. This imprinting is a part of the soul setting the template for the work that it's here to do in this lifetime.

### **Experiencing & Nurturing Emotions vs Overly Identifying with Emotions**

I want to come back to one really important point and emphasize it. On the evolutionary journey, in order to integrate our experiences, we have to have the adequate capacity to be with the emotion. This is the work within Cancer; it's to know how to create the container for one's soul journey that is appropriate for where one is at the time, not too fixed on staying metaphorically in bed with the blankets over you. Right? The state of "I don't want to be insecure. I don't want to feel afraid. I don't want to feel threatened." That extreme can manifest as literally or metaphorically staying at home, always cleaving to what's familiar. In that state of consciousness there's a strong identification with the emotions.

You see, the work in Cancer isn't to identify with the emotions, but to experience it, to know how to nurture it. To be the nurturer for the one who's having an emotion means you're predominantly not identified with the emotion.

The other extreme, however, would be to unhealthily push oneself beyond the threshold of what's safe, known, and familiar. In that situation, there's too much stimulus, there's too much activity, there's too much exposure, too much, too quickly. It's kind of like a small tree when it's just a plantling getting trampled on; it needs more protection. So, it can get rained on, it can get the elements, it can get the Sun, it can get the Earth, but it's not going to get trampled on too quickly. It's like a baby that needs a lot of protection before it can start walking and separating itself from its mother.

So, those two extremes: either staying in a state of security but not growing because we're so identified with the emotional state, or exposing oneself to too much vulnerability too quickly which, by the way, will ultimately bring a soul back to a place where they're needing to go deeply within.

### **Going Back to Go Forward**

Often, within the Cancer journey, there's a need to go back in order to go forward. Jeffrey Wolf Green taught that principle in relation to Cancer and Capricorn. (We'll learn more about this with Capricorn soon.) Oftentimes, the need to go backward, it's basically dealing with fundamental, core, often childhood dynamics, nurturing basic needs that weren't addressed. It's like, we can't really evolve, we can't really proceed along the evolutionary journey until we've really addressed these core issues. Or, at some point along the path it's going to arise and we're going to have to look at it.

Adam Gainsburg once offered this analogy that, in Cancer, you have one foot in the waters of the unknown and one foot on solid ground (security, safety); and walking that path is the work in Cancer.

### **Nurturing and Care**

As a soul develops a healthy ego structure and is able to incorporate an experience and integrate life, the Cancer archetype gradually corresponds to a soul that simultaneously has a deep empathy, an appreciation for emotions, thus the ability to hold space, the ability to "be with."

Cancer will often correspond to where we are in the nurturing position, be it as a parent or caretaker or anything where we're present with emotions. Souls with a lot of Cancer will often have a really strong connection to babies (because, of course, babies are all about that), and just the empathic, emotional attunement to the human experience that we all share. There's often an evolution, within Cancer, of the soul learning how to nurture and care for other beings. And there's something very healing and grounding to care for another being, and to realize "Wow, this is actually nurturing them." It's like giving someone a massage and seeing that they're deeply relaxed, that they're actually nurtured; they're resting. It's like, "Oh wow! I'm giving this nourishment and this love to this being." We all need that, we all deserve that. And it's a way of being; it's a way of living when we're in touch with the basic needs of this human experience.

## **Cancer Nourishment and Taurus Survival**

Likewise, you know, making food, feeding: Taurus is home, food, shelter from the perspective of survival. Those same things can also be in Cancer, but from the perspective of nourishment: The smell of the cookies being baked, the smell of a warm soup. These are all things that are familiar and nurturing, and remind you of home and safety and comfort. So again, that's why in Cancer there can be a strong, I don't know if addiction would be the right word, but it's an emotional movement towards that which is comfortable: comfort foods, comfort smells. And that can be great. Like, your comfort poncho, it's warm and it's cozy and it's cuddly. But again, these things can also become a place of the soul staying perpetually in a place of security and safety and not wanting to move beyond that.

## **Three Stages of the Cancer Process:**

- **Stage 1 - Incubation Phase** I want to present three stages that I see are just natural to the Cancer process. The first is the incubation. This is pregnancy. This is where there is such a delicacy and the thing isn't even born yet. There's a stage for everything where there's a need for a profound degree of protection because it hasn't yet learned how to walk on its own. It hasn't even released from its source. So, that incubation place is, you're with an emotion, you've had an experience, and you're just being with it. And that can really express as, you know, today you're not leaving; you're taking a day off from work. You're just going to be quiet today. You're going to turn off your cell phone. This is going to be a day where you're just present with *what is* and you're nurturing yourself. The ability to do that is really, really important. In this incubation phase, it's important that we learn how to nurture what's very tender and just needs to be present.

If we get into that incubation phase too long, the Capricorn polarity kicks in and says "Get out there in life. Do something!" Capricorn relative to Cancer can really appear as this hard "You can't stay here forever." If there's a lot of karmic stuff here for the soul in this axis, it can actually feel very threatening, where there's perpetually this feeling of "I never really gave myself the time to feel. I never gave myself the time to process this." And this can lead to a soul not knowing how to be with their emotions. So, it's a very important capacity for a soul to know how to work with this energy, to fully move through it so that it can fully move on, beyond incubation.

There can be an unmet need, by the way, in Cancer, to sort of come back; it's like, "I want to get back in the belly. I want to get back in the womb." If basic emotional needs haven't been addressed, the soul might recreate for itself situations in life, whether consciously or unconsciously, to be deeply cared for, because it's going to have this need to reconnect with core emotional needs that have never been fully integrated and met.

- **Stage 2 - Birthing Phase**  
The second phase is the birthing phase. And in this phase, there is something new here. Maybe you've integrated your emotions, you've come to realize "Okay, I'm safe, I'm

secure. I can leave this home now." But there's still tenderness; there might still be vulnerability. This is very natural: the ability to be in the world but to still be raw, to be in the world but to still have feelings, to be doing your thing in the world, to be engaging in life. You're growing as a human being, now you're walking your path, but there's something that's still tender and delicate. But if we just stay at home the whole time, we won't really learn how to grow into a healthy sense of self.

Life needs to happen so we can feel and learn how to actually cultivate a resiliency, not a hard and repressed quality of resiliency, but the resiliency that comes through self-intimacy in the present moment with life circumstances.

- **Stage 3 - Stabilizing Phase**

The last phase is the stabilizing phase. There's now a healthy sense of the self. The ego feels acclimated, and so it's able to interact with life and it knows who it is. This will reflect in one's life: feeling grounded, there's nourishment, there's care, there's fluidity, there's movement, there's activity. Life is happening, and there's a sense of security within.

Now, life is always changing, so there's always going to be this flow between these three phases, where the soul is always moving further and further and further into a state of self-intimacy.

### **The Distortion of Patriarchal Conditioning**

I want to say too, that life is designed to support these phases. Life is designed to support birthing. Life is designed to support incubation.

You see this in the actual pregnancy of a woman. Life is designed to support these processes on very physical and biological levels. At the core, we can interpret this to mean that our emotions, what's happening inside of us, is fundamentally okay. Life is designed for us to experience it, to move through it. The issue, however, is that there's so much distortion in society around the emotional body. So, it doesn't always seem like there is safety. It might feel like we don't know how to do this, we don't know how to feel, we don't know how to experience; and there's oftentimes a process of healing that's necessary just to be able to integrate emotions. This is very much connected to patriarchy.

When you look at the Cancer/Capricorn archetype, the karmic dynamics in Cancer and Capricorn are incredibly relevant to patriarchal conditioning because patriarchal conditioning, in its essence, suppresses the feminine, suppresses what is natural. Cancer is the feminine in its essence. It is the womb. It's what holds and incubates and nurtures life to happen. Cancer corresponds to "woman" itself, to the breasts, to the womb, to the reality of the Earth as a container for all of this. Cancer is the womb, and if we have not respected the feminine, the womb, the place from which all of life comes, then there's going to be a lot of confusion and distortion of emotion.

### **Gender Constructs and Cultural Assumptions**

Understanding the ways in which we are healing our relationship to the feminine, and thus emotion, is a really important part of understanding Cancer. Within that, we see a lot of gender

constructs. We can have, in Cancer, certain cultural assumptions around how men and women are supposed to relate to their emotions. Everyone feels tender, everyone feels emotions; what do you do with it? You could have a man with a lot of Cancer in their chart and they don't feel very identified with what society calls a "man." Or, you could have a soul that is very identified as a man, and you've got all this Cancer, and then it's like, "How do I be in relationship with all of these emotions?"

### **Evolutionary Stages in Cancer:**

- **Consensus**

A consensus stage soul that feels a lot of empathy and care and love, but is conditioned by a bunch of ideas about what's appropriate for a man: It's not okay to cry in public, it's not okay to hold hands with my friends. These are things that, in consensus reality, it's often regarded as "not masculine," or "wrong," or a lot of judgments will be put on it.

So oftentimes, a big part of the work within Cancer will need to be understood relative to "What gender has a soul manifested in? How do they feel about their gender? What is their gender identity?" We'll learn more soon with Capricorn that the Capricorn/Cancer axis speaks a lot about these issues around gender.

- **Individuated**

In the individuated stages, there's going to be a lot more openness and a greater draw to connect with one's essential identity beyond the gender constructs. So, "family" can be beyond just one's biological reality; in fact, the soul will be more oriented towards experiences that validate their essential emotional nature. In Cancer, it's not so much about what is appropriate. Those judgments might be there and there might be a sensitivity towards that, especially in consensus reality. In Cancer, it's more about what's safe. "Is it safe for me to be myself? Do I belong? Is it okay to open up this tenderness or do I have to keep it inside and private for now?"

- **Spiritual**

In the spiritual stages of evolution, there's a progressive universality and an attunement to the fact of all of us being the same, all of us being children of the Divine, or needing care and love, and a greater emotional wisdom and understanding that "Yes, the evolutionary process *is* facilitated through the emotional body." And, as that happens, in Cancer there can be a devotional quality as the ego construct begins to become progressively identified with its Source. Because, remember, ego is just a satellite. Identity can be directed anywhere. And so, being able to move through emotions where, gradually, the idea of safety and security is found in Truth, is found in one's true self.

Now, at every stage in Cancer, there can be family, there can be certain relationships of caring and nurturing that are relevant for a soul's journey.

### **The Capricorn Polarity**

It's also really important to understand that, in Cancer, there's often a very interesting flow between what can look like a hard shell and an internal softness. Cancer can show up in our life

where we or other people are very protective at first. But that's important, because that protection is where there's something that needs to be experienced and felt. There's a lot of emotional wisdom and intelligence in knowing how to do that for oneself and to do that responsibly; that's the Capricorn polarity. It's working with time and space and clear boundaries to nurture what needs to be protected, not just being a child that thinks it can have any kind of emotion it wants to, in any way, and that the world will adapt to it. The Capricorn polarity teaches emotional responsibility, not to repress, but to learn how to create a container for it. So, what happens is, the coldness actually softens in time. This is a very powerful practice and process that we often see happening in Cancer.

### **We Are Where We Are**

And thus, we shouldn't judge. If you meet someone and they're inaccessible, you don't know what's going on. Their own process might just simply be that right now they need to be more self-internal and self-protected so they can feel, and also, in time, feel like this is safe to open up. So, we learn how to respect the emotional body and to really honor where people are at and honor where we are at.

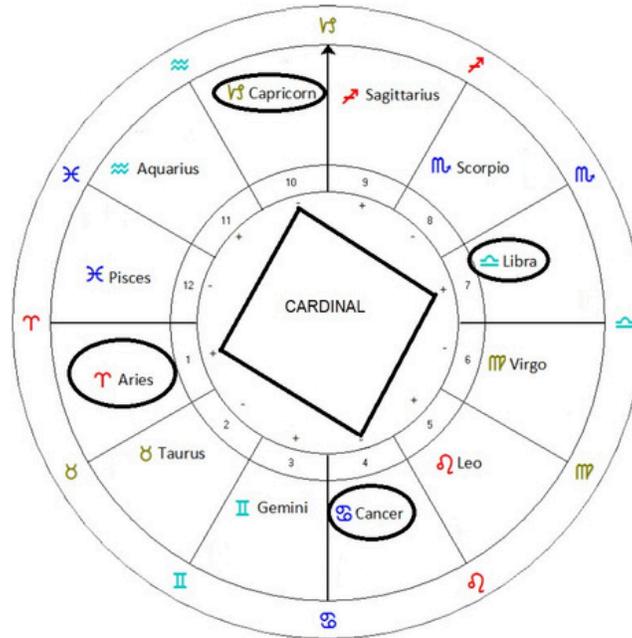
### **Emotional Development Occurs Over Time**

The Capricorn polarity also speaks about the importance of time. Everything happens in time. So, our sense of safety and security takes time. The clear example of that are the life cycles. Capricorn is life cycles, life phases, life stages. You can think of Capricorn as the time constructs that are built into the template of the soul's human journey. These different phases of life are also phases of emotional development. When a soul turns seven years old, they're emotionally able to apprehend a greater scope of reality than they previously were capable of.

So, part of the Cancer journey is also learning how to respect time and to use time wisely, to be in the phase that you're in, to grow and nurture and evolve in the phase you're in, and to play it out and experience it so it's integrated, so we can move on.

I often think of Cancer as where you're holding on to the little blankie. Right? You have your blankie, and you've had it since you were a baby, and it feels safe. And, at a certain point, you'll be able to put the blankie away, or you'll pass it on to someone else. Because, the sources of security and safety are just phases. The ultimate realization along the soul path is "the truth of safety." But, realizing the truth of safety is something that can only be accessed by way of really working with where we're at right now. It's a very important part, and it's the essence of the Cancer journey.

### **Cardinal Squares**



I want to close with a couple more pointers. I've often spoken to the square between the modes. And, as you're starting to learn the squares, the modes are all sort of catalyzing to one another. So, all of the Cardinal signs, one square to the other, catalyze for growth. So, let's look at Cancer in relation to Aries and Cancer in relation to Libra.

### Aries Square

Aries is needing to move out; it's instinctive. So that's the insecurity of "I need to become. I need to evolve. I need to grow and move forward in life. I need to experience reality. But I also want to feel safe and held." Again, it's like the child that will want to walk around but just check, "Mommy and Daddy, they're right there. Okay, good. I'm safe. I need to individuate; but, at the same time, I need one of my feet on the ground of security." The tension between Aries and Cancer can also really lead to a lot of emotional reactivity. It's that recklessness and that confusion of "I need freedom, but I also need to be protected." So, it's the journey of the soul learning how to walk and stand on its own two feet while integrating a lot of emotions and needs for care and nurturing.

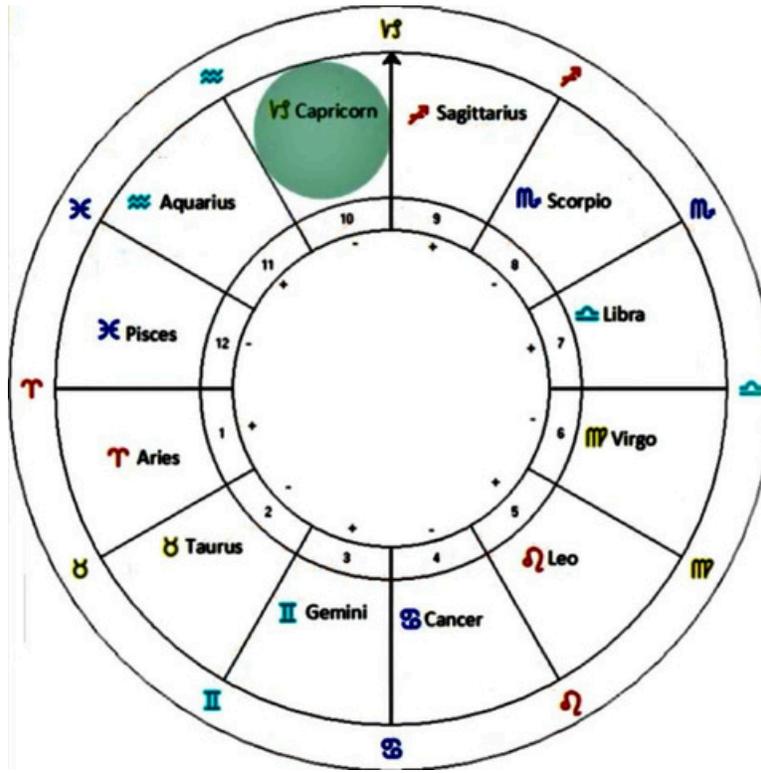
### Libra Square

The Libra square to Cancer can really speak to the dynamic of codependency. "I feel a certain way and I'm needing another person to be with me, to nurture that." The Cancer/Libra lesson is communication. I'm going to communicate "Will you hold me?" or "Will you be with me in a certain way?" Otherwise, without that communication, there's that Libra expectation that our deeper emotional needs will default, be cared for and provided for by other people. So, the Cancer/Libra dynamic is "Yes, we're all nurturing and caring for each other, but with the learning of communication so that we can ultimately come back to ourselves and receive the gift of relationship, not become dependent on it for our sense of well-being, for our sense of security and wholeness."

This completes our teaching on Cancer. Let's look at Capricorn.

# Capricorn

## Capricorn



Hello, everyone. Welcome to Capricorn. Capricorn is cardinal earth. It is the first sign of the last quadrant. The evolutionary intention within Capricorn is learning how to live in alignment and, ultimately, masterfully in relationship to the natural parameters and limitations that are relevant and necessary for us on our soul journey. There are several important concepts to unpack here.

### **Boundaries and Limitations**

First, when I speak about limitations and parameters and boundaries, this is a part of how we understand karma. Just the fact of the human body implies certain limitations. Gravity implies a certain limitation. We also have limitations that are relative to a particular social reality. If you run a red light, you're going to violate a law. This is a construct, and there will be consequences as a result of that. For every soul, on every level of its life, from the physical to the social and even more intricate karmic levels, there are parameters, there are constructs within which the journey is unfolding.

A lesson within Capricorn is, you can't break the rules and move on. You can't proceed along your evolutionary journey and try to do it your own way. There is a learning, and the word is "discipline-ship." We cultivate discipline. And thus, we also cultivate a quality of humility in recognition of how much there is to learn, with respect to being in alignment.

The journey of coming into alignment is one of studying and learning to really understand and have the wisdom to know, "What are the parameters and limitations to work within and then to use wisely?"

### **Capricornian Dynamics**

There are two dynamics that can manifest within Capricorn. One involves all the limitations and the constructs which include basic responsibilities. If you're paying rent in a particular society on this planet Earth, it's likely that society has structured in it a thing called "paying on time." There are certain expectations or contracts that, if you break them, you might get kicked out of your home. So, to function here on this Earth (again, on every level), there's a need to work within these parameters.

### **Resistance and Alignment**

One of the ways of responding to that can be the sense of weightedness. It's like, "There are all these rules and constructs that are limiting me." It's kind of like living in jail, jail being a place where there are walls, and there are confines, and this is the space within which you can move. If it's taken with fear, if it's taken from the perspective of "I'm being punished," or "It's not fair that it's this way," or "I don't want to have to do it this way," oftentimes a soul will stay in this perpetual struggle with the boundaries and limitations that are present in their life.

So, in this state, the soul might often be in resistance to it like, "I don't want to follow the rules," but you don't get anywhere. What happens when there is a lack of cultivating alignment is there's no ground. It's sort of like building a house and not giving care and attention to the early foundation: The bricks that you put down first, the bricks you put down on top of that, just wanting to put it together, not really following code, not really giving attention to alignment. And so, you can't really build anything. It can feel very disempowering. It can be very frustrating because it can seem like "The government, or the world, or even the body, or society, or social constructs are keeping me from just being what I want to be."

### **Fear and Obedience**

The other response would be fear and obedience, where consciousness becomes very conditioned by these ideas of "Okay, I want to follow the rules because I don't want to be punished. I'm going to make sure I do everything right and that I'm following the laws to a 'T'." The issue with that is there can lack a necessary self-knowledge, where the soul needs to ultimately reference an inner authority and not just reference an outer authority.

It's kind of like the metaphor of the parents, where we're looking for our parent's approval. "Did I do a good job? Was that good? Okay, good!" And you might get a reward, which imprints, which conditions this idea of "If I do a good job, life will reward me. If I do a bad job, I'm going to be punished" which, more existentially, says "If I'm good, God will like me. If I'm not good, God will punish me." There's a lot of that kind of conditioning in patriarchy. So, with that example of obedience and a deep fear of doing it wrong, a part of the soul's journey is really learning to access their own inner authority.

## **Time, Space, Form, and Structure are the Template for Evolution**

The soul, through the domain of Capricorn, is learning how to cultivate a relationship to time and space where it can use time and space purposefully, in a way that serves evolution. Let me explain this. One of my favourite quotes from *A Course in Miracles* (Chapter 1) is "The purpose of time is to enable you to learn how to use time constructively." I love that quote so much. Because, if time didn't have a purpose, anything other than that, then time (as well as form and space and structure, all things that are defined and limited), would become a god unto its own self.

What we learn through Capricorn, ultimately, is that the limitations and the boundaries and the parameters of our life are relevant.

Let's go back to our teachings of Pisces and Scorpio. Spirit is infinite and whole. God, Oneness, Love has no concept of time, has no concept of limitation, of boundaries, of gravity, of bleeding if you get pinched. These cause and effect dynamics, these parameters, aren't original to existence. Oneness is original to existence. Existence is original to existence. And consciousness isn't inherently limited or defined by form and time and space. So, if we start with that, and we understand that the soul is manifesting itself within a physical body to do the Scorpio work (to evolve, to be on this journey of awakening), the limitations and the parameters that we all encounter at the core symbolize the template from which we are all waking up. They are profoundly relevant to the constructs that we each need to learn to work within. They're all meant to be temporary, because everything is meant to be temporary. Time is just a part of it for a while. There's reality beyond that. This is where we start to really understand that so much of our conditioning, so much of our consciousness has been deeply conditioned by this idea that time and form and space and paying the bills and tucking your shirt in and following the rules *is* primary reality.

And again, so much of patriarchal conditioning has really painted a spirituality, a way of envisioning the totality of life where, accidentally, form is put before love. Love has to be put before form; and, ultimately, form needs to be in service to love. This is why, in Capricorn, we're learning how to be in right relationship to form, so we can settle within it, so we can use it consciously.

### **Consciousness, Alignment, and Mastery**

Now, in terms of the idea that the Capricorn archetype corresponds to the limitations and the constructs within which we are growing, that we are learning to work with and master, there are certain things that are universal for all of us, and it's important to see it in this way. One is that all of us have come onto the Earth, in a body, and we're all incarnating at this particular time, where there's a particular social climate (meaning, this is not 2000 years ago, this is not 2000 years from now). There's a certain conditioning within consciousness on the planet right now. These are things that are collective for all of us.

And then, on our soul journey, we're each going to be faced with the responsibility and the learning to come into alignment with respect to whatever our unique karmic reality is.

I want to be very clear that karma isn't like "Oh, I got a sticker" or "I got a punishment." There's nothing in reality that is external to oneself. There's nothing that's happening to us. Everything

is reflecting the inner reality of the soul. So, our "karmic bag," so to speak, isn't just like "Oh, I've got to endure this for another 10 years and then I'm done."

Everything that is manifest in our life is the template from which we are learning to bring consciousness and alignment. That's what time and space is for. So, we're no longer struggling with paying the bills. We're no longer obediently afraid of doing anything wrong, on the one hand, or always late, always struggling with time and space, never getting it on time, never making enough money, always struggling with form and time and just the basic needs of being in this human body. We find a way of settling into a structural reality that is in service and relevant to our ongoing evolutionary growth. And then this physical reality can be used.

This Capricornian dimension really just says "Work with what you've got and cultivate yourself; find mastery in it." When we're settled and we're not struggling with the material world (with time, with space), then consciousness is able to open up and evolve and direct its attention beyond the root chakra concerns with just being able to function here.

So, Capricorn is *very* foundational. This archetype is incredibly foundational. When we begin to work with charts and we learn about Saturn, we'll be doing a lot of work to understand how essential and foundational Saturn work is in just being able to live here on this Earth without the constant struggle.

### **Stages of Development and Growth:**

Now, I generally think of three stages of development and growth within the Capricorn archetype, and this can manifest at any stage of evolution. The first thing I want to say is, when we look at Capricorn we have to appreciate that souls don't come into this life with full awareness of their karmic bag.

#### **Stage 1 - Outer Conditioning**

As I spoke about with Cancer, we come in as a baby. There's no consciousness of how to behave in society. There's no awareness of how to interact with the world. You're not going to be aware of the stop sign. You *are* going to poop where you're sitting. There's going to be no consciousness around consequence; and there shouldn't be, because you're in that Cancer place of just needing to be cared for.

So, the first level of Capricorn, developmentally, is where authority and structure, and thus boundaries, containment, rules, are outside of you, and necessarily so. The structural reality that we come into is different from the emotional imprinting. The emotional imprinting is Cancer: that's being held, that's being fed, that's being wanted, that's the love and the care that is necessary for the human experience that the soul is having. Capricorn is the structural reality, the climate, the conditions that you come into and the way that your parents are shaping and creating a template for your own growth. They are disciplining you. They are making sure you don't fall off the changing table. They are holding your hand to make sure you are safe, because you don't yet know how to cross the street by yourself.

#### **Development and Maturation**

As the soul grows, it's a very important thing to recognize that a part of the soul journey (and this is a Capricorn thing) are these templates, these constructs of time that are to be played out

and used consciously. So, we get to certain developmental phases. Seven is one of them, fourteen is another one; there are several. Really, you can go through every year of life and see how all these different astrological cycles correspond to different developmental phases.

## **Stage 2 - Learning Self-Responsibility**

As that happens, as time unfolds, there is a physical, biological, emotional maturation. Gradually, the soul is able to begin to learn self-responsibility.

### **Shame**

In this stage it's incredibly important that, as a soul is learning this, it's not imprinting any shame. Shame is a patriarchal invention that has been running for a very long time. It's so integrated, it's so commonplace, so it's incredibly important to speak to it, unravel it, and just kind of put it aside.

Shame creates a value judgment; it says "*You* are bad. *You* are wrong because you weren't in alignment." I'll give an example. Let's say we have a young child that is helping out with putting the dishes away and they held too many dishes in their hand and it broke and shattered on the floor. Now, if the parents start screaming at that child "Why did you take too many? What are you doing? You're not listening! I said take only one! Go slow." That is a really traumatic imprint. It basically says, instead of learning the lessons of alignment (which, in this case, would be "Okay, when I do my work, don't rush. Take only what I can hold. Do one thing at a time. And if I'm slow, I will complete it, and I will feel accomplished, and I will do a good job"), instead of the learning, where the soul can actually cultivate alignment, they're getting the message "*I'm* bad."

This is a big issue that often happens developmentally for souls (and this has probably happened for most souls on this planet on some level) where, as we are learning to live in alignment (which is just developing a conscientiousness and an awareness of cause and effect, an awareness of how our actions impact the environment around us), there's oftentimes a lot of negative imprinting.

That's one thing that can happen during that phase, which means that a big part of the Capricorn healing journey is unraveling shame. This will generally happen later in life, where it's almost like we can't really get beyond a certain threshold of growth until we've really connected with these core imprints.

### **Capricorn/Cancer Axis**

That's once again why say, with a Capricorn/Cancer axis, you often need to go back in order to go forward. Because what can happen with Capricorn is the mind becomes conditioned by a whole lot of ideas that it's assimilated, that it's been given from the environment. And it's not real. It's not true. It's just conditioning. But the issue with conditioning is that it's crystallized. Anything that is repeated becomes crystallized. And to undo it means, there actually needs to be safety, there needs to be a container to begin to recondition a posture that's been learned. You can think of the physical body as that as well. If you live like this [hunches his shoulders], you're going to condition a posture like this [hunched shoulders]. And to actually begin to heal that means working (generally psychosomatically because everything is not just physical) with practice and discipline and a lot of wisdom and conscientiousness and self-knowledge to, in a

sense, reverse the patterning and cultivate a new way of being which is a new way of thinking, a new way of holding oneself. So, the learning phase, the second phase of the Capricorn journey, is really profound and it can actually be a big part of our life journey.

### **Resistance**

Another thing that happens in this phase of the journey would be the resistance. Maurice Fernandez once made a great observation about Capricorn which is that this archetype actually reflects where there's a need to push authority. This is a part of the soul's learning journey, where it's sort of testing the waters. "How much can I get away with?" Again, it's important that the learning is really about cultivating self-knowledge and wisdom. We don't just blindly and obediently follow the rules, but we understand why the rules are important, why they're necessary. A lot of times, we are so conditioned to just follow the rules (because to not follow them would mean a lot of punishment) that we grow up living a life where there are just a lot of rules.

### **Repression**

Capricorn corresponds to the archetype of repression, where we can feel really repressed that we can't live freely because there are so many consequences. This is often very associated with our earlier conditioning.

And, from a soul perspective, there's always a reason why any soul would choose the conditioning environment that it came into. So, we always have to keep a broader attunement to, "What's the healing? What's the underlying evolutionary intention here for the soul on their awakening journey?"

### **Boundaries and Introspection**

Likewise, testing the boundaries is also a very natural and important thing. We often can't really know what the boundaries are until we've tested them and we realize "Oh, that's where failure comes from."

And sometimes, the only path to wisdom and self-knowledge is to just try, like "Okay, that didn't work. I'm not going to do that again. I'm going to do it differently." There's a part of the learning journey, as a soul matures, where it cultivates a greater capacity to self-reflect, to be introspective. And that introspection allows the soul to look at its life, look at what's not working, what's a struggle and to self-reflect, "What do I need to do differently?"

Very often, on the Capricorn journey, there is a crystallized reality around oneself. It can be your job, your family, the thing you do every day. And it might look really good. In fact, according to your society or your culture or your family, the life that you have might be the thing you're supposed to have.

### **Depression**

But there can be depression. Depression happens when the structural reality of our life, the status quo, is not resonant with our soul, is not resonant with who we are. The conditions are no longer a useful template to be used consciously for our own growth. So, when we start to feel stuck and limited by the constructs and the form of our life, there's no longer any growth.

This is where Capricorn really has to embrace the Cancer polarity which is to be able to connect with one's emotions, to connect with one's sense of self, free of what society or one's parents or one's authority figures or whatever one projects as authority, says or feels about oneself.

### **Self-Judgment and Tenderness**

There can be a big issue within Capricorn of being very sensitive to criticism and judgement, usually because of an internalized self-critic, a very strong internalized self-judgment that hasn't been processed. As a result, the soul will be very sensitive to where there's any perception of judgement or criticism coming from the outer world. This is often where that Cancer polarity kicks in very strongly. There are emotions there, there's embarrassment, there's shame. These are all emotions, and they deserve tenderness, they deserve care which means they need some protection. There's a need to say, "Oh, here's something that I actually need to attend to and care for, and it requires my conscious parenting." Only through embracing that Cancer polarity can a soul evolve and grow and develop strength and really learn how to live in alignment in a good way, in a clear way, without repressing itself, without shoving a whole bunch of stuff away to the side. That's where, in Capricorn, we run the risk of associating success and value with appearances, with form, something that's just totally empty.

### **Stage 3 - Learning Mastery**

The third stage is learning mastery. It's where the soul is no longer struggling with learning alignment. There's a settling into a clear and good life. When I say the words "clear and good life," there's intentionality in that. It's a life that we were designed to live, where we are not in constant struggle. None of that is original to existence. None of that is the goal or the point of life; although, it might be a part of the journey as we're learning but that's all.

### **Learning from Failure**

The mastery usually happens as the soul gets older because there's a lot of life experience, a lot of learning that happens in Capricorn; and you can't rush it. You have to fail a lot of times. You know, failure is a big part of Capricorn. Being able to fail and have a positive attitude in relationship to failure, free of shame but also accepting self-responsibility, learning from the failure, this is how you get stronger. This is how you grow. Some of the most successful and happy people out there are those who have failed a whole lot of times. So, oftentimes, this phase of mastery really comes when a soul is older. And this resonates with the elder archetype.

You can say that the elder archetype corresponds to a soul that's been living in resonance with reality, with the structures of time and space, with its own life, and has settled into it. There's a wisdom; they know the way, they understand the journey. And there's often a lot of this Cancer energy that sort of opens up because there's more of a compassion and a sense of appreciation for the trials and the errors that we all have to go through as we're learning.

### **Mastery and Ease**

In the mastery phase there's an ease that settles in. I don't know who said this, but I've been observing it for years. I heard this many years ago, that "Capricorn gets younger as they get older." Because the journey within Capricorn is learning the ways of life, coming into alignment, cultivating mastery. And it's hard work. It is hard work. It's showing up every day, and it is a matter of self-discipline. But for those who have done it, there's a settling, there's a resting and

alightness that's very beautiful, that also sort of says "All of this work is worth it." And this could be at any stage of evolution.

### **Evolutionary Stages in Capricorn:**

- **Consensus Stage**

You could have the person in the consensus stage that made their way. They got to that dream of retirement. They have the boat, and the second house, and all the things that they dreamt of. And they can just enjoy their children and their grandchildren. But let's look at this. Let's look at the consensus reality. Consensus reality for Capricorn is going to be orienting towards whatever society says is successful. "What's the dream? How do you live here? What's a good structural reality?" And so, the evolutionary process in Capricorn will be with respect to that structural reality. And that can be incredibly satisfying truly, but to a point.

- **Individuated Stage**

In the individuated stages, the soul is not identifying with the cultural thermostat of consensus reality in terms of "What are the judgments and conditions and rules?" One incredibly important dynamic to speak to with Capricorn, when it comes to judgment, is all the social constructs that society holds.

### **Gender**

We spoke a little bit about gender with Cancer. And I mentioned that the Cancer/Capricorn axis has a lot to do with gender and gender identity, and all issues in regard to who one is relative to society and what society says about who one is. In Capricorn, we have assumptions and cultural definitions that are placed on us according to form. In certain parts of the world, if you're a woman, you have certain rights. If you're a man, you have certain rights (like, legally). And if you violate the laws, you can get in trouble or you can even get killed. Apart from the legalities around gender, there are also the cultural rules. These are other structures, agreements that are sort of in the social reality, maybe not legislative reality.

So, there's a lot of conditioning: that's about the body, that's about gender; it's about form, relationship, marriage, what things look like and what they should look like. Now, of course, all this is evolving within consensus. The consensus stage itself is gradually becoming more and more open. But in the individuated stages, the judgments and the constructs that are placed upon oneself will become a very important point of self-discovery and liberation.

The soul is needing to learn to find authority within themselves and not try to fit into an external contract that is not true for them. Because we're living in a patriarchal reality, the Capricorn archetype has to be understood relative to that. So, for many souls in the individuated stages, the Capricorn archetype specifically will relate to karmic dynamics around struggling with the social rules, constructs, judgments of consensus reality.

In the individuated stages, we can also say that the Capricorn archetype corresponds to the ability to very masterfully (ultimately) work within time and space and form. This could even be getting involved in politics and doing things that seem consensus, but with respect to a more individuated consciousness. Fundamentally, the soul is identifying the physical reality according to an internal gauge of definition. "How do I want to relate to gender, to marriage, to relationship, to society, to government? Do I want to pay taxes?" That's what's happening in individuation. There's a lot of creativity, and new structural realities are formed that become acceptable.

- **Spiritual Stage**

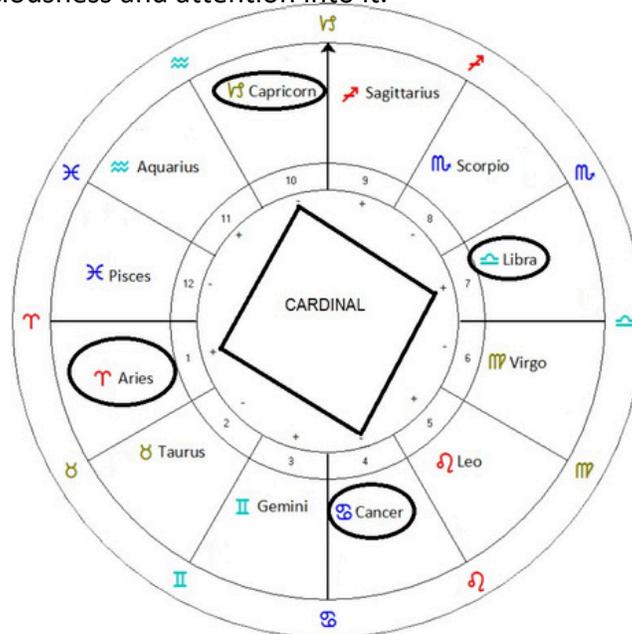
In the spiritual stages of evolution, the soul is learning how to use time and space for its ultimate purpose of undoing time and space. There's a gradual spiritualization of consciousness where the soul understands, progressively, that it is not defined by form, by structure. The discipline-ship within Capricorn here is less concerned with redefining, trying to establish one's own unique identity. It's wanting to create a structural reality that allows the soul to deepen and live in alignment with their true self.

The idea of creating a structure, like a school, or a system, or a training, these are all Capricorn ideas, where there's a structural reality that allows souls to evolve and grow.

One example that comes to mind is Yogananda. He was a Capricorn in a spiritual stage of evolution (I would say early third stage spiritual). He came from India to the West to teach yoga, to teach the science of self-realization, and his whole journey was creating a structural reality to help discipline people with respect to their true nature.

**Time-Space Issues**

Capricorn at any stage of consciousness can speak to where there are struggles with dealing with basic time-space issues. Just because you're in a spiritual state of consciousness doesn't mean you don't have to pay rent anymore. There are these lessons that are whatever the soul is needing to learn. Whatever is relevant for the soul's program is where they're going to be learning to bring consciousness and attention into it.



**Aries Square**

Lastly, I want to close with what I did with Cancer as well: look at the square between Aries and Libra. So again, the modes, the square within the modes, really reveal where there's tension and where a lot of growth can happen. The Aries/Capricorn square is, if you act instinctively, there will be consequences. The Capricorn lesson here is "I have to learn how to repress myself in ways that are relevant and appropriate for the moment, ultimately, so I can find masterful and functional ways to act and move in the world instead of reactive and thoughtless ways."

The Aries/Capricorn square really speaks to the learning curve of a child that might just act instinctively, without awareness for consequence. So, in Capricorn, here we're learning and we're maturing, so we can really bring more intelligence and mastery into our actions.

### **Libra Square**

The Capricorn/Libra square points to where there is a deconditioning, a deconstruction of the judgements, assumptions, and roles or expectations that we might just place on one another. Thus, we're learning how to *strengthen* (Capricorn keyword) our ability to listen and live in alignment with one another according to our true needs. There's often an issue with Capricorn where we can hold a lot of unchecked assumptions and ideas.

**Rules, Consequences and External Structures** Now, this takes me to one point that is really interesting and significant with Capricorn: where we have a lot of rules and consequences versus where there are none. You have things like the Bible or the Torah or different religions that say "Here's how you're supposed to act, here are ethical guidelines." If you ask a soul in the consensus stage about their religion, you might hear "Yes, because without these, we wouldn't know what to do. We would just, you know, act and do whatever we wanted to do and steal and commit adultery. So, God's laws help keep us ethical, so we can treat one another with respect and live here in a good way." And for many souls, just like how a child needs parental guidance and they may not yet understand the "why," they just have to learn how to listen and gradually cultivate self-wisdom and self-knowledge until they can actually stand on their own two feet.

For a lot of souls, there is that need to source entirely an external structure that will allow them to feel contained and safe and really grow and learn ethically within that. There is a lot of development that occurs within that.

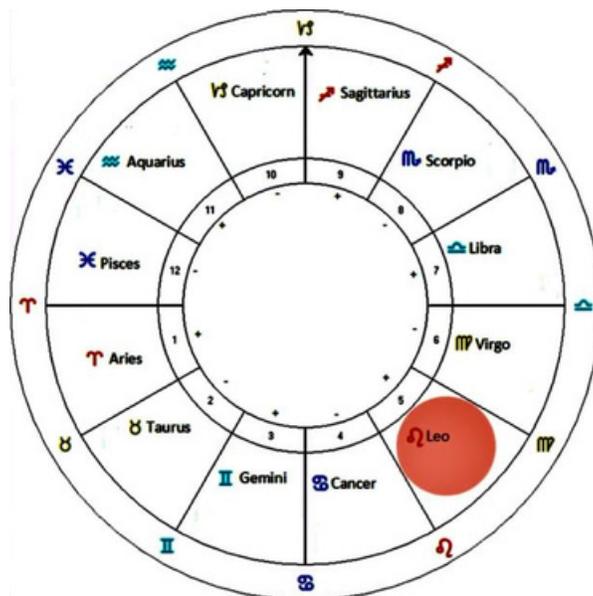
### **Inner Authority and Alignment**

But progressively, as the soul evolves, what we understand is the reference for "right" and "wrong" is within. The inner gauge for how to be in alignment with reality is within us because we are inherently capable of sensing the energy of alignment. As the soul evolves, a part of the Capricorn journey (and we all learn this at every stage of development, at every stage of evolution, we all learn this to the extent that we can) is learning integrity, learning alignment, learning how to really be conscious of how they are in relationship to the life they are living, and thus being able to correct oneself when there was wrongdoing. And wrongdoing here is not an "ultimate values" thing, but wrong simply being "not right," not aligned. It's like, there's "alignment," and there's "not alignment." So, it's the ability to check oneself and sort of *know* and then course correct and then grow and evolve that inner reference. We can think of Capricorn ultimately as the inner guide, the inner compass that helps us navigate this terrain of life experience and really learn from all the teachers and the guides that are present in our life, those who have walked before us who are here to help us learn as we figure this stuff out.

All right. This concludes our teaching on Cancer and Capricorn.

# Leo

## Leo



Hello everyone. Welcome to Leo. Leo is fixed fire. It's the second sign in the second quadrant. The evolutionary intention in Leo is for the soul to actualize and realize its unique, inherent, creative essence. Here in Leo, the soul is focusing and becoming aware of its being as a unique expression of Divine Intelligence. So, creative self-actualization is what's happening in Leo. Leo teaches and points to the idea that everywhere you look in life is creation, and there's no better way to understand that than by looking at children.

### Child Analogy

- **Attunement to Creative Life Flow**

Children are inherently attuned to creation, and thus to creative life flow. There is a natural excitement and curiosity about life, and children are always playing. They're always connecting with their own creative capacities. And it's very natural and inherent for children to experiment, to do things with things, to take the raw material of life and create. "Oh look at what I can do! Look how I can actualise myself! Look! I'm performing this!" or "Look! I'm standing on my head in the pool!" I remember, as a child, one distinct memory of doing upside down flips in the water and thinking that it was so cool, and I really wanted my parents to see. I remember saying "Mom! Dad! Look!" It's just the energy of a child being creative, realizing something about itself and wanting to share that, wanting that to be seen. There's just this like "Wow! That is so interesting! That's so exciting!"

- **Enthusiasm and Celebration of Life Itself**

In Leo, there's a potential and an inherent energy of joy and ecstasy and excitement and celebration, because it's reflecting the aliveness and the joyfulness of life itself. So, being creative and playful and being excited about creation, this is all very natural for children. Boredom is usually not a sign of there being nothing to do. If a child is bored,

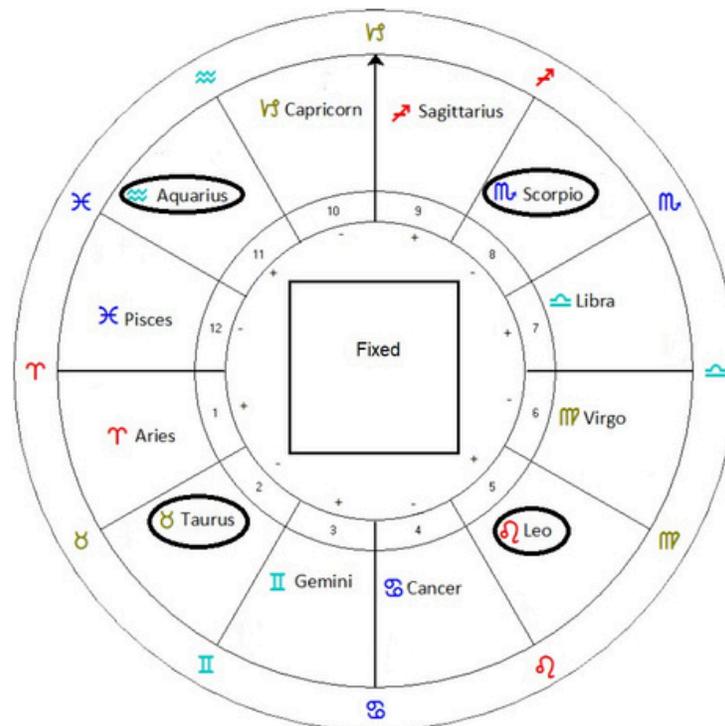
it's more a sign that they're not connecting to the infinite potential of play and discovery here on this Earth's playground.

- **Playfulness Cultivates Self-Confidence**

There are a couple pieces that I want to speak to, and sticking to the analogy of a child is really useful because children really embody this Leo energy. So, this reflects a natural principle. Children love to play. It's like, all they want to do is play. *All* they ever want to do is play. And, in the act of playfulness, there's a cultivation of confidence; this is confidence in oneself as a creator. This is confidence in oneself, in one's ability to actualize a sense of purpose. This purpose doesn't have to be some sort of big megalomaniacal sense of purpose, but a "Look at what I created! I did this, this came through me!" And to feel that one's self is capable of creation is a powerful and beautiful and very necessary experience.

In Leo we build self-confidence, self-assuredness. This is a self-confidence that allows a soul to walk through life knowing that there is something unique and special and capable about its own being. "I am creative. I am alive. I have gifts. I have talents. I have skills. There are things about me that make me who I am and I am in touch with the beauty of that." And, I should say that it's not necessarily about skills; that would actually be more Taurus where a soul is cultivating resourcefulness.

## The Tension of the Fixed Signs



### Leo/Taurus Square - Beauty, Self-Esteem, and Creativity

The Taurus/Leo square ultimately points to the lesson of the soul to focus on its own self-cultivation and not get hooked on "Do people see me? Do people like me?" There is a learning of being content and whole and having esteem within oneself. So, to carry the vibe of "I am just

who I am, and there's an inherent quality of beauty in it," is so important and necessary for a soul.

What often happens (and this will often happen to a lot of children, which will then condition this relationship to the Leo energy) is that one's essence can be ignored— the child who's not getting any attention, no one's looking at them, no one's celebrating their uniqueness— which can really lead to a deep sense of not having a lot of confidence in oneself. Leo can manifest in a chart where one can actually have either a permeating sense of shyness and vulnerability or just not feel that oneself is any good. "I'm not really special. I'm not really creative."

The other side to this is where a child might be given a lot of attention. They are given attention because of a quality of beauty as opposed to beauty and specialness being innate; it becomes a "You're special because ...". This happens when beauty becomes something that can be measured that's contextual as opposed to just being innate. Every child is beautiful, every child is creative, and every child is in touch with the energy of creation. But it can be like "Let's put you in a beauty competition now." Now, there's a quality to your beauty, there's a context to your beauty, and this beauty is going to be compared to other beauties. This kind of psychology gives children a lot of attention, but it can easily develop an inner psychology of associating one's specialness with being adored, with being better than, with shining brighter than everyone else.

What's so important in the Leo archetype is that we learn that life is creative, life is celebratory, inherently so. It's important that we celebrate a child's uniqueness, their own nature, without glorifying it. So, whether a soul is being ignored or receiving the wrong kind of attention, the tendency within Leo, in both cases, would be to have a hypersensitivity about how one is being seen. We mentioned the permeating shyness and not having confidence in oneself; we can also have a need to take center stage. "I need everyone to see me to validate a sense of specialness" or because "If I performed really well, my parents were really proud of me."

### **Drawing on the Aquarius Polarity - Be Yourself, Everyone Counts**

So, in the Leo archetype, the actual joy of life can, interestingly enough, be clouded over via this deep sensitivity to how one is being seen. This is where a soul needs to draw upon the Aquarius polarity, which says "Detachment. Don't worry about how other people see you, what it looks like, whether they adore you or not. Just be yourself." This provides a very necessary context for objectivity and not taking things so personally.

What can happen in Leo is the soul can become so sensitive to how everyone is looking at them, that they end up living in a self-focused reality where there's a hyper-attention on their performance, a hyper-attention on how they are expressing and actualizing, and that occludes a greater awareness of "I'm just one player on the stage. There are many other people here as well, and it's not all about me."

The Aquarius polarity simply teaches "Don't try to make yourself the most important one here. Everyone's important, everyone has a role." The Aquarian energy teaches that we are all actualizing, we are all a bright shining star. And, if we are respecting and honouring and appreciating and enjoying the uniqueness of what we are, we will all find our purpose; we will all come into our unique expression of creative intelligence in life.

## **Scorpio/Leo Square - Fear, Trust, Manipulation, and Courage**

Oftentimes, in the Leo archetype, there can be a lot of vulnerability regarding times where a soul may have actualized, got up on stage, or read in front of the classroom, or done something for their parents and they received very humiliating feedback. The experience of humiliation is deeply devastating within Leo, because you are wearing your heart on your sleeve. You're just yourself. Think about a child; they're just innocently in the energy of creation. And the pure energy of that innocence isn't even self-absorbed, necessarily, but there's an inherent expectation that life will appreciate it as well, that's its welcome, that it's invited. There can be an experience of opening up, just sharing, expressing one's self and getting tomatoes thrown at you. So, there can be a sense of "Is it safe to really open my heart?" This can then express itself in intimacy and trust issues.

We have Leo square to Scorpio. Scorpio relative to Leo is where a soul can get hooked in "I need this energy from other people. I need to feel a lot of love and affection and connection. I need to get that validation for myself." Or, "I'm so afraid of rejection, so I'm not going to open up." Thus, there's a need in Leo to develop courage.

One of the gifts that happens through the Leo archetype is the courage to self-actualize, the courage to open one's heart, to share one's love and beauty, to step into one's purpose even if it's scary, even if it's vulnerable. Other people might see you and not appreciate you. You might be ignored. Or they might not get what you are trying to create; like an artist creating art and no one really gets the art. These are dynamics that can happen in Leo. But, to show up anyway and shine and express, this is a gift that's given; and it's similar to how the Sun just shines.

There's not a lot of self-awareness here. The Sun doesn't even discriminate about how it's shining. It's just giving its love and light. And there's a playfulness and generosity in Leo that, once again, like children, is so contagious and beautiful. For a soul to be inhabiting the Leo energy (playful, creative, alive, engaged) and to not need the external environment to give any kind of feedback, means that this soul is giving from the wellspring of joy and creativity within them. And this becomes inspiring. It enlivens life for other people.

## **Purpose to Become Centered and Self-Actualized**

Let's speak a little bit more to the idea of purpose. I've spoken about purpose when it relates to Aries, and also to Sag. Purpose with Aries is "I'm moving in this direction. I need the freedom and autonomy to take the next step and do what is necessary on my path, to be a leader in my own life." Sagittarius' purpose is more of following one's intuitive sense of "There's more, there's a journey of expansion and I want to realize more. I want to have a greater understanding of reality and reach a greater potential." The purpose in Leo is to become centered and self-actualized. It's to have confidence in one's unique being as an expression of divine creation. And, if we are connected with purpose, there's life-force, there's reason to wake up, there's reason to move forward. Without Leo being awake and healthy and alive in our chart, without feeling a connection to purpose, it's almost like, imagine if the sun wasn't shining; all the planets around the solar system wouldn't be moving either.

Leo is incredibly centralizing. Having a healthy sense of purpose: "I'm here to actualise something. I'm here to be what I am and to share that and to live that" in the same way that a

flower is a flower, in the same way that a mountain is a mountain. It's being what we are and standing in dignity in that. There is no natural orientation within Leo towards any experience of humiliation or degradation. Because, what's happening in Leo is, as we center in a sense of purpose, we are holding a great sense of respect and esteem within our own being. "Yes, I *am* special. I *am* important; because *I am*." Again, this has to be met with "We *all* are. *Life* is." To really have a sense of dignity, it's like holding oneself as a royal (majestic, worthy). Souls with strong Leo, oftentimes will hold themselves in those ways.

### **Celebrity Mindset**

This is where we can see souls entering into the celebrity mindset. Celebrity mindset is "I'm a celebrity! I'm special! I'm important! I'm a star! People see me and they are amazed and impressed." There's the whole red carpet thing. You have the stars, the celebrities; and culture *loves* the celebrities, *adores* them, *admires* them. "What are they wearing? How do they dress? What do they say?" There's so much "star-struck-ness," adoration, admiration of these celebrities. But they are no different than anyone else. This is the dynamic in patriarchal culture where we give a lot of value to these people who are well known, who are famous; and we want to emulate them and be like them.

The work within Leo is to bring that sense of importance and specialness to oneself according to one's own being. Oftentimes, a lot of celebrities or souls that become famous or well-known hold that energy. Sometimes, it's actually the result of a deep sense of insufficiency within themselves. "I need to make a loud show and get everyone's attention and make people feel special by giving them attention because, underneath that, I'm actually lacking in a healthy sense of self-importance and self-value. So, I'm going to make myself important. I'm going to make myself respectable. I'm going to make other people want to be around me and make myself stand out." But there's usually a deep sense of vulnerability and shyness underneath it.

### **The Soul Wants to be Seen, Known, and Appreciated**

That's sort of the paradox in the Leo archetype. Very often, as a soul self-actualizes and they are seen and known, or maybe a lot of people are putting them on a pedestal being like "You're so cool, I want to be like you!" Underneath that, whether the soul loves it or not, there is often a lot of insecurity and shyness. A soul really wants to feel seen as they are. "I just want someone to see me for me, not for my fame, not for all these things that everyone knows about me, or the roles I played in the movies, but to see me for me." There can be an aching heart in Leo that's longing to really be seen. This can actually lead to an interesting dynamic.

We often hear that Leo corresponds to things like romance and love affairs. Why? Because it makes you feel special. It's like, "Oh, this is a romantic experience! I feel like a million bucks!" or "I'm making this person feel like a million bucks." It's this energy of getting a lot of affection, a lot of adoration, a lot of attention. Or, a love affair, it's like "Oh! This person likes me or I like them. This is exciting! I feel a lot of love and affection from this person." But the work within Leo is not just the romance, not just having a romantic way of acting or being; there can be a way of hiding underneath that. What's actually in the heart? What actually wants to be seen? What actually wants to be met?

Oftentimes, a dynamic within the Leo archetype is due to a deep need to be seen and to be appreciated. The soul will have developed a certain level of empathy and sensitivity that allows them to really champion other people. This is a very healthy Leo expression; it's like really

celebrating people's uniqueness, people's specialness. But, once again, underneath this there can be a deep feeling of "I just want someone to actually see me."

So, what the soul has to learn is to embrace the Aquarius polarity: Not everything has to be special and really important. Not everything has to be majestic. You can just be yourself. And to experience just being oneself, raw as they are, and to find and awaken to a sense of confidence in that alone is a very powerful awakening. It's a very powerful realization in the Leo archetype. Because then, there isn't that persistent need to get feedback from the environment. "Oh, I like the way I feel about you, so I will direct my attention towards you. I'm going to be very open and generous towards you because you are making me feel really special." That, again, is part of the whole love affair psychology.

### **Narcissism and Leo**

Narcissism is the term most often ascribed to the Leo archetype. It can really be fire signs in general, particularly Aries, but narcissism here with Leo is the obsessive self-focus on oneself. There are different levels of it. The most extreme expression is a total self-orientation that edges on sociopathic behaviour. It's the inability to put oneself in another person's shoes because "It's all about me. How am I being treated? Am I getting what I deserve? Am I being treated fairly?" It's almost like a king or a queen expecting everyone to bow down to oneself and always appreciate oneself without any sense of accountability or self-reflection for how one is behaving in life. In less extreme expressions of narcissism, it can simply be a strong tendency to become consumingly self-focused, where the soul needs to really work on getting out of a seemingly very real swirl of "Everything is about me."

### **Child-Parent Relationship**

Another important correlation in Leo is the archetype of children, or your own children. The Leo archetype corresponds both to children, your relationship to your children (your own creation), as well as a child and their relationship to their parents. We must make a distinction here between the Cancer/Capricorn archetypes. Here, it's more about the relationship between Creator and creation. And, in some ways, the parent-child relationship reflects the relationship between Ultimate Creator and creation. There's a sense of "I love my creation. I respect and I appreciate and I adore it. I see it as one with me." One dynamic can be where a parent becomes over-identified with their children and how they are behaving, how they're acting, as a reflection of oneself. Or it can be needing to play out one's own unmet needs for actualization through their children.

On the other hand, we can have the Leo archetype showing up where a soul is really nurturing the unique creative potential of a child, noticing "Oh! This child loves to sing! Let's get them some singing lessons or get them an instrument. They like drawing! Let's teach them art, let's get them painting." And it's not about oneself; it's not about the parent. Each soul has its own purpose and, from the Leo perspective, the role of the parent is to appreciate and celebrate and love the creation that they have been given to care for and nurture and support in the blossoming of their own soul path.

### **The Evolutionary Stages in Leo:**

- **Consensus**

In consensus stages, the Leo archetype generally corresponds to a consensus understanding of beauty and creativity and specialness. This is where we will find the strongest associations with "You have to fit into a certain box. If you have creativity, you have to use it in a certain way." The attention on the individuality and the unique nature of the soul is suppressed here, or is limited rather, because the attention is on what is acceptable. Likewise, there tends to be more of a focus on competitive or comparative qualities of beauty, like beauty competitions, Miss America pageant, world pageant, or who is the best at whatever. These are distorted ways of working with the Leo energy because competition and comparisons of beauty are not natural. It's not what's natural to life.

Again, the Aquarius polarity says "We can all get along here. We don't have to make this a competition." At the same time, I should say that Leo is games. There is something joyful about playing games, but when it becomes so structured and conditioned that it actually qualifies a person's sense of who they are, then it's no longer healthy. Nevertheless, you can have a lot of souls growing into a sense of purpose by really developing, maybe it's fame or recognition, and being appreciated and seen for their unique creativity, their unique essence. Likewise, in consensus stages, there's more of a tendency to idealize people who are famous and to want to emulate them. So, the context for personal creativity will often be very conditioned by cultural constructs of what is seen as creative and beautiful at that time.

- **Individuated**

In the individuated stages, beauty opens up a lot more, creativity and self-expression. By the way, I want to clarify: beauty as an inherent inner quality is actually Taurus (Taurus is grace and beauty) because that's life; and it's an internal experience. In Leo, it's expressive. Leo is where you are seeing and appreciating the beauty around you and sharing that beauty. So, in the individuated stages, there's more space and validation for souls to actualize their own essence, and thus to be more seen according to who they are. There is a need for a soul in this stage of evolution for a lot of experimentation, a lot of creativity. In the individuated stages, the soul is learning to cultivate pride and confidence in who they are, no matter what that is, no matter what that looks like.

Pride, by the way, is a general characteristic in Leo. I think there is something beautiful about pride. You can be proud of yourself; you can be proud of someone else. There's something really sweet about being proud. But, the psychology of being prideful, living as a prideful person, can become this way of saying "I'm a proud person, I would never do this. I won't talk to this person, I'm better than that." So there can be narcissism and self-focus in it as well.

- **Spiritual**

In the spiritual stages of evolution, since the soul is really humbling itself and cultivating a lot of humility and learning to orientate towards the Source of All Things, the Leo archetype ultimately corresponds to a reorientation of the personal sense of self and self-importance to become an instrument. So, the self-actualization and self-expression is allowing a higher purpose to animate oneself, knowing that we didn't create ourselves; the soul didn't create itself. And so, just being what we are and actualizing

the gifts and the beauty that we are is a matter of honouring the Source of each one of us.

And there can be these dynamics:

In the **first stages spiritual**, Jeffrey Wolf Green often associated the first subdivision of the spiritual stage with Virgo. This is because the energy of Virgo is about humility and purification, lots of self-work. It has nothing to do with where Virgo is on your chart. Just, archetypally, the first subdivision is a very Virgo phase for all souls. There can be this process where the soul is learning to realign their sense of importance or specialness so it can be used, so it can become an instrument.

In the **second subdivision of the spiritual stage**, Jeffrey Wolf Green often associated that second subdivision with Leo, because that's the point where the soul is actually actualizing and sharing the awakens that they have come to realize. They are in a greater attunement to their true nature, and the evolution in that phase is really actualizing it in the world. So, being seen is often a part of that, having a purpose. And it's very tempting in that stage, and you'll find souls in that stage, where the Leo archetype in their chart can easily reflect where they may get hooked up in a self-delusion and think "I'm the Source of creation, I'm the important one here" and become self-focused, which then ultimately needs to be dissolved.

In the **third stages spiritual**, this Leonian energy is where the individual self can become a central force, a figure that is seen, that gives, that shines, that is bright; but they are not directing attention toward themselves. They become a conduit for the Source of All Things. That's where you can have these great spiritual teachers that are well-known, that are famous, that are holding a lot of energy and are seen and are having a big impact on the collective. And, in being seen, in being a unique expression of Divine awakens, they direct people and inspire people and reflect back to people the Source of All Creation.

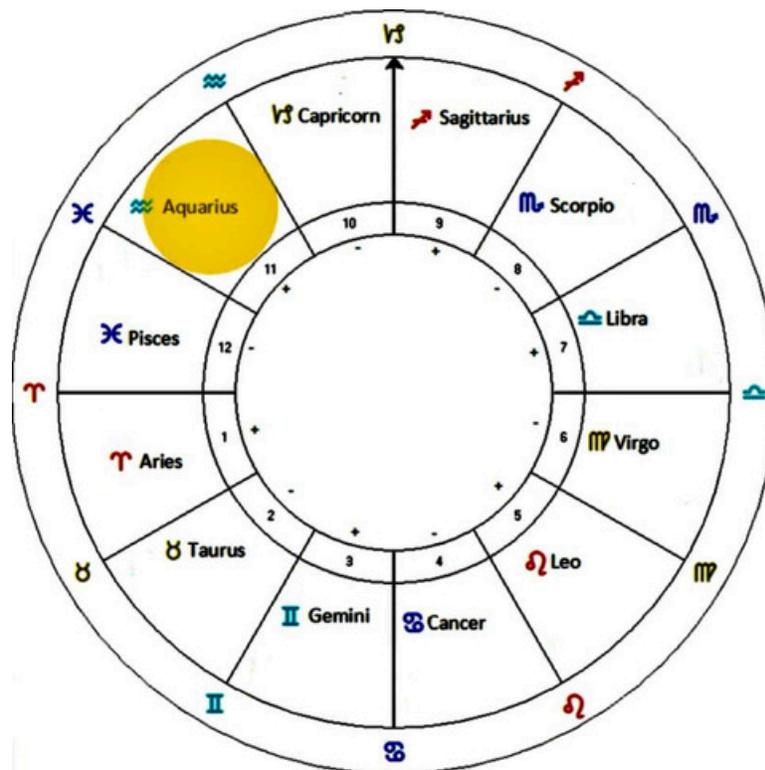
## **Aquarius Polarity and Objectivity**

I want to close with one more thought on the Aquarian polarity. Aquarius speaks to the inherent impersonal-ness of all of life. Aquarius corresponds to the intelligence of creation, where we can see that everything is really a bunch of archetypes playing itself out; and it's not really personal. Whereas, Leo can get stuck in this deep sense of everything being personal, where it all hits very close to home, and there's a lot of concern with "Am I self-actualizing? Am I being seen? Am I being recognised? Am I going to leave a legacy?" The orientation towards purpose and self-actualization and being someone and being recognised, can blind a soul to the fact that the Sun itself, this solar system, is also orbiting with a bunch of other solar systems around a point; and all of that is orbiting together creating a galaxy. There is a matrix to creation where everything and everyone is being what they are. And so, even if a soul's path in life is to get up on stage and perform in front of thousands of people, or to do something in any way at all that means being seen, being self-expressed, being recognised, it's *just what is*. And so, the goal is to develop that objectivity and the ability to stay detached, and to recognise that, at the core, it's just life playing itself out and, at the core, it's all inherently impersonal.

This completes Leo. Let's look at Aquarius.

# Aquarius

## Aquarius



Hello everyone. Welcome to Aquarius. Aquarius is fixed air. It is the second sign in the fourth quadrant. The evolutionary intention in Aquarius is to liberate from the known. What is “the known”? The known represents everything that is conditioned, everything that the mind has identified as self, as reality, as existing. And yet, one thing that we learn in Aquarius is that Reality is what it is prior to the constructs and definitions that we have crystalized onto it.

### **The Intelligence of Creation**

It's meaningful to note that Aquarius is wedged between Capricorn and Pisces. Pisces *is* the Oneness; it's Reality. There is no separation in Pisces. It's the Source. It's the Oneness that *is* everything, *of* everything, *in* everything. Capricorn is the form that Oneness takes; it's the forms that consciousness will condition itself into. What's happening in Aquarius? We are not in the Oneness of Pisces, but we are certainly not in forms of time and space and structure in Capricorn. Aquarius points to “what *is*.” It points to the intelligence of creation on an archetypal energetic level.

So, in the same way that I spoke in the introduction, you can look at Reality (Pisces), and put a pie on top of Reality, and then create a whole bunch of archetypes. If you take out one slice, you have a whole archetype that will manifest itself fractally, on every size scale, in every dimension of Reality. So, if you take out one zodiac sign, you look in the body, you look in society, you look in history, you look in psychology; everywhere you look you're going to find

that archetype manifesting. The archetypes can be understood as the underlying intelligence of creation.

I often think of Aquarius as the thoughts of God: So, God being Pisces, and then the thoughts, the projected intelligence from the Source. So, when we look at Reality as it is, we are not necessarily giving it names; that would be Gemini. Nor are we yet interpreting it and saying what things mean or giving it some sort of understanding; that's Sagittarius. Prior to all of that is just what *is*, regardless of whether we understand it, regardless of what we call it. It doesn't depend on our classification or our interpretation.

### **The Archetypal Symbology of Astrology**

There are millions of people alive where, their life unfolding, and their soul journey is mapped out in their chart, and they don't even necessarily know about their chart or know about the transits (which are the current planetary movements in the sky).

Another example: You can have a bunch of dreams, and these dreams are giving you archetypal language, archetypal symbology. You might dream about your mother or father. You might dream about certain animals or see certain number sequences. The tendency for the conditioned mind is to want to interpret these things according to how it has already come to know it. But, from an Aquarian point of view, oftentimes these symbols are actually just pointing to an archetypal reality, a universal language that exists prior to, and regardless of, our own personal human associations.

This is why astrology, in its essence, is an Aquarian thing. Because, in astrology, we are developing an objective view of reality. Astrology is happening whether you know it or not, whether you interpret it or not. That's why we can have so many systems of interpretation, so many ways of looking at astrology and understanding it. Because the framework of reality, this archetypal expression of reality, already *is*; and it's not telling us how to know it or how to understand it.

### **Aquarian Objectivity and Observer's Mind**

So, in Aquarius we are learning to develop an objective consciousness, to see everything *as it is*. To see something *as it is* means we are not giving it a story. We are not saying "This is what this means." We are not necessarily giving it names and holding onto that as definitive of what it is. How do you do that? In some sense, if you are going to talk about something, you have already moved into the Mercury/Gemini and Jupiter/Sagittarius realm where you are giving names and you're giving interpretation. But, before all of that, at the core, is just pure observation.

In Aquarius, we have this potential to cultivate the observer's mind. An example of the observer's mind is looking through a telescope and observing the stars. What happens is, we develop a scientific awareness of reality just through sheer observation of it. This is also how we know astrology works. It actually doesn't require a belief system. All one needs to do is observe. Observe astrology, observe the patterns, and correlate it to life experience, that's an inherent scientific process. You can also experience pure observation in a spiritual sense. You can sit quietly with eyes open or closed and just practice pure observation, not allowing the mind to grab onto a story about the things that arise.

This very much reminds me of the Zen teaching that I have often heard, where there is a teaching and practice that, as you are sitting in meditation, there might be mystical experiences or visions that come. The general teaching, as I understand it, is just to stay in awareness, not to go into a story about it, not to become fascinated by it, but just to rest in awareness. What's happening in Aquarius is, we are freeing the mind from trying to create context and definition and a placement and meaning for everything, but just to let everything be, as it is.

### **Leo vs Aquarius in a Stadium**

A great example for what is happening to the soul through Aquarius is very much the difference between a soul being in the stadium, the football stadium. You can think of this as Leo. It's very personal. It's very real. You have the ball and everyone is watching you. You have a purpose. There are people either on your team or trying to get you. There's a deep sense of "I am here to actualize a purpose," and there is a hyper sense of self-awareness.

Leaving the stadium and going to the bleachers where it's high up, you have the bird's eye view. You can see all the players. You can see everything, but you are far removed from it. The soul itself, at the core, is not defined by its human experience. It is not dependent upon its human experience for its own existence. We know that the soul is working out its own desires, and its realizing and learning about itself through the human experience. What's happening in Aquarius is that we learn to sit in the seat of our soul and just observe.

### **Aquarius as the Total Memory of the Soul**

The soul, meaning we, are the awareness of everything that has ever happened in our life: When we were born. When we were 7. When we were walking down the street and saw an advertisement on the side of the road and we didn't really read the advertisement, but it crossed our peripheral vision. When we got married. When something traumatic happened to us. When we ate breakfast 14 days ago. There is a witness to all of that— Not giving it a story. Not interpreting it. Just pure awareness. This pure awareness, I think of it as 360°. It's all around.

Jeffery Wolfe Green has taught that the Aquarius archetype corresponds to the total memory of the soul in this and all prior lifetimes. When we are in Aquarius world we are dealing with the soul's reality on an archetypal, energetic level. We are not looking at the human identity in the human form. So, from the perspective of the soul's evolutionary journey, there's just the continuity of its "being-ness." It's not thinking of "When I was 4 years old, and before that I don't remember."

From the soul level of awareness, there's just the entirety of the experience. It's the human personality that it focuses into, that it's creating as a vehicle for its evolution, where the soul predominantly consciously thinks of itself as a human being. It'll have specific and selective memories from this lifetime, predominantly no memories of really early childhood, and generally no memories of anything before this lifetime. However, the total imprinting of everything that has ever occurred within the field of the soul is here, now. And this often affects the way in which we look upon reality.

### **Unresolved Trauma Affects Objectivity**

So, the thing that interferes with objective consciousness, with clear seeing, would be the projections and the stories that we create which are often the result of unresolved trauma from

the past. Jeff Green has often said that a great majority of our reactions and responses to life experience has to do with unresolved trauma from the past, and the soul isn't consciously aware of it as so.

An example of that could be that you got into an argument with someone many years ago and they were wearing a blue shirt, a blue button-down shirt. Now, when you see people of the same gender wearing a blue button-down shirt, you have a strong fear reaction, or this resistance. And the mind doesn't consciously know "Why am I feeling this way? What's the resistance?"

This is where we learn to stay an observer. In bringing observer consciousness to the sensations, feelings and reactions, we allow for whatever is actually suppressed within our soul-field to emerge and reveal itself and release. But, what happens is, oftentimes, the soul will stay in a triggered place and, in a sense, recreate the trauma over and over and over and over again. And, it's not usually necessary for there to actually be traumatic events happening in a person's life to recreate trauma, it's just the fact that there is unresolved trauma in the field of the soul that will reignite whenever the trigger is manifest.

So, a part of the healing within Aquarius in developing the observer's mind is that we allow all of life to arise and pass. And, what happens in pure witnessing is gradually the revelation of "*what is*" becomes known. And this revelation is the experience of everything being, at the core, an inherently impersonal reality.

### **Creative Intelligence Beyond Time**

Everything is inherently impersonal; and it's just the energy of life flowing. We just start to see archetypes playing themselves out. We can think of Aquarius in the way that we can look at the stars and see that everything *is* where it is, everything *is* what it is. And, so too, we all *are* what we are. Our essential soul individuality *is* what it is. Each soul has its own nature, and this is different from personality. Each soul as it is created has its own individual "being-ness." It's not a personality, it's just *what it is*. And we awaken to that "is-ness" and start to see that all of life is just playing out these impersonal archetypes, and we are one with that.

In a sense, in Aquarius, this is why the past and the future aren't really a thing. It's not like there's a timeline where there's a past and a future and then there's right now, one coming before the other and one coming after the other, because this intelligence of creation doesn't start with time. Time is an intentional, purposeful function on the evolutionary journey of the soul. It's not original to Reality. In Aquarius, there is just creative intelligence. And so, we see that everything always has been what it is. We can then feel settled that we are falling into a natural "being-ness" where everything comes into place.

### **Feelings of Paranoia vs. Harmonious Flow**

There can be two experiences in the Aquarian realm. One is a deep sense of dissonance. We can have the experience of feeling very traumatized by life, and this can really result in extreme cases of strong paranoia, strong tendencies of projection. Or, we can feel like everything is falling into place harmoniously and perfectly, all in divine order. And this experience reflects the idea that everything in creation is reflecting the thoughts of God, and the thoughts of God couldn't be contradictory with one another. All the archetypes coexist in this one giant

ecosystem of existence. Michelle often speaks about "The present moment is a remembering of what has already been." So, it's like remembering the future. Everything is already done. It's like, if you stand in that stadium high up above in the bleachers and you are looking at the play, you can think of the soul as sort of holding time and space in their hand and observing it, but separate from it. The whole drama of this human existence, of this soul journey, it's all being witnessed simultaneously to it being played out.

This can be a very trippy thing, but this is why we can have dreams 10 years ago and premonitions about something that is in your soul program that will happen. There are certain things that are just going to happen, because it already is. It is just seemingly playing out and manifesting in time. This is also why things like the iChing or tarot can work. Different forms of divination, where we are tuning in to the archetypal energetics, can speak to what was or what will be, all in the present moment.

Thinking of the tarot is a great analogy here. We can imagine all of life as a tarot card. All the different symbols and different things that are happening, if we just observe it and say "Okay, what is this reflecting about the energy, the archetypal dynamics that are unfolding?" A purely objective way of thinking about it. And, in that sense, we take a step back and we make life less personal. Now, there are a couple issues here.

### **Tendency to Dissociate**

In the journey of cultivating objectivity and detachment and taking a step back, there is a possibility of the soul becoming dissociative or dissociating from life. If you are so far out in the bleachers that you can't empathize or connect with reality here on this earth plane, it's possible that this is actually trauma, and that there has been a level of dissociation where the soul has actually checked out.

Jeffrey Wolf Green has also taught that the Aquarian archetype will correspond to things that the soul has suppressed about itself relative to its own past because there are certain memories, experiences or dynamics that it doesn't want to contend with. And that suppression can easily lead to cutting off parts of oneself and just not dealing with it. So, in a sense, in being dissociative, the soul is seemingly playing it cool, kind of rising above everything but, if you look closely, there is often a lot of irritation. Or, they will need to distance themselves or not be around certain people or experiences because there is a lot of suppressed content there that they don't want to face.

Another issue in this objectivity and detachment is that there can be a loss of respect and care for life. We can have the archetype of the crazy scientist or the person who just lives alone in their own world trying to invent ways for machines to replace the need to eat. And it's all these ways that are on some level dissociative, but also living in the mind, striving for higher intelligence to free oneself up from the petty ways of human existence.

### **Heart Connection Through the Leo Polarity**

In both of these examples, the Leo polarity is teaching the soul to connect with the heart, to connect with their own "human being-ness." You have a purpose and you have to share it. You have to let yourself be seen, be self-expressive, be self-actualized, and also appreciate the more playful, joyful aspect of creation. There can be a judgement or an irritation in Aquarius relative

to play and games and fun. "Oh, drama and games? I don't want to have anything to do with that! I just want to stay up here in this clear place." But integrating the Leo polarity is healthy because we aren't isolating and protecting from a place of trauma and dissociation.

### **Correspondence to Communities**

Very often, in the Aquarius archetype we are looking at where the soul has had relationships with groups of people. Aquarius naturally corresponds to groups of people and the communities that we associate with. Why? Everything in creation is in harmonic resonance with everything in creation. Communities and groups naturally form spontaneously; they emerge on their own according to resonance.

The best example of this could be ecosystems. One element in an ecosystem will attract other elements. And this is what creates an ecosystem; this is what creates a forest with all of these individual parts co-existing together. Every soul on its soul journey, at every stage of the game, will be in resonance with other groups of people, other souls, forming communities, forming friendships that simply reflect a shared resonance.

Since the intention in Aquarius is freedom from the known, is liberation, there runs the risk of the soul becoming identified with its group of people. "These are *my* friends, these are *my* people, this is how *we* live, this is *our* little subdivision, *our* little tree house group." This can create all kinds of karmic dynamics.

### **Psychology of Exclusion**

One we could have is the psychology of exclusion. "You aren't allowed in this club. This club is only for *these* kinds of people." We could have the issue of the soul being excommunicated from the group. "No, you don't belong in this group. You are wearing the wrong colored shirt." Or "You have a view or way of thinking that doesn't fit into this group, so you are no longer here anymore."

Oftentimes, the Aquarius archetype will speak to where there is trauma around groups, trauma around friends, trauma around community, and all kinds of different dynamics that a soul could experience in relation to one's community, or in relation to one's friends. The underlying lesson for a soul through Aquarius, at the core, is understanding the energy of inclusion. Which is, "We are all included here." The more we become identified with a status quo, identified with how a particular configuration of friendship or community looks, at some point the impulse for liberation will come knocking on our door.

### **Liberation From Conditioning**

In another way, besides exclusion and excommunication, there is the pressure within Aquarius to wake up, to liberate. There are two ways of relating to conditioning: There is the Saturn/Capricorn conditioning; which is necessary. In Capricorn, we are working with conditioning. We can have conditioning that is repressive and a reflection of cultural constructs that we have adopted, that don't allow us to really grow. So, we have to become aware of that conditioning and unravel it. But, in Capricorn, we recondition. We are always learning how to recondition and come into a clear and aligned posture in relationship to this physical life. In Aquarius, we are becoming aware of our conditioning, but we are just walking away from it. We're not reconditioning a new pattern. We're noticing "Oh! I was identified with this idea of

belonging and fitting in, and I realize I am not that." So, what happens in Aquarius is that we can just say "Oh! I don't have to be part of the scarf club. I'm just going to take this scarf off and walk away." It's literally just facing a new direction. "I was looking here this whole time. Now, I'm going to look here. And I see that I never had to be what I thought I was. It was all just a story." The liberation here is profound. Souls can experience this in small ways throughout their life or have different periods or different lifetimes where there is a profound awakening of one's essential nature.

One's realization of self isn't given some other identity. It isn't given some kind of context. That's why the fool archetype is very relevant here. If a soul is identified with a particular construct of being: to belong, to fit in, to be a part of the group, to hold on to an idea of "This is what relationship looks like" or "This is what having a good, successful business looks like," and then realising "Oh! This is just an associated construct in my mind that I added to *what is*."

There is a freedom to not know. There is a freedom to not have a definition. There is a freedom to not fill one's mind with a bunch of associations and to just be what one is, and then life reveals itself spontaneously and organically. Everything kind of comes together on its own because the archetypal energies of life are what are at play here. We don't have to control it or make it happen; and also, we can't make it not happen. We can't change archetypes. We can't prevent the intelligence of creation from manifesting and playing out.

This is why, as a soul evolves, the Aquarius archetype actually corresponds to the capacity of the mind to see reality from a very brilliant perspective, to see reality from the seat of the higher intelligence of archetypal creation. So, for some souls, that will be a very inventive mind that can see things from a broader, wide-eye point of view and is able to innovate and think of things that people in their boxes couldn't otherwise think of. But, it could also be a soul that has total access to the past (this lifetime, past lifetimes, when they left the mother's womb) because they are accessing that Aquarian level of witness, the soul, constant presence, constant awareness, not associated with the human identity that's playing out. And there can be a total view and total vision of the future that hasn't yet played out in time but already *is*.

### **Aquarian Inventions, Innovations and Technology**

So, let's delve into this a little more deeply. We often hear in Aquarius an association with inventions and innovation. I also often say that, "in Aquarius there is nothing new." So, how can there be inventions and also nothing new at the same time? When we understand that what's happening is that we are just waking up to the reality of creation, the actual intelligence of reality itself, then we can see that all of our inventions are actually just an attunement to the intelligence of creation, to the inherent technologies of life itself.

For example, we have all kinds of technological innovations. Prior to these technological innovations, we can say that life was at a certain status quo. Before the printing press, books and sharing knowledge and information was at a certain level; after the printing press was invented, books and sharing knowledge opened up to a whole new level. It totally transformed the entire planet. What's happening there is that, it's not as if the idea of sharing knowledge and information was invented, but the way in which we are accessing it. You keep on taking the idea of the printing press and you progress it through history. Now, we have social media and the internet, but that itself will continue to evolve. What it's all reflecting at the core is that the



essential nature. The more attention becomes fixed on particular streams or ideas of profit or success or innovation, with the exclusion of a greater consideration for all of us, not just our planet, but like the whole galaxy, the whole universe, all the trash we leave in space for the sake of scientific innovation. The more we include a greater consideration, the more consciousness itself evolves to connect with the essential nature of reality, which basically includes all of these different parts. All archetypes are included, and all individualities coexist here in this one reality.

I should clarify, in the arc of the evolution of consciousness on the planet, there are these greater cycles that we are not going to go into, but it's worth noting that there are these great astrological cycles that take thousands of years. In these cycles, we will find humanity moving through different phases of self-knowledge. And each level of self-knowledge will reflect itself in the kinds of technologies and ways of thinking that the soul is able to connect with and apprehend. As it happens to be, right now we are on an upward arc. According to the Indian cosmology of the Yugas, we are raising in consciousness as a collective. So, we are going to continue to see, over the next hundreds of years, an evolution of our understanding of technology that I would say has nothing to do with things, but is about the mind and really understanding the nature of the mind, the nature of divine intelligence and what we are all able to access.

### **Past and Future Memories and Flashes**

As the soul awakens, and it wakes up from the story and the limited context that it's projected onto reality, this observer's mind will bring a lot of things up. Events and circumstances will unfold; memories will arise, sensations, feelings, sounds, smells, anything that has been suppressed will begin to emerge. It's very common in the Aquarian realm where a soul will go through phases in their life where there is a lot of content arising. And it is really important during those phases to bring a lot of conscious attention to relaxing the nervous system. Relaxing the nervous system allows the mind to rest a little more and stay in a safe space as an observer.

A lot of times, these experiences can bring flashes and memories and things that are inherently uncomfortable. They can even seem totally non sequitur. "Why am I thinking of this right now? Why did this memory just flash through my mind?" Sometimes, it doesn't make any sense. In the same way, we can have a dream one day and say "Huh. That seems totally non sequitur." We can have a dream and think "Why is this person showing up in my dream right now?" And then, 10 years later, you meet this person and there's some sort of revelation of what was shown to you in that dream, but the mind could have had no awareness of that. As the soul has memories of the past or future, and it may seem totally non sequitur and not connected to one's conscious life right now, it's just an unfolding of *what is* and the local linear mind may not understand it in the moment.

It's useful to note that memory as we usually think of it is Gemini and Mercury. Memory here is what we are recalling. So, if I ask you "What did you eat for breakfast a few days ago?" You'll recall specific details, like what you were wearing or what the room looked like. You're not going to tell me everything about the room, about the experience, about every bite and how it tasted. The mind's going to be selecting particular data points, and will have that, synthesise it, and communicate it.

From an Aquarian point of view, everything is there. All of it. Whether you recall it or not, whether the local mind is aware of it, whether we can identify and place it in time and space, it's all contained in our memory. So, true memory is really Aquarius, but we usually only access selective parts of memory, and that's through Gemini.

*Short term memory, recalling specific facts = Gemini/Mercury. Long term memory, unfiltered recall = Aquarius/Uranus.*

### **Insecurity of the Unknown**

I want to speak about the idea of insecurity. Relative to Aquarius, insecurity is the insecurity of the unknown. The mind can't go there. The conditioned mind can't touch *what is*. As hard as it will try, it's never actually going to reach it. The conditioned mind only knows the past; it only knows the known. This can be very scary. In fact, it can be exhilaratingly scary and frightening for a soul.

Imagine you are a part of a religious group your whole life, and then you start having realizations of "This isn't really what I believe in." From an Aquarian point of view, you are now beginning to liberate your mind from a particular construct of thinking. Your whole life, everything you know, your friends, your groups, every association you have made for yourself is no longer alive for you. A lot of souls will suppress that. This can result in a phase of being kind of in the old but, in whatever ways one can, trying to break free into the new. The potential problem with this is, if a person is really suppressing their individuality, there can come a point where that suppression will build a pressure and they will just flip. It can be walking out on a family, walking out of a relationship, deciding one day that "I don't want to do this anymore." Or, if it's totally suppressed, this can lead to a deep sense of disconnecting. And that could be the dissociation issue, where a soul is just checked out, they're just going with the flow because they are not connected with their own individuality anymore. They're not living their own soul path. So, the insecurity often means that the soul has to face *what is* and be willing to just simply turn their attention away from *what isn't*.

### **Evolutionary Stages in Aquarius**

- **Consensus**

In the consensus stage of evolution, Aquarius will correspond to the groups and communities that we associate with that will reflect a particular way of life. This can be a political group. I often think about how, in consensus reality, there are generally a limited number of groups or communities to choose from, but these groups or communities or political affiliations can easily become a sense of belonging, and the innovations and growth and progress a soul will experience will happen within these groups. Likewise, the idea of innovation and technological developments will happen within the realm of however consensus reality sees what is valuable about life. "What's important? What are we trying to achieve? How do we value nature? How do we value humans? How do we value the environment?" Our relationship to technology and humanity itself and what we think of as innovative will reflect consensus values.

- **Individuated**

In the individuated stages, which is an inherently Aquarian stage of evolution (just archetypally), the soul is liberating and breaking free from all of its known associations.

The intention here is to learn to see life from the observer's mind. There is an openness now to experiment and experience ways of community and ways of living here as human beings where everyone's individuality is honoured and respected, where we can all get along and also appreciate and give more attention to subcultures or subdivisions of society and groups that the mainstream consensus doesn't recognise, or oppresses, or marginalizes. There is an impulse within the individuated stage towards a greater state of inclusion. So, the technologies and innovations and ways of thinking will be oriented around a greater global, environmental, and social awareness of inclusion and awareness.

At the latter stages of individuation, this can really reflect a profound degree of intelligence, where the soul can become a brilliant astrologer, really have a greater understanding of the mechanics of life and archetypal language. But this is not necessarily the point where the soul has cultivated a spirit of humility in wanting to know the true nature of reality and to surrender to that.

- **Spiritual**

In the spiritual stages of evolution, the Aquarius archetype, at the core, reflects the awakening of the soul to itself. It's the freedom from the past in its entirety. It is not about technology or innovation or improvement in society. It is about the waking up of the mind, the freedom of the mind from the past. In the awakening, the soul is learning how to cultivate the observer's mind to see things as they are, and thus gradually learn to understand the objective nature of reality itself, and thus gradually settle more fully into the seat of the soul in the ultimate and eternal witness and observer.

In these second stages spiritual, this where the soul has an actual break from the past. There is a discontinuity with the past, where the soul realizes that "This is not who I am. The past is over; it's done. It has no relevance to who I am right now or to who I ever was." There is an awakening to one's nature and to *what is*. There is a profound capacity at that stage of evolution for the soul to see things very clearly.

Then, in the third stage of spiritual evolution, the capacity to see reality as it is created, all of it: past and future, itself grows and grows and deepens as the soul becomes completely identified with its true self.

This completes our teaching on Leo and Aquarius.

## The 12 Signs as One Flow of Consciousness

Hello everyone. At this point we completed our teachings on the 12 signs of the zodiac. What I would like to do in this video is start with Pisces once again and move through the entire zodiac. What I want to illuminate is how there's a natural evolutionary flow through the natural zodiac. There is an intuitive progression from one sign to the next. This doesn't mean that, as you move through the zodiac, one sign is more involved than another; because it's actually a circle, it's a spiral. But it does show a natural progression of consciousness. There is an intuitive flow from one domain to the next. We can really think of all of the signs as entire domains of consciousness. These are universal archetypes. And we can also understand this in relation to each other from one to the next. So I'm going to offer that. Then, in the next video, I'm going to revisit the zodiac signs again, this time zeroing in on polarities, on elements, and modes.

### Pisces



All right, so let's get started. We are going to begin once again with Pisces. We can think of Pisces as a starting point. It's the ending point. It is the present moment. So, let's think of Pisces as the source from which all things come, the source which is all things. In this place of Pisces there is a unity consciousness. There is not distinction. There is not individuality. There is not difference.

### Aries



Coming from Pisces is Aries, which is the birthing of individual will. "Now I'm leaving the room of oneness to individuate and actualize a sense of personal purpose in life." And there's a lot of randomness in direction. "Where am I going? What am I doing?" Learning along the way. And there's a lot of attention now in Aries on the experience of the solo individual self. The journey

and the discoveries that take place in Aries become an informant of self-knowledge. It teaches asoul about its values, what it wants, how it wants to live here.

## Taurus



So, the randomness slows down and begins to ground and set upshop in Taurus, where the soul is now stabilizing and connecting more deeply to the life thatitwants to live. The senses are activated and alive. It is learning about itself through its sensualexperiences, and thus determining how it wants to feel, how it wants to live and embodythis life.

## Gemini



And the raw sensual experience is then given names and classifications through the mind in Gemini. The senses, that which you feel, that which you see, that which you taste, is now given context. This is soft. This is hard. This is light. This is dark.The soul is expanding from the safe, comfortable, cozy place of knowing itself and being stable in Taurus to learn about the world. “What is this world that I’m living in? How does all this stuff work?” And there’s communication, there’s gathering of data, there’s synthesis, there’s integration happening in Gemini. And, in Gemini the soul is in relationship to its environment. It is externally projecting out into the world to learn more and to exchange data and information and, ultimately, to gather more information about itself.

## Cancer



And, in Cancer this mental energy grounds and comes in. Where the soul is now interested in learning “Who am I? What makes me safe? How can I ground more fully in a sense of being at home in the environment which I’ve identified in Gemini?” Right? “That’s father, that’s mother, that’s brother, that’s sister, that’s neighbor. But who am I within all of this? All of those things that I know represent what is safe and known and familiar, and thus informs me of my sense of self.” So, we build comfort and security, emotionally, in Cancer. We nurture a sense of ego growth and self development, which allows us to feel whole and secure within ourselves as we walk this evolutionary journey, constantly moving from one moment to the next, to the next, to the next. Grounded and rooted in the capacity to integrate one’s emotional experiences, to learn more about oneself.

## Leo



The soul is leaving the safe womb of Cancer and birthing itself into the world to actualize a unique expression of divine creative energy. “Here I am! This unique being, no one else like me in the world! There’s a quality of beingness that only I can breathe and live and express.” Consciousness now is moving into itself, becoming fascinated with its unique beingness and the gift of itself, wanting to self-actualize and create, coming into a sense of purpose, where it can fully open up its unique creative gifts and potential.

## Virgo



And then, what happens as a Soul Moves from Leo to Virgo is, it realizes “Okay, this is great! I’m actualizing! I am inspiring! I am generous! I have purpose! I’m alive! But I need to make sure that it’s not just about me and that this is service, this is useful, this is helpful for the good of the collective. I want to curb, and really refine, and become self-aware of any latent self-focus where I’m not giving attention to detail. And I’m not giving attention to the humility and integrity of living with real precision and self-accuracy.” Jeff Green often described Leo as the pyramid where the self is on top. And then, Virgo is the inverted pyramid where the self is on the bottom. It’s “How can I be useful here? How can I contribute to the betterment of, and be in service to the whole, to what’s needed and necessary for the function of life?” The humility and self-refinement bring the soul within, in Virgo, becoming incredibly self-aware.

## Libra



Now, we move above the horizon to Libra, where there is a readiness for intimacy. The ability to then relate to another person and know how to give, know how to share, to actually come into a state of balance and equality with other people. Where there’s a capacity to further the evolutionary journey through the experience of intimacy, and communication, and learning about needs, and meeting needs. There is now this capacity for the soul to learn about all of itself, all of the immense amounts of self-knowledge that was cultivated through the first six signs, and to begin to reach a new threshold of discovery through relationship. And this relationship teaches the soul all about its needs and how to be in balance in relationships.

## Scorpio



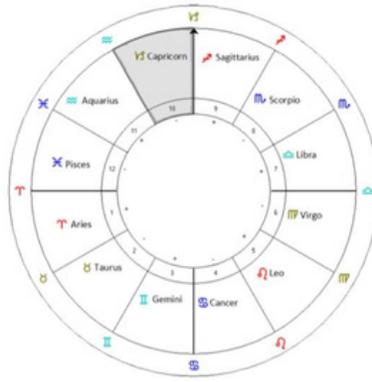
The content of these relationships become the basis in Scorpio for going deep. And the soul is beginning to uncover its deeper psychological limitations, the places where it is fearful, where it has unrealized unconscious needs for security, where it is needing to explore the shadow, the greater unconscious realm that it can only access by exploring the realm of experience: Being attracted to people. Feeling the energy of desire. Feeling the energy of resistance. And we go through that, and really work out self-knowledge through the grit and the terrain of the entirety of our relational experiences. So, in Scorpio we are going deep into the muck, and the Phoenix is rising. And, as it rises, the soul is able to apprehend a greater understanding and a greater insight into reality.

## Sagittarius



In Sagittarius, the soul is leaving the deep, dark places of self-work and psychological analysis, working with the shadow and the unconscious and addiction and desire, and it is saying "Okay, what is the meaning of life? What is this all about? What is actually happening here?" And the soul is looking out again; but to look in, and to understand "What's this whole thing about, and why are we doing this?" It's cultivating a philosophy, a cosmological basis for understanding the underlying truths of creation. And it's studying nature. It's studying its own nature and wanting to apply that philosophy, wanting to live it via its intuition. Sagittarius, then, is going on this journey, this pilgrimage, to awaken to greater insight, greater realization.

## Capricorn



And these realizations, the philosophical understanding, the awareness that was established in Sagittarius, becomes the basis for the rules, constructs, agreements, the systems, the governance that is established in Capricorn. You can think of the relationship between a religious philosophy and its constructs, the abiding rules, the doctrine of the religion itself that tells you how to live here, how to operate here as a human being. How do you create a society where we can get along with guidance and ethics? What happens in Capricorn is, the soul is connecting with authority, either external or internal, to live life here in this world, not just philosophically, but practically. "How are we going to do this? How are we going to live our life?" And so, the soul is learning to build a life in alignment with its deeper knowing of what is right. It is correcting itself. It is learning how to live in integrity. And, it is taking responsibility to live a life here, in this social sphere, in this world, deeply aware that what it does has an effect, not just on itself, but on everyone and on future generations. So, consciousness really becomes internal and introspective, so the soul can know "What am I doing here? What am I building? What am I cultivating? What am I growing?" This crystallizes a path, traditions, constructs. It conditions a way of being, a way of thinking.

## Aquarius



And then, in Aquarius, we take anything that is not relevant or useful to our essential nature and we throw it off. Here, the soul is wanting to wake up and liberate from all the conditioning and the constructs that it has associated itself with. Through Aquarius, the soul is coming into resonance with ways of life, community, friendship, ways of thinking about reality, improving, evolving the way we live here as human beings. As the soul liberates its mind from the known constructs, the soul is evolving its intelligence, its capacity to see clearly without subjective conditioning. And the mind is genius, and very well developed, very evolved.

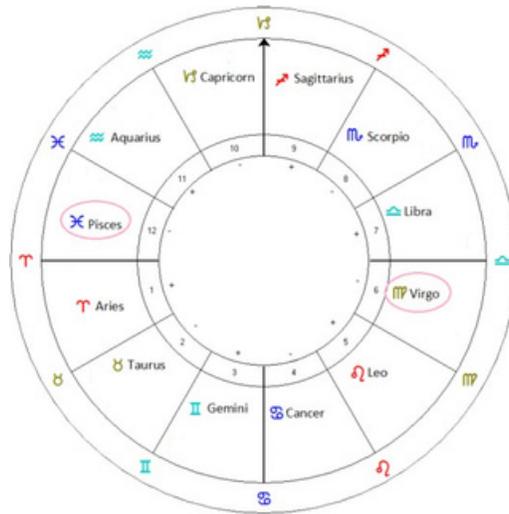
## Pisces



And then, it's completely humbled in Pisces, where we realize "I didn't create this mind. This mind can't build a tower of Babel all the way to God. It doesn't matter how genius I am." Love, forgiveness, truth, unity is essential and always there. The Source of all things can't be grasped or conquered with the mind, with the intellect, as genius and advanced as the thinking is. Love is greater than all things. And so, all arrogant self-importance in Aquarius is dissolved back into the womb of oneness, where there are no differences. There is no 'better than', there's no intellect, there's no evolving. There is just what is essentially, and always, true.

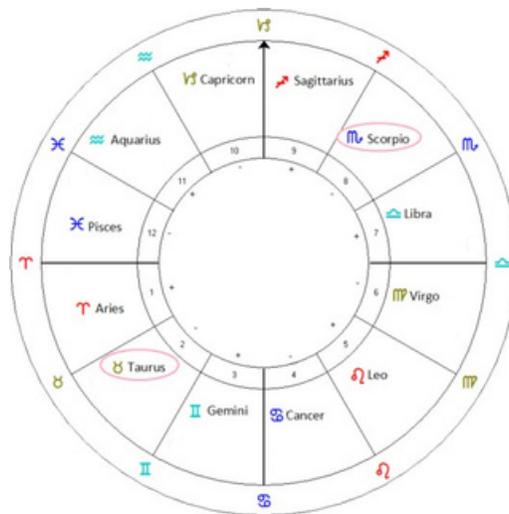
Okay, now let's take a look a little more deeply at polarities, elements, and modes.





### Aries/Libra

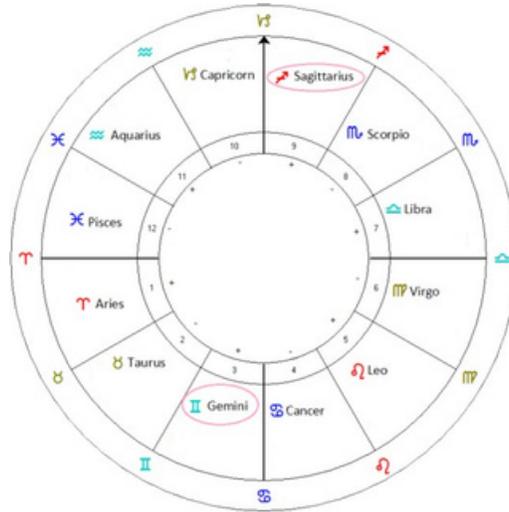
The Aries/Libra axis is the axis of self and other. In its essence it's about "I am on this journey figuring it out, walking day by day, moment to moment, finding my path. And there's a lot of other people here too. And I can't do it all alone. We have to learn how to get along and communicate with each other so we can all grow, so we can all evolve and do what we're here to do."



### Taurus/Scorpio

The Taurus/Scorpio axis is the axis of sexuality, life and death. We are procreative in Taurus, coming alive, sensual, procreating the species, connecting with our core survival instincts. And in Scorpio our sexuality is oriented toward "What do I desire? What outside of myself am I impelled to connect with in order to actualize, fulfill, and play out whatever evolutionary dynamics I am playing out in this lifetime?" And of course our desires on one level of thinking is what perpetuates incarnation. You have sex, you have a baby, you come back into life to play out this evolutionary journey, which is actually all about death. We are here, we are living, we are needing to live so we can evolve and shed and eliminate gradually all that is not of essence and eternal. The Taurus/Scorpio polarity is of sexuality, life and death, procreative, survival, very biological. And then, "I am drawn to get more deeply into what I am desiring, what is outside of myself that reflects where I am awakening to my inherent power within." And of

course sex yields birth, life. And then you come to life and there is a blossoming. You have to survive. You have to be here. But this whole life, at the core, is about death. You are here to evolve. You are here to gradually eliminate all that is not of eternal essence to who you are. And we have to live here and want to live here in order to do this deeper work of shedding and evolution.



### Gemini/Sagittarius

Gemini/Sagittarius is the axis of the mind. Left brain and right brain. In the Gemini/Sagittarius axis we are learning about reality through the names we give things, through the insight and meaning and greater understanding that we find in all of our life experiences.



### Cancer/Capricorn

Cancer/Capricorn is the axis of the domestic and the societal. It's where you're nurtured and cared for, where you build a sense of security within yourself. And then Capricorn is the structure that you grow up in, your family lineage, your family history, even your family name; that's Capricorn. The things that happen within your family that provide an emotional imprinting which helps you form a sense of self is Cancer. Who you know yourself to be and how you are showing up in the world, your role in society, is Cancer/Capricorn.

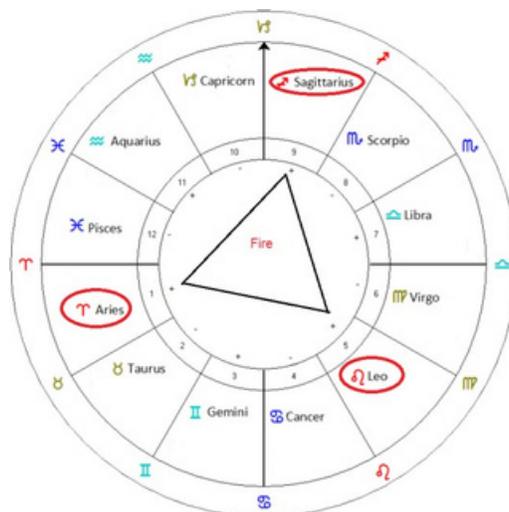


### Leo/Aquarius

And finally, Leo/Aquarius is the axis of self actualization and community/essential nature. We are working to our inherent potential, our unique and creative essence. We also liberate from self concern. It is both “I am in the center” and “We are all orbiting according to the mind of God that has set all of this in motion, the intelligence of creation and the profound beauty of creation itself.”

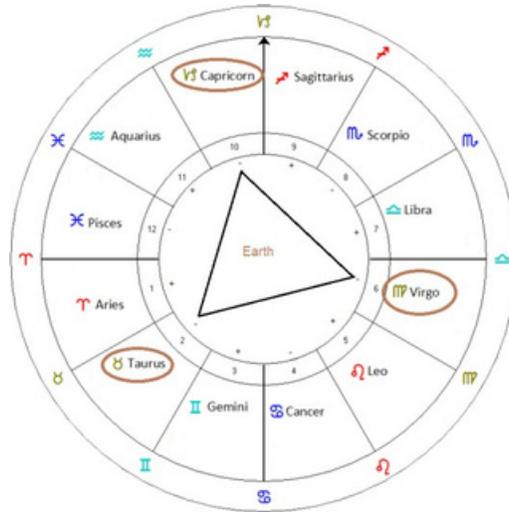
### The Elements

Now let’s speak about the elements. All of the signs within a particular element will have a certain resonance with each other. All of the fire signs share fire, which means there’s going to be a certain “fire quality” to all of the fire signs, a certain challenge, a certain “fire attitude” that is universal to the fire energy, and also certain “fire gifts” and qualities and ways of being that are universal to fire. So all of the elements trine one another. They form a triangle, 120° from one to the next, and when we learn about aspects in our second course we will understand that this is a harmonious energy. So, all of the signs within an element complement each other and also resonate with each other in terms of their shadow tendencies and their gifts. Let’s look at each element on its own.



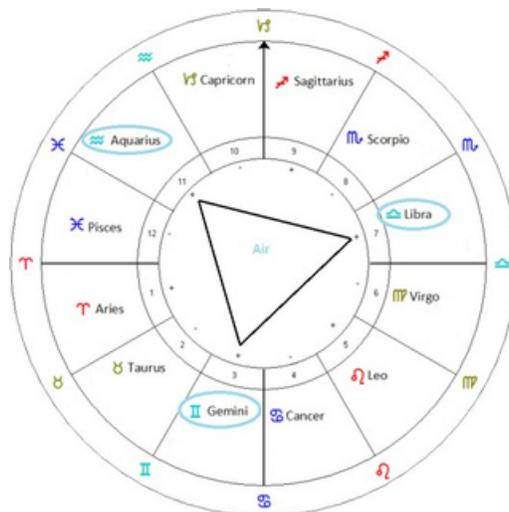
## Element of Fire

Let's start with the fire signs: Aries, Leo, and Sagittarius. All the fire signs have a personal drive. They are self focused. They need freedom. All of them are illuminating and passionate in some way. All of the fire signs can be overly self focused and thus miss out on "other" ("other" being the air polarity, social reality).



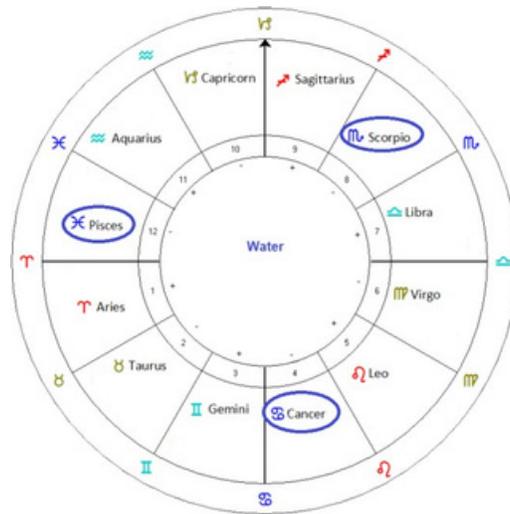
## Element of Earth

Moving to earth: Taurus, Virgo, Capricorn. The earth signs are all stabilizing, practical, grounding. They are more process oriented. They can be materialistically focused, and miss out on the more spiritual non-physical dimension of life, which is the water polarity.



## Element of Air

The air element: Gemini, Libra, and Aquarius. These are all social, relational, connection oriented, and open minded. They can be overly identified with social and mental realms, missing out on passion and a personal sense of purpose which is symbolized by the fire signs.



### Element of Water

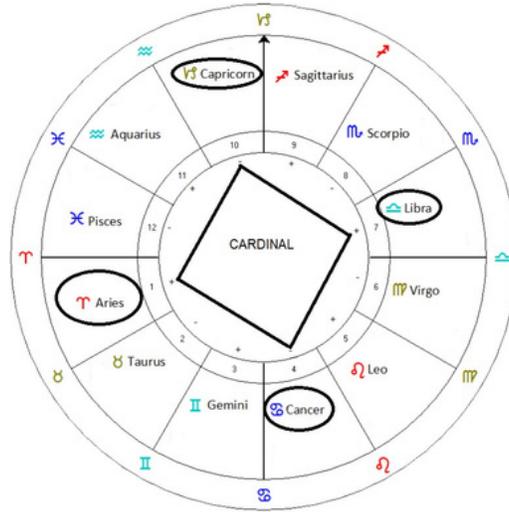
Last, the water element: Cancer, Scorpio, and Pisces. These signs are emotional, the ego, soul, spirit, trinity. They are non-linear and connection oriented. They can become absorbed in the emotional realm and lose touch with the basics of spiritual earthly reality, which is the earth polarity. I should say about the water sign that cancer is self identity/self image, Scorpio is soul, and Pisces is spirit. So one of the teachings in Evolutionary Astrology that Jeff Green often taught about is the Trinity of the water signs: ego, soul, spirit. One final note about the elements. When we look at charts, oftentimes I hear people say "Oh, I don't have any earth in my chart!" Or "I don't have a lot of fire. Does that mean I need to develop more fire?" Or "Does that mean I need to develop more earth?" And the answer is, each person's journey is what it is. We all find balance without soul directive according to whatever that is. So having a predominance of a certain archetype, a certain element, or a lack of it in a chart does not mean we have to develop it. It just might mean we need to come into balance with our soul path for whatever it is. So not having a lot of earth doesn't mean a soul won't be grounded, it means the lessons and the journeys aren't necessarily happening so much through the earth signs. Nevertheless, when we learn about houses, we will learn that there are earth houses. And there are earth planets. So there are many ways in which these elements can become emphasized in the chart even if you don't have a lot of planets in signs of a particular element.

### Modes

Now let's look at the modes. The modes are different from the elements. Unlike the elements, which all share the same essential quality, in the modes (and there are three modes: cardinal, fixed, and mutable) each is composed of four signs and those signs will represent all four of the elements. What happens with the modes is that they give the elements a way of behaving. It's fire behaving a certain way: cardinal fire. Or fire behaving in a fixed way. Or fire behaving in a mutable way.

What happens in the modes is their relationship is actually catalyzing. This is why I often gave examples of the modes when teaching about the 12 signs of the zodiac. You can look at the

relationship between all the signs in a particular mode and see that these signs both challenge one another for growth and integration, and also point out essential life truths that can be harvested and realized through self work. Let's take a look at that with all of the modes right now.



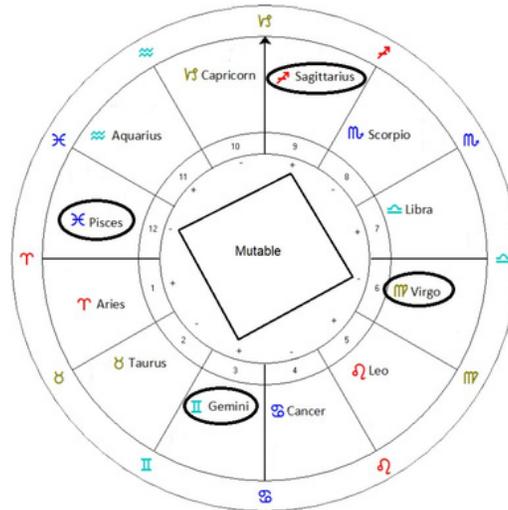
### Cardinal

Cardinal is composed of Aries, Cancer, Libra, and Capricorn. The cardinal signs are related to the essential discovery of the soul through the human experience. They are foundational to all areas of life experience. Initiating purpose and direction: that's Aries, initiating fire. Discovering identity and belonging: Cancer, initiating water. Learning relationship: Libra, initiating air. Finding and developing social rule: Capricorn, initiating earth. The tension between all of the cardinal signs refine and bring mastery and greater self awareness to how one is living here. How to be in balance with all the different aspects of being here in this human experience: inner, outer, home, work. All of those things.



### Fixed

Fixed is composed of Taurus, Leo, Scorpio, and Aquarius. The fixed signs are in the middle of each quadrant. They are all related to the experience of and the consolidation of inner power, self capacity, and one's essential nature. The fixed signs are deepening. They are focusing. They are centralizing. We have in Taurus the stabilization and self-preservation. That's "focusing earth." Then we have creative self actualization in Leo, which is "focusing fire." Concentration on soul purpose is Scorpio, "focusing water." Liberation of the mind and the greater ecosystem of life itself is Aquarius, "focusing air." And all the fixed signs really challenge one another to bring out the mastery of being stable and grounded in one's essential nature.

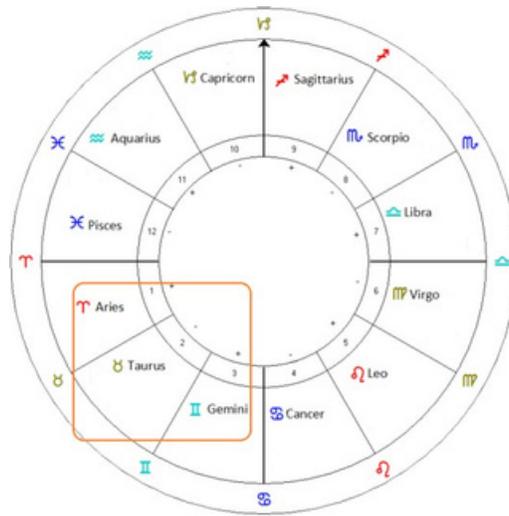


### Mutable

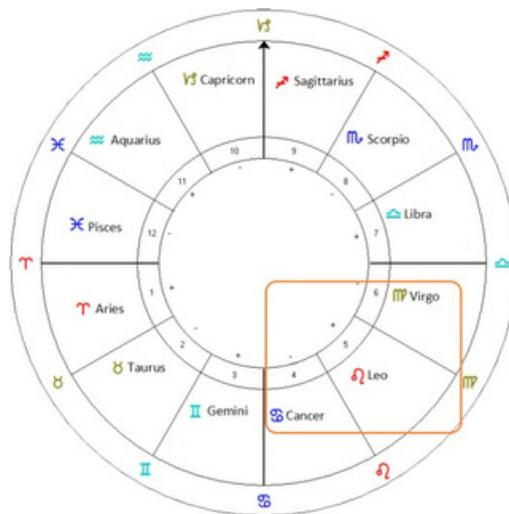
Mutable is composed of Gemini, Virgo, Sagittarius, and Pisces. Mutable is at the end of each quadrant and is related to the universality of human life experience. They are more existential, more multifaceted. They can apply in all kinds of contexts and situations. They are diffusive. They can find themselves everywhere. We have curious and open minded Gemini, which is universal air. (That's the word I would use for mutable: universal, applicable everywhere.) Then we have utility and helpful Virgo, which is universal earth. Expansive and insightful Sagittarius is universal fire. Oriented towards spirit and ultimate truth is Pisces, universal water.

### Quadrants

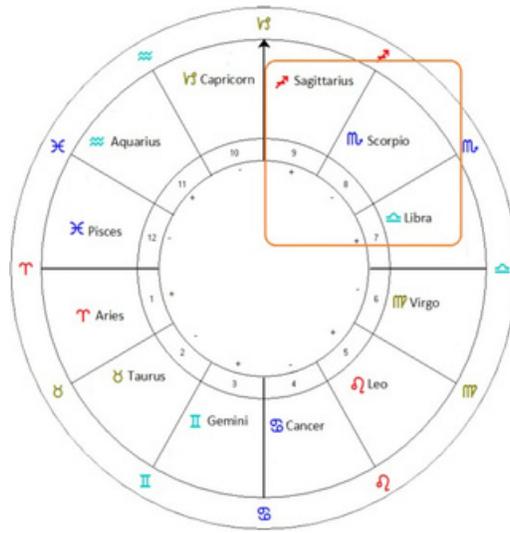
Lastly, I wanted to speak about the quadrants themselves. The quadrants can all be understood as their own grouping; they are their own areas of self development.



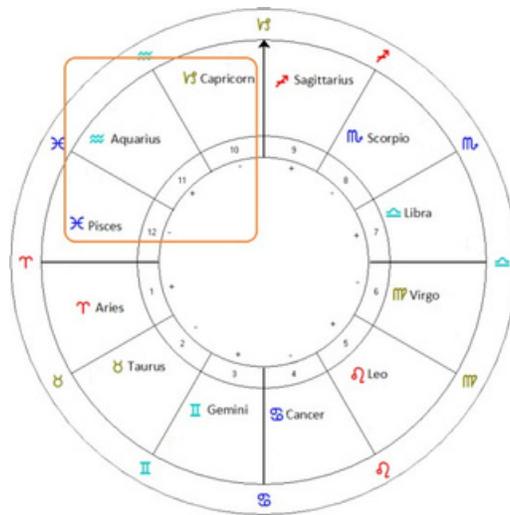
So, the first quadrant is **Aries, Taurus, and Gemini**. And this is about self discovery. It is a very personal, subjective process of learning about one's self: will, survival, study.



When we get to the second quadrant it is about self application: **Cancer, Leo, Virgo**. This is identity, purpose, and self refinements. We are taking all the knowledge we gained in the first quadrant and actually doing something more with it, really learning and being more of who we are. It's a lot more actualized.



In the third quadrant we have **Libra, Scorpio, and Sagittarius**. This is “other” discovery, just like the first quadrant, but now we are in the world of “other.” Libra is about relationships. Scorpio is soul attraction. And then in Sagittarius it’s like the “other of life.” It’s like phenomenal reality. What is this world that we’re living in?



Quadrant four is the social or universal application. We are learning about ourselves in relation to the greater cosmos or society or community within which we live. Capricorn is societal. Aquarius is community. And then the 12th house Pisces is existence itself.

Okay everyone. This completes our teachings on the 12 signs of the zodiac. And this complete segment two.

# Heart & Soul Centered Astrology



## *The Essentials Course*

Segment 4:  
Introduction to the Houses

***Transcriptions***

## Segment 4: Introduction to the Houses

Hello everyone. Welcome to segment four. This is the first time in this course that we are approaching chart interpretation. We can think of this segment as having arrived at the foot of the mountain of chart interpretation.

### **House/Sign Relationship**

In this segment we are going to be working with houses, which means we are working with signs and houses because there is always a sign in a house. You can say it also as signs have to be somewhere, and houses always need to be occupied. In the same way that, when you think about the ecliptic (the path where all the planetary activity happens) from the perspective of where you are on the earth, the ecliptic is always somewhere. Every part of the ecliptic plane falls somewhere in the sphere of your local horizon or below the horizon. Thus, we can say that the 12 signs of the zodiac are always manifesting somewhere within our local experience. Signs and houses inherently go together in the same way that sitting down and chairs or floors go together. So, when we look at houses, we're going to be synthesizing two different things. This means we are going to have to differentiate "What are signs?" and "What are houses?" Up until this point we learned about the signs. We've studied the signs as the 12 archetypes. I have often mentioned that you can also see these signs as manifesting archetypally as planets or houses. Signs are not the same as houses, but they share the same archetypal resonance. What we'll do in this segment is go through each house and describe its association with its correlate sign (Aries corresponds to the 1st House. Taurus corresponds to the 2nd House. Etc.) Then we'll spend most of our time looking at examples. The only way to really begin to understand and have a feel, a sense of synthesis bringing signs and houses together is to look at it a lot. There's no way of just describing conceptually, "houses mean *this*, signs mean *this*," that we will be able to look at a chart and know how to put it together. It's necessary that we give ourselves a lot of experience, continual exposure, and practice. So, in this segment we are going to be doing a lot of practice.

### **Important Considerations**

Now, there are a couple of important points that I would like everyone to understand. We cannot look at a house/sign combination and say "Oh, this is what it means specifically, definitively, always." We must always remember that the chart is reflective of the soul-reality. Thus, what it reflects can be profoundly diverse. It is multi-faceted. It can manifest on various levels of consciousness. And it can speak to a whole plethora of dynamics. So we're going to be tuning in to the archetypal energetics (i.e. Gemini in the 2nd House). We are going to be tuning in to what the energies are and what possible challenges there might be, as well as what the possible awakened expressions are, in essence how a soul is orienting to life experience. But we must understand that we can't make it a "one size fits all" kind of thing. It's something we must be very sensitive to when we look at charts. So, at this stage of the game we are not saying "This is what it means." We are really cultivating our interpretive muscle, learning how to read archetypes together and to feel into a very full grasp/conception of all the ways in which it can possibly manifest. The point is that we are training our minds. And so, with that, let's get started.

### **What is a House?**

What I want to do first is define a house. And to define a house we need to also define a sign. We can think of signs specifically as domains of consciousness. Each sign has its own evolutionary intention. You can think of a sign as a style. It's a particular way of being that implies a particular path of self-realization. The archetypal energy of each sign is what it is. So, the evolutionary intention of Aries is to become, to initiate, to orient towards a personal sense of purpose and direction; and that implies an entire way of being that will have its own learning experience, its own process. You take this Aries style, its way of being, this domain of consciousness, and you have to put it somewhere. Where is this energy of Aries manifesting? Where are these Aries lessons happening?

Houses are areas of life experience. It's very tangible. In the same way that the ecliptic is manifesting somewhere, it is locational. And in the same way that we understand the ascendant is the "East-ish" point, we begin to appreciate that direction and spatial realities have a certain archetypal meaning. In cultures all around the world the east point is understood as beginnings, initiation. That's why, as we will learn, the 1st House naturally corresponds to Aries.

Houses, being areas of life experience, naturally reflect this idea that spatial reality has a certain energetic signature to it. So, all the signs, all the styles, all the domains of consciousness are manifesting in a particular area of life experience, in a particular house.

Each house is multi-faceted; it's the place, it's the where, it's the how, it's the life experiences that are happening here on this human journey. And so, you can think of the sign on the house as a style manifesting in a particular area. If you take Aries, let's put Aries in the 3rd House. The 3rd House is associated/connected with the Gemini archetype. And the evolutionary intention of Gemini is to grow and expand one's logical understanding, and to communicate and develop the capacity for hearing, gathering information, sharing it, and communicating it. The 3rd House is the area of life experience that corresponds to learning, communicating, exchanging. If you want to give it as an analogy, Aries in the 3rd House would be a warrior in the library. So, you're bringing that Aries energy into an area of Gemini experience. We are going to have a soul that's going to be very quick (Aries) in their thinking (3rd House). They are going to be doing a lot of research or thinking and wanting to gather a lot of information; or, they'll want to have a lot of mental independence. Independence is Aries. Mental, of the mind, how they're learning, how they're communicating, how they're orienting to the educational journey is the 3rd house.

When we begin to combine signs and houses, it's really a matter of allowing the energy of the sign to infuse into the area of life experience of the house. And we will get a feel for this the more we look at examples. There's no other way to really grasp this other than having a real experience. In particular, when we begin to look at planets and houses and signs together, it will really begin to crystallize more for us.

### **Many Ways to Get to the Same Place**

One more very important introductory point to speak to you is that, when we are working with signs and houses, we are combining archetypes with each other. And there are two ways to do that. In fact, when we bring planets in there will be more than two ways to do that. So, let me give you an example. We spoke about Aries in the 3rd House. Aries in the 3rd House is a combination of Gemini and Aries. What is another way to do that? Gemini in the 1st House. The

1st House is associated with Aries. Now, Gemini in the 1st House is different from Aries in the 3rd House, but they're similar. In fact they can look very much the same, feel the same, and be expressed in very similar ways. But they are different. The 1st House corresponds to how we are instinctively initiating life experience and choice on a moment to moment basis to move forward our evolutionary journey. So, here, that is going to happen in a Gemini way. There's going to be a need to gather information, to learn, to understand. When you put the pieces together, it's very similar to Aries in the 3rd House, but the difference is that here it's an Aries style (instinctive, raw, initiatory) in the area of life experience that corresponds to learning and communication and building our conceptual framework of reality. It's not really practical at this stage to highlight the specific differences in terms of what it actually looks like because, as you can see, they both pretty much look the same. Both can be freelance writers. Both can act and express and think and communicate in very similar ways. When we begin putting planets in charts and we begin really synthesizing the whole chart with itself, we will start to understand and feel the practical difference between the signatures.

At this stage of the game, what's most important is that we recognize that these archetypes can be combined into ways. And we practice it and understand that Aries in the 3rd House is different from Gemini in the first. And we stick with the formula. We stick with a sign infusing itself into a house: a style, a particular evolutionary intention manifesting in an area of life experience. Sticking with that, we will be able to build a really solid foundation that will bring an increase in understanding and the capacity for intuitive synthesis and insight.

## Meaning of the 12 Houses 1-6

### Signs and Houses Need Each Other

Hello everyone. In this lesson we are going to learn the meaning of the houses. The way we are going to do this is not just by speaking generically to the nature of the houses, but by speaking to the nature of the houses by way of putting signs on them. This way we'll actually begin to learn about the houses through something that's practical. We've already learned the archetypes, so we can speak about the 1st House and what it represents archetypically. But to really get this area of life experience we'll want to feel what it's like to put a sign there. Because, once again, all of the houses have signs on them, and all of the signs manifest along the houses. You really can't separate the two. So, from this point on, our learning will be about integrating signs and houses.

### Preliminary Considerations

One thing we need to be attuned to when we begin to interpret signs and houses is that we can look at this in two ways. We can think of every house/sign combination as descriptive. This is a description of what it's like, these are its characteristics. Or, we can speak of it more in evolutionary terms. In actuality, while we can offer some descriptive qualities to a house/sign combination, we really can't apply that universally to every single human being. So, anything that's descriptive here is just for us to get a sense and a feel for its basic characteristics. What we are really doing in this course is looking at everything from an evolutionary perspective. What that means is that we recognize that each sign/house combination is a particular evolutionary orientation. There is a process of learning and growth implied in that. When we begin to put the planets in there, and begin to understand the nature of the soul's journey, we will understand that everything in the chart reflects an ongoing evolutionary journey. So we can't actually be descriptive in finite terms. We can point out certain qualities and tendencies, but when we work with an actual soul we need to be attuned to "How does this signature reflect the reality of the soul?" Again, there's not one size fits all here. So, as we look through the houses we are going to tune in to:

- What are some of the general and likely characteristics?
- What are some strengths in those signatures?
- What are some potential challenges?

And I will say one more thing. When we begin to work with planets, and this thing called planetary rulership and aspects, we will really see how complex it is, that you look at a house/sign combination and there is a multi-faceted breadth of expression in each signature. So, this is just to get a feel, and a way of training the mind to have a connection with bringing signs and houses together, and to allow us to get more used to looking at the chart in that way.

Lastly, as I'm teaching, I'm going to have a chart that depicts all the natural house/sign correlations. So, even though any sign can be on any house, to help us remember the archetypal association of the houses, we are going to have a chart that says "Aries is 1st House. Taurus is 2nd House. Gemini is 3rd House." Etc. Again, the signs can be anywhere. This is just so that we remember the archetypal meeting. So when I speak about the 4th House we have in our mind "Oh yeah! This is connected to the Cancer archetype." All right, let's jump in.



On the other hand, Sagittarius in the 1st House can be a soul that is profoundly intuitive and strong and self-willed. They ask the deeper questions of life and will find the answers themselves. This is self-referential. "I'm going to go out and figure it out and do it alone." There can be a lot of courage and a great capacity to go places one has never gone. In the 1st House, as per the Aries archetype, there is a need to push one's psychological, physical, and emotional limits. We are passing that edge where we've never been before so that we can grow into more experience of ourselves. This can be with that crisis of the Aries archetype where there is the need to push oneself to stay in constant motion. There can be a profound degree of restlessness (Sag in the 1st House), needing to move all the time, needing to stay in constant motion. At the same time, there could be a profound degree of courage and self-leadership in taking risks, taking leaps of faith, trying things, going places, trusting one's intuition, even if it's scary, even if you know that once you make that choice there is no going back.

### **Capricorn in the 2nd House**

Let's look at Capricorn in the 2nd House now. The 2nd House is associated with the Taurus archetype, and the intention within the 2nd House is to stabilize. What is happening in the 2nd House is the soul is grounding into its earthly experience. So the signs on the 2nd House and activity happening in the 2nd House corresponds to how the soul is establishing its values and relating to the physical reality of being here and needing to survive. Thus, there's a strong hermit quality in the 2nd House. This is where the soul is refining a very internal and deep sense of who it knows itself to be. There is consolidation happening in the 2nd House. It will want to be alone or have a very deep and intimate relationship to what provides a sense of security and grounding.

So, what do you think Capricorn in the 2nd House is all about? This would be a soul who really values stability, consistency, building a structural reality over a slow period of time that is stable and reliable. The energy of Capricorn is to cultivate one's authority. These are two earth signs, so there's a very earthy quality here. This can speak to financial stability, building a framework, a structural reality that provides clear security. And anything in the second house wants consistency; that's a basic 2nd House/Taurus need. Consistency, tenacity, we can deepen into it.

And Capricorn wants to work. It wants to be functional. It wants to last. This is also where the soul is learning how to discipline the relationship to its physical reality. This can be expressed in two ways. There can be the necessary journey of Capricorn: discipline, bringing self-awareness, self authority, and the journey that happens over time as we allow ourselves to fail, to grow, and to learn in the 2nd House realm of survival, finances, and having the basic needs met. So, not just spending frivolously, not just acting on a whim to meet one's self interest or to satisfy basic sensual needs. Capricorn wants us to mature our sensual relationship.

On the other hand, Capricorn can correspond to where there's a lot of conditioning, judgment, and social constructs. So the issue here can be a repression of one's feeling body, the values that one has inherited that can keep the soul from really feeling and enjoying one's life. "If I have a certain amount of money then I'll feel good about myself, I'll feel a certain sense of value and self-esteem." This value is in a certain physical expression of materiality that actually isn't coming from a genuine internally self-respecting, self-knowledgeable place of personal value and connection. "I have a beautiful tea collection and it's on my shelf. And this tea

collection is of the finest teas, and they were handcrafted and picked on the first day of spring.” But it might just be of superficial value. Do you really enjoy this tea? Do you connect with it? Does it have personal meaning for you? Or is it something you learned, something you’ve adopted, something you’ve established as a status symbol? Is this something that you were associating as valuable? There’s often this journey with Capricorn in the 2nd House of really establishing a clear relationship to one’s physical reality, to how one is living, rooted in self-authority and an earned, cultivated self-knowledge.

Let’s look at the polarity to that. Cancer in the 8th House is the polarity. So, a lesson for Capricorn in the 2nd House is to share and have more emotional fluidity. Cancer in the 8th House is all about intimacy and connection and sharing energy and depending on one another. There could be a profoundly strong self-reliance in Capricorn in the 2nd House, a very strong materialism and a very strong need to do everything oneself, which can actually have a lot of fear and repression and a need to isolate and control. So, Cancer in the 8th House says “Let go of your resources, share them, make sure they’re actually nurturing and that they’re bringing nourishment into your life and to the lives of others.”

### **Aquarius in the 3rd House**

The 3rd House is how we are orienting to the entire learning journey. Signs in the 3rd House and any activity in the 3rd House corresponds to the way in which the soul is learning about it’s reality, gathering more data and information, and putting the pieces together. It thus corresponds to the kind of information [we gather] and how we are going to be approaching this information. Whatever is in the 3rd House will really indicate the way in which the whole educational process is happening, and how we are going to be communicating about what we’ve come to learn and what we know. Now, this is air on air. Aquarius is combined with the Gemini archetype. Aquarius is about liberation. It’s about freedom from context, freedom from the known. Here, we can say, on one level, that the soul is liberating its mind from established associations, freeing up the stronghold of its logical connections so it can see things as they are and apprehend a higher view of reality, so that associations and connections can be made from a bird’s eye view. There’s a much more holistic, all encompassing system orientation of thought that’s being applied in the third house. Naturally, this soul will be interested in things that are scientific in their very nature, where there can be an objectivity in looking at things as an outsider. There can be an interest in studying things like astrology or studying any field of knowledge that brings the mind to a more objective, holistically-minded way of seeing that sees an entire system, that is looking at reality from the point of view of seeing how it all works. This can be mapping out constellations (stars – Aquarius, mapping out – 3rd House). And so, what’s happening in the 3rd House is we’re building a context for reality through observation. It’s kind of like looking through a telescope and seeing things and then saying “Okay, what I’m seeing is this. And what I’m seeing is this. And here’s how they connect.” We are gathering data the way a scientist would gather information through observation.

The challenge here can be total dissociation, living a life where it’s almost like you were reading an encyclopedia. You’re just looking at everything as an objective fact, so communication and being able to express yourself can be difficult because the mind might be in a very elevated state of being. There can also be trauma and mental dissociation that happens by way of communicating and saying things that others don’t understand or regard as unacceptable. This can be an example of a soul that is speaking of things that don’t fit into the mental constructs of

the minds of other people. Thus, they feel alienated from the group of people or, in this case, Aquarius in the 3rd House, it can be alienation from school. You're asking questions that the teacher says "Oh, you can't ask those questions," or they don't make any sense, or you can't resonate with the intelligence of the other students that you're learning with. This can lead to a strong sense of isolation. There can also be the sense of uncovering data that (Aquarius) is outside of the mainstream narrative or way of thinking about life. This can be an alternative (Aquarius) media. So, the mainstream media has a certain narrative. It's getting facts. It's giving information. Aquarius in the 3rd House can say "There's more to look at. There's more information out there. Let's look at these communities of people, let's look at this experience, from a broader point of view not conditioned by particular existing biases." There can also be a particular orientation to schools of thought and ways of thinking that are, perhaps, very elitist in their nature, that have a special way of understanding, like a community of people that sees everything through the lens of a particular astrological view. They're speaking to each other and sharing a particular context of language, but you have to join the club to be able to get that.

Now, let's contrast that with Leo in the 9th House. Leo in the 9th House is expressive and creative. It wants what is beautiful and playful to be seen and shared. It's very much in the heart. It's intuitive and spontaneous. So, where there can be an overly over-emphasized intellectual objective, scientific, perhaps removed or detached or disconnected energy in Aquarius in the 3rd House, Leo in the 9th House says "Share your truth! Share your understanding! Share your insights! Make the essence known and visible!" Also, Aquarius in the 3rd House can easily get stuck in paranoid ways of thinking that logically makes sense, but can be coming entirely from a trauma state. The issue in the 3rd House is that we can try to make conclusions based on logic alone. It could be some kind of conspiracy idea, concepts about reality that logically meet (because anything can make sense logically) but might be very disconnected from actual reality. And that's another piece where (Leo in the 9th House) direct experience, intuition, might be a lesson for Aquarius in the 3rd House.

Now, as I'm speaking about these sign/house combinations and I'm giving examples of polarity, remember it's not about each sign/house becoming the other. But, polarity offers a constant opportunity, an invitation for deeper integration. So, if you ever have difficulty understanding how a particular signature works, just try looking at the polarity, try feeling the polarity, and see if it opens the mind to a clearer path of association and understanding.

### **Pisces in the 4th House**

Now let's look at Pisces in the 4th House. The 4th House corresponds to Cancer. The 4th House is where we are nurturing, nourishing, and finding nourishment. It's our early emotional imprinting. It's where we have the energetic experience of coming home. So, signs and activities in the 4th House correspond to the way in which and how the soul is connecting with the root, the foundation of its human self in this earth experience. It's where the soul is going to come home to, and how it's going to be creating a sense of continuity and security and safety. It's also going to imply early life emotional imprinting that is foundational to the soul's sense of itself, in its own self-image, and how it feels secure and whole and safe within its own self. And it's a big part of how the soul is going to emotionally integrate information and come to know itself along its path.

Pisces in the 4th House: again, we are combining two archetypes of the same element. Pisces is water and Cancer/4th House is water. Pisces is about surrender, disillusionment, orientation to ultimate meaning. Here, the soul is trying to find home everywhere with everyone. There can be a universalized sense of family. "Everyone is my brother and sister. Family is everywhere," unconditional love. Whereas the 4th House is a very intimate, personal, and subjective experience of home, Pisces itself is universal. So, it is home that is universally true and everywhere. This soul is most likely developing a very empathic, collective, universalized understanding that all beings need empathy and care. And, as per Pisces, there can be an orientation to showing up in the world in a way that nourishes the masses, indiscriminate of who you are and where you come from. It's like the nourishment that is universal for everyone, learning to be an extension, a vessel, of the universal nourishment that gives freely to all beings. In the same way, Pisces in the 4th House can correspond to a sense of feeling lost. "Who am I? Where is home? Where is mother? Where is safety? Where is security?" Very practically, Pisces in the 4th House can sometimes correspond to a distant mother who wasn't there (Pisces—hidden). You can't access the relative dimension. And so, there can be escapism or spiritual bypassing, going to the absolute realm of unity and connection, but actually underneath all that is a deep sense of "lostness," not really knowing who one is. There's a journey of forgiveness with Pisces in the 4th House, so that a soul can truly come to understand and realize that there is a fundamental truth to the need for care and nourishment in every aspect of one's life. Oftentimes, as per the 4th House and the Cancer archetype, there is a need to go back in order to go forward. Connecting with where there was neglect. Anything Pisces can be atrophication. What isn't exercised becomes atrophied. So, there can be a learning of "Oh! I have a body! I need to rest. I need to care for myself." There could be this coming back into the emotional body, landing in this human experience and learning to feed oneself, learning to take care of one's own human emotional needs.

Now, let's contrast this with Virgo in the 10th House. Virgo in the 10th House is very practical. It's the work that one is doing in life. It's generally going to be multifaceted. There's a sense of being engaged in time and space, structure and society, with a thing to do; it's functional. Whereas Pisces in the 4th House can be diffuse "Yeah, my bed is wherever. Home is everywhere." And it can lack a sense of boundaries, not really taking care of itself, or even overgiving and creating a martyrdom situation. Or, in the situation of family, there could be a sense of one neglecting one's own family due to not paying attention to the details (Virgo polarity). We can also have, with Pisces in the 4th House, a practical expression of living near water. What does that represent? Your home, where you feel safe, is by the water, or by the ocean (Pisces: universal). You can drop into a greater space of universal truth, something that's much greater than you, and learn to merge your own sense of self with that.

### **Aries in the 5th House**

The 5th House corresponds to Leo. So once again, we are combining fire with fire. We can expect that this will have a very strong exuberance. The 5th House corresponds to the areas of life experience where we are self-actualizing. Signs and activity in the 5th House will reflect the way in which we are expressing our own unique being. It can correspond to our children, our own creative projects (that which we are actualizing), how we are going to connect with the joy and the romance and the play and the beauty of life. It can, itself, represent what is being seen, what is being expressed and shared externally, what we are putting out there in the world. Thus, in the 5th House, this is the way in which we are going to orient to connecting with a

healthy sense of self-centeredness. With Aries in the 5th House you [can] imagine there is a great potential to be highly narcissistic. “It’s all about *me* doing what *I* want to do, *my* self importance, *me* winning.” This will be a very competitive signature. It’s very common that this kind of signature would be interested in competitive sports (Aries – activity, 5th House – being seen, being special). The Aries energy to want to come first and to win can be very heightened in the 5th House. At the same time, we can have, in this signature, a soul that’s forging a path of self-leadership and potential through being courageous and generous with their heart. They’re going to do something new. They’re not going to be afraid to be seen. They are going to step forward and show themselves. And this will make them stand out, which can be a profoundly vulnerable thing. That Aries anxiety of “I’m doing this. I am making this choice. I’m jumping in” met with that 5th House sense of “I’m very aware of existing. I’m very aware of being seen right now.” This can represent a profoundly courageous heart, filled with a courage and bravery that can inspire other people through the sheer willingness to be seen and step forward in life.

Let’s contrast that with Libra in the 11th House. Libra in the 11th House is totally objective. It’s about community, relationship, all of us getting along and harmonizing together. And so, Aries on the 5th House can learn from Libra on the 11th. “It’s not just about *me*, it’s also important that we are *all* being accounted for.” This harmonizes with the greater needs of the community. “And I’m listening to the feedback of other people.” Otherwise, Aries in the 5th can just be doing what one wants to do. It’s almost like a child saying “Hey, look at me! Look at me!”, and isn’t really aware of what other people are needing or where other people are at.

### **Taurus in the 6th House**

Now let’s look at Taurus in the 6th House. The 6th House corresponds to Virgo. So again, we have earth on earth. The 6th House corresponds to areas of self-improvement. Whatever activity is happening in the 6th House is the area of life where we are working on ourselves, refining, cultivating self-accuracy and attention to detail. Thus, there’s a quality of learning humility, and the capacity to show up and do one’s work. Gradually, over time, they can cultivate some true mastery.

Taurus in the 6th House corresponds to, as per Taurus, which is about stability, grounding, and continuity (this is actually one of the most practically oriented combinations in the chart that I can think of), the need here is to be working on projects that relate to what is functional and necessary for one’s survival. An example of this combination would be working in a garden, tending to the details of a garden, or, metaphorically, whatever represents a garden for one’s self that provides sustenance and the basic resources necessary for one’s life.

We can say the soul is improving its self-value, its self-esteem, its capacity to take care and tend to the very physical and practical reality of its life. The challenge here is that there can be a very fixed focus on what it knows how to do, what it has determined that it needs, the values that it has identified. It’s where the soul gets stuck in this very narrow world of fixation on detail, which can become its own way of being overly materially focused on getting it perfect, on becoming overly fixated on the resources that the soul has established and decided that it needs. There can be a lot of control issues, not really knowing how to let go of control, or needing to fix and do everything one’s self because “These are *my* values, *my* life, and *I* know how to do it better.”

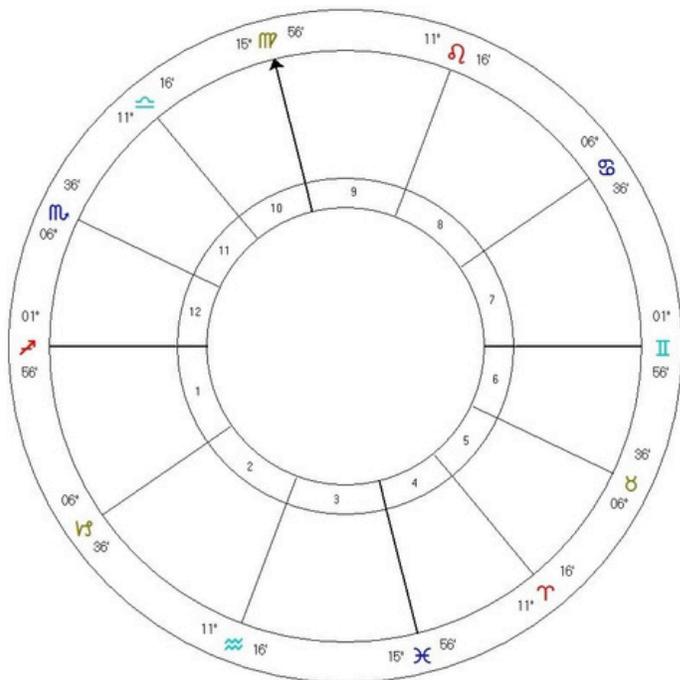
So, this intense physical focus with Taurus in the 6th House can learn from Scorpio in the 12th house, which is one of the most non-physical, diffusive combinations of energies that I can find in a chart. Scorpio corresponds to the desire energy of the soul, in the 12th House (which is a Pisces house) is diffusive, letting go, dissolving into timelessness, the Source of all souls, disillusionment in the sense of self.

There can be profound gifts. Taurus in the 6th House can be very skillful, tactile. In the 6th House you are becoming profoundly skillful, and with Taurus you're sticking with it, building a very deep and intimate relationship. There can be a lot of skillfulness and capacity here. But then, in Scorpio in the 12th House, there's no body, there's no self. There's just this letting go into what is so much more powerful and beyond what you consciously know. So, there's a lesson in letting go of control. Otherwise, Taurus in the 6th House can also be profoundly reliable, practical, and really handy.

All right. Let's stop this video here and do the next six houses in the next video.

## Meaning of the Houses 7-12

Welcome to Part 2. Here we are looking at Houses 7 - 12. And this is above the horizon, so these houses are now in the seeing realm. And so, they're all inherently, in some way, connected to a more social reality.



### Gemini in the 7th House

Gemini is air. The 7th House corresponds to Libra, so we are looking at air upon air. The 7th House corresponds to all the ways the soul is learning through the journey of relationship. The signs and activities that are happening in the 7th House speak to the ways in which we are going to be orienting relationship, the lessons and experiences we are going to be attracting in our relationships. And it's really going to speak to the unique way in which we are learning about balance and giving. And, as per all things 7th House and Libra, we will tend to go to extremes along that learning journey. So, Gemini in the 7th House speaks to, on the one hand, a very social tendency, the capacity to adopt many different points of view and perspectives. And the 7th House really speaks to personal needs. We all have our different needs. We are all walking our own path, and there's a lot of open-mindedness here.

The challenge with Gemini in the 7th House would be so much adaptability that there can be a speaking and a communicating and a gesturing in a way that communicates some sense of being pleasing or acceptable to other people, but it's not entirely sincere or authentic. There can be so much attunement, and even mental vigilance, to adapting to the social climate of other people's needs. While the Sagittarius in the 1st polarity is "Live your truth. Walk your path. Don't worry about fitting in or being understood." Sag/1st is just very much "I'm just doing my thing."

One challenge with Gemini in the 7th House could be social (7th House) burn out, always communicating, always engaging in conversation, always having something to say in response.

And so, there can be a challenge around listening. On the other hand, the listening can be very acute, really being able to hear what's being spoken and to have a very open mind to grasp it. But, if the mind is jumping from one point to the next, and there isn't a genuine interest in intimacy and connection, then Gemini in the 7th House could use relationships as a sounding board for one's own thoughts.

### **Cancer in the 8th House**

The 8th House corresponds to Scorpio. We're looking at two water archetypes now. The 8th House corresponds to experiences in life where we are facing the deepest psychological limitations. Whatever is happening in the 8th House is the path and the way in which we are evolving and accessing a greater psychological self-awareness. Signs on the 8th House, activity in the 8th House, speak to where we are going to be deeply attracted and drawn into experience to play it out, and to learn more about ourselves, and then to move on from experience. So here, Cancer on the 8th House speaks to a very deep emotional reality. We're going to generally see a soul that has deep emotional needs. On the one hand, this can be a capacity to go into very deep places and (Cancer) hold a nurturing space, caring, tending for oneself or for others in the deep process. This is like being a midwife for the soul, tending to the evolutionary journey of the soul moving through its own evolutionary process, and the capacity to go into the depths.

On the other hand, this can also reflect a psychological state of profound vulnerability where the soul feels abandoned, betrayed, unsupported, uncared for. There can be a permeating psychological sense of lack and loss relative to one's core sense of emotional needs and care. So, the journey with Cancer in the 8th House is actually getting to the root of one's own sense of self, taking full responsibility for one's core emotional human needs, taking full responsibility for one's emotions, and not giving one's power away, or not displacing it on the outside, but also having the right kinds of relationships that will allow for a true transmutation, a true growth experience. So, there can be a lot of caring and sharing and deep bonds, deep commitment, deep connection, but also the soul coming back to itself. And this is symbolized by Capricorn in the 2nd House, "Me, where I am with my stuff, and the thing that I am doing," very practical, very self-contained, very self-reliant. So, the soul here might have to learn to stay centered and grounded in their own healthy, sovereign sense of self.

### **Leo in the 9th House**

Here we have Leo in the 9th House. The 9th House is Sagittarius, so it's fire on fire. The 9th House corresponds to the nature of our spiritual journey. It's the path of our expansion and growth. You can think of the signs and activities in the 9th House as describing the nature of our personal pilgrimage. Where is the journey of expansion and endless growth happening on our soul journey? Leo in the 9th House says, "Your journey of expansion and growth and greater self-realization is through your own creative self-actualization." There's going to be a strong need to express one's truth, to really expand and uncover a greater capacity to understand one's own creative and unique essence. This can easily be expressed as a teacher that's expressive and awakening and engaging and creative. This can also be expressed as walking a spiritual path that connects the soul to their own creative essence, spiritual performance, different ways of connecting with life and joy and creativity as a path of expansion and growth: being an author, speaking one's truth, public speaking. There's a very motivational, inspirational "I see you" (Leo), really encouraging (Leo: encouragement), being able to Champion other

people. And the honesty of the 9th House here is not putting on a show, not trying to be something you're not.

Now, of course the challenge here will be putting on a show, exaggerating. "*I am SO special.*" Or "*My truth, my understanding is the most important one. I have all the answers.*" A very strong narcissistic "*My way is the way*" and "*Look at me, I'm so beautiful. Adore me, trust me, believe me*" kind of dynamic. So, there can be a lot of inspiration and wisdom and generosity, but also a lot of self-focus and limitation relative to one's overfocus on their own way, their own specialness, their own understanding.

And so, Aquarius/3rd House is objectivity. It's not about you and your beliefs and your understanding and how important and special you are. This is seeing everything as an observer and gathering the facts. Otherwise, there can be an exaggeration, everything being really big and significant to the point where it's no longer honest. So, Aquarius in the 3rd is about giving attention to the facts and seeing things as an observer, like looking through the telescope. There isn't a lot of personality in it. With that, the Leo in the 9th is able to be creatively expressive without overly pointing to themselves.

**Virgo in the 10th House** Now let's look at Virgo in the 10th House. The 10th House is also a Capricorn archetype, so this is earth on earth. The 10th House corresponds to where the soul is learning alignment. Planets and activity in the 10th House speak to the way in which the soul is coming into self authority in their life, and this is a maturation process. The 10th House can speak to our early conditioning, the rules, the structural reality, the parental environment that we grew up with. And it speaks to how we are gradually maturing into greater self-responsibility. This doesn't necessarily mean career or the work we're doing, but it often does. It can often speak to the work we're doing in the world. More broadly, it speaks to how we are participating in society here on this earth, in the world that we're living in, incorporating and including and becoming aligned with the structural realities that are necessary for our lives to function, and to interact with the greater whole of our lives, and why we're here. So consciousness becomes very self-focused, self-aware, and introspective of the 'right way', how to live in a way that is in alignment with living a good and integrated life.

There's a lot of awareness and responsibility in the 10th House as well. With Virgo in the 10th House, the journey of cultivation, the 'discipline-ship' in the 10th House here is their service. This can express as a soul that is working on improving the government, the rules, the laws, the legislation, something that allows for more of the structural reality that is 'better', that can be improved upon. So, this can completely be political. This can be a person that's in any kind of service world where they're cultivating many different tools, many different skills. And there can be a lot of 'busy-ness', like there's always something to do. The 10th House is attuned to what's 'right'. You can't neglect your responsibilities. If you're a parent, you can't neglect your responsibilities. If you're a boss, you can't neglect your responsibilities. If you're an employer or an employee, everyone has their responsibilities, and there are consequences to neglecting them. So there's a hyper-awareness within Virgo here to show up for it. Now, this can easily express as a soul that's in a subservient situation, doing work in the world where it feels like "I'm being weighed down by 'The Man'. I have to work these tedious tasks

and do all these things that are hard and laborious.” (Virgo— lots of tedious work. 10th House—backbreaking. The spine corresponds to 10th House Capricorn.) And so, there can be a situation of being in an inferior state as dictated by one’s status in society. And this can easily lead to a psychology of inferiority and needing to work really hard, but feeling very inadequate within oneself.

This can also be a situation where the soul’s learning humility. You have to deal with what you’ve got to deal with; you can’t neglect things. It creates a situation of crisis, where then (10th House) the structural reality falls apart entirely. So, there often is a learning of showing up and being responsible, attending to what needs to be tended to. This signature can really hold this energy of “busy-ness”; there’s always something to do. Here, you’re really linking the Virgo guilt with the 10th House shame. The 10th House shame would be a sense of “I’m wrong” or “I’m bad”, linked with artificial values. So, “I woke up late one day and got to work late, and I feel shame about that.” Virgo is, you partied all night and you didn’t set your alarm and you neglected necessary details; you weren’t adequately responsible. And still, there can be a lot of cleaning up one’s act and healing/correcting oneself. But the shame can actually, in this case, really result in a lot of denial, creating a situation where the soul is perpetually behind in time, behind in space, not quite coming into alignment. There can also be a therapeutic process here, with Virgo in the 10th, of really addressing where the soul has lessons to learn, facing an inner sense of guilt or inadequacy so they can heal.

Now, compare this with Pisces in the 4th House. You’re going to stay in bed. You’re just going to dissolve and merge with the bed. Pisces in the 4th House really offers this possibility of forgiveness, of restfulness. Whereas, with Virgo in the 10th there can be a strong sense of always doing, and needing to do more, and needing to do better, always struggling with time and where you’ve got to go and what’s happening on the clock. Pisces in the 4th House invites a connection to this wide open space of emotion where there’s a lot of permission, there’s peace. There’s an invitation to rest in an inherent sense of wholeness and “okay-ness,” where everything is allowed. There can be space for one’s emotions.

**Libra in the 11th House** The 11th House is associated with Aquarius, so this is air on air. Signs and planets in the 11th House correspond to both where we are coming into resonance with community, and where we’re learning about ourselves by ultimately liberating ourselves from the known context of reality. And thus, there can be this experience of feeling very different from the community, just as much as finding our friends or our people that we deeply resonate with. Whatever’s happening in the 11th House is what we’re liberating from. So, with Libra in the 11th House, you can say we are liberating from the construct of relationship. There’s a fundamental orientation here to objective listening. The journey of intimacy and sharing and listening and learning about one another through the realm of the 11th House recognizes “We’re all here as one giant community. Fundamentally we are all friends, whatever the relationship is.” Friendship in the 11th House is sort of a universal principle that says, “Everything in the universe is rooted in this idea of friendliness, neighborliness. We are all neighbors. We’re all here together. And thus, we can all get along, even if we are different, even if we have different ways, different views. There are no contradictory thoughts in God’s mind.”

So, the Libra/11th House journey is that there are so many ways to do relationship. There are ways of meeting each other that might not fit into the known boxes. Now, this implies a strong degree of sociability, a lot of open-mindedness, a natural interest and curiosity about other people, wanting to get along. It's a very social archetype. The gift with Libra in the 11th House is objective listening, listening to other people according to who they are, and thus we are liberating from constructs and ideas of relationship and "relationship-ing." This capacity for objective listening really allows for harmony, for people to come together where they are supported to be their individual self. We all have different needs. And there's a way to live where our minds are spacious enough, friendly enough, that supports and encourages everyone to be who they are and get their needs met. There's a lot of friendliness.

Now, the challenge in this signature can be through the Aries in the 5th House polarity. There could be a loss of self-focus, where it's all about inclusion and making sure everyone is heard. And there can even be a lot of seemingly evolved or Aquarian type ideals of sitting in a circle and everyone gets a turn. But there is an element here (Aries in the 5th House), your raw natural expression. It can't always harmonize. It's not always going to look a certain utopian way. It's a journey within the 11th House. All things 11th House, is freeing the mind of conditioned notions of what is, so there can be just this present moment. There can be trauma here linked to experiences of relationship where one's individuality is rejected. "I can't be myself here. I don't know if I'm going to be listened to." There can be relationships here where a soul is dissociative. They're dissociated because they don't actually believe they can be true to themselves. To be oneself means, "I'm going to be excluded. I'm going to be told 'I don't want to be with you'," the trauma of excommunication or exclusion in the 11th House, linked with the Libra dynamic of not being listened to, the need to be approved of, the need to be pleasing.

One neat expression of Libra in the 11th House is a more evolved connection to harmony. Anything in the 11th House can express as elevated, evolved, higher consciousness. There can be a sense of knowing harmony, harmonization, and relationship in a way that doesn't necessarily fit into how most people relate to one another. But, it's coming from a more clear minded place without all the more traditional associations and conditionings that are put onto relationships.

### **Scorpio in the 12th House**

Lastly, Scorpio in the 12th House. The 12th House corresponds to Pisces; this is water in water. The 12th House speaks to where we are dissolving and surrendering to what is of ultimate meaning. There can be a disillusionment relative to wherever we have placed ultimate meaning, and a realignment of a conscious sense of self to what is beyond one's sense of self. So, one is learning to be an instrument and to live as a co-creator, to live in relationship with what is ultimately true, eternally true. The signs, and anything happening in the 12th House, speaks to this path of spiritualization. It's where there can be disillusionment. And it's that point of surrender, and thus, revelation of the truth of Reality. It's where the soul will surrender and deepen its communion, merging with the Source of All Things, where the soul will be an instrument for unconditional Love, for a purpose greater and beyond just oneself. And, in a sense, we can say that whatever's happening in the 12th House is where a soul finds where true meaning, true fulfillment, comes from because it's only found through what is ultimately true and ultimately real. And living as a conduit for that is what provides true peace. There can be a lot of confusion along that journey.

Likewise, anything in the 12th House speaks to where we are universalizing. So, we can have experiences of being in a place of being anonymous, or in an environment or a context where we are serving and relating to people in a way that is indiscriminate of who they are or where they're coming from.

Scorpio in the 12th House, at the core, speaks to the strong dual-desire nature of the soul to resist surrender or to give in to it. And there can be a strong obsession, a strong focus on transcendence, on spiritual experience that will take one beyond the limits of one's sense of self. Because Scorpio here has to probe very deeply and get underneath the core and get to the root. And so, there is a desire to transcend one's ego, one's limitations, one's addictions, one's compulsions, and go deep into who one really is.

This obsession with death and transcendence and going deeper can be easily misdirected towards all kinds of escapism experiences, where the soul is cleaving towards whatever will provide a strong sense of intensity and a catharsis, a deep connection to a greater depth inside. And the 12th House here will be the escapism. This can be drugs, alcohol, sex, anything that's providing a depth of experience. It's taking one beyond the world, so to speak, and bringing one deeper into one's soul. But there can be a strong entanglement in addiction. There can also be a lot of strong sexual and emotional entanglements, power and disempowerment dynamics, victim/perpetrator dynamics, where one can even totally lose oneself to the energy of another.

In the same way, we can have a soul that is needing to completely protect themselves from surrender. So, they're making themselves a symbol of ultimate power. And here, the attention will be on symbols and sources of power that will ultimately reflect one's inherent resistance to evolution. It can be orienting to whatever will provide within the soul a sense of powerfulness, so that they don't feel vulnerable to the reality of impermanence. There can be many souls with this signature that have a strong desire and devotion to know who they are. And, at any evolutionary stage, this devotion to merge with what's true can express as a desire to do good, a desire to link oneself to something greater than oneself and, in that sense, merge with a symbol of power that is beyond one's own making. There can be deep processes of disillusionment, of confusion, not knowing discernment, (Scorpio) sharing, giving, sharing one's intimacy.

And this is where the Taurus/Scorpio polarity is important. It's very practical. "I have my techniques. I've got my tools. I've got the things that I'm working on. It's in this space. It's very practical. It's very utilitarian. I know what I'm doing here and it's down to earth." Otherwise, a Scorpio in the 12th House can have no basis for what it's doing. It's like swimming in the ocean, "Where do I direct my attention? Where do I direct my consciousness?" Even meditation techniques can be a helpful way of integrating that polarity. It's a way of orienting the soul consciously towards what is essentially and eternally true. So, (Scorpio) they can concentrate on their eternal self and, in a sense, escape the world, but not through escapism, escape the world through single-pointed concentration (Scorpio) on the Source of All Things (12th House).

And this completes our learning of the 12 Houses. Now, we just looked at 12 different examples. In our practice work we are all going to be looking at charts and working with a

diversity of placements. In the next video I'm going to offer a few more learning and practice tips and also speak about the four angles of the natal chart.

## The Four Angles

Hello everyone. Before I jump into the final lesson for this segment, The Four Angles, I want to offer a couple more learning points that will just support us as we are integrating this material.

### Learning Points

Remember that, as we learn to read signs and houses, it's a lived experience. The more charts we look at, in particular, the more real experiences of actual human beings and their charts that we encounter, the more we will all get a felt sense of the chart. If I'm speaking about Sagittarius in the 1st House, when you really see it, when you meet someone with a Sagittarius ascendant, it's like "Oh! I see what that is!" So, hold space for our lived experience. In the practice assignments, I'm actually going to be asking everyone to look at some charts, your own included, other people that you know (with consent), and go through all of the houses. And this is not to put anyone in a box, because we can't really, at this stage, look at all the house/sign combinations and know exactly what it's speaking to, but just to practice the interpretive skills. And you might find yourself actually making a connection. "Oh! I can totally see how that applies, or how that's manifesting for myself or for another person."

Lastly, a really useful pedagogical technique for practicing interpreting signatures is to play around with it a little bit. So, we're working with polarity, and polarity is a really great way to understand. If you're working with Scorpio in the 3rd House, Taurus in the 9th is useful for not just saying where

there might be some lessons for Scorpio in the 3rd, but it's helpful for the mind. If you're having difficulty with Scorpio in the 3rd, jump to the polarity. If we can get one polarity, we can already, in some way, begin to conceive of its opposite. Working with the polarities of a natal chart can be really helpful. Our minds are wired differently and some things will click quicker than other things for all of us. So, if you ever find yourself stuck and not really being able to get into the expressions and the intentions and the ways a particular combination might express, look at its opposite. See if that clicks better for you.

Likewise, if you were looking at Scorpio in the 3rd House and you're having difficulty, try putting Taurus in the 3rd House. We are not going to the opposite, but we are changing signs to the opposite. And so, we are staying in the 3rd House but just working with the opposite archetype. So, that might be another way of working with our minds. You see, the mind has these ways of organizing things and existing mental constructs. So, if we just do these little tricks of changing things around, we might find an 'in', to actually grasp what we are looking at.

### The Four Angles

Now I want to introduce the four angles. The four angles are what we use to describe the ascendant, descendent, midheaven, and the IC. We know that the four angles start the quadrants and they also start, respectively, the 1st House, the 4th House, the 7th House, and the 10th House. But, practically speaking, interpretively, what makes the four angles different from any other house cusp? What makes the 1st House cusp different from the 2nd House

cusps? They are both house cusps, there are planets and signs in houses (they can be anywhere). But what makes these four angles significant?

### **The Angles Create the Chart Framework**

So, I want to offer this idea that the angles are like vortex points. In a sense, we can think of the four angles as nodal points, not nodes like the lunar nodes, but they are similar in the sense that they involve the ecliptic. Any time there's an intersection between a plane and the ecliptic, we can call that a nodal point. So, we have where the horizon and the ecliptic cross; that's the ascendant and the descendant. And where the ecliptic crosses the local meridian in its movement from one horizon to the next, that's the MC/IC axis. And anything that intersects the ecliptic is charged. We have the local experience of the earth, but then there are these four cardinal points that are intersecting the entire path, we can say, the entire path of evolution, where all the planetary activity is.

The way that I would interpret the meaning of these four nodal points, the four angles, is that they sort of define the parameters of the natal chart. You can think of it as, they establish the skeleton framework from which the quadrants, and then the houses, are created. They are the containers within which the entire evolutionary journey is taking place. I think of the four angles as providing the context, the template, for the soul's evolutionary journey here, in this lifetime, on this earth. And we can interpret each angle as being its own statement of how the soul, in a specific way, is orienting to this human-earth-soul experience. So, let's look at each one and I'll define its meaning more specifically.

### **The Ascendant**

The ascendant begins the 1st House. And, at the core, the ascendant energy, that particular point where the ecliptic crosses the east-ish horizon, is pinpointing how the soul is instinctively individuating themselves through life. While that is a characteristic of the entire 1st House, this becomes a fundamental way of being that actually conditions the entire activity of the 1st House. The sign on the cusp of the 1st House, your ascendant, is the foot that you're putting forward. Thus, you can say it's what you're showing to the world. It's instinctive, and you're actually not even aware of it because it's instinctive. So, your ascendant is just what you're putting out there. You're not really thinking of it. It doesn't mean you're unconscious; obviously, you're developing consciousness, but you're not necessarily aware of that way of being because it's an inherent way of being.

### **The Descendant**

Now, let's look at the descendant. This is where the ecliptic crosses the western-ish horizon. Jeffrey Wolf Green brilliantly described the descendant as your 'persona'. A lot of people speak about the ascendant as persona, but if you think about it, the descendant makes a lot of sense; it starts the 7th House. It's who we are becoming in a relational sense in relationship. It's who we are becoming as we are interacting. It's what we're learning about ourselves, and it's also the experiences that we're going to encounter within our relationship world. So, you can think of the ascendant/descendant axis as how we are energetically initiating ourselves in the human experience of self and other. "Who am I when I am just me? Who am I when I'm in relationship?"



Really, what we are going to learn to do is look at the chart and actually tune in to “Why does each soul have the chart that it has? Why do we have the ascendant that we have? What does it reflect, regarding the condition of the soul’s evolutionary journey? What’s the actual inner process that’s reflected in our four angles?”

### **Virgo Ascendant**

So, let’s take a Virgo ascendant. It’s always helpful to tune into what archetypes we’re working with here. So, the ascendant is a very Aries energy. This is a cardinal house. 1st House is cardinal; it’s fire. And then, Virgo is earth; it’s mutable. So, we are working with mutable earth and cardinal fire. The ascendant is how we are instinctively putting our foot forward in life to make life happen, to initiate experience. And it’s operating as a natural way of being; it’s how we individuate through life. We’re not thinking about ourselves as that. So, (Virgo) you’re not thinking “I am being super analytical and maybe self-critical, very detail focused.” It’s just how you are. The key is to use that Virgo energy to become self-aware within the Virgo domain so that, what? (1st House/ascendant) You’re initiating life experience.

Imagine what kind of challenges there could be with a Virgo ascendant, hyper-aware of all of one’s imperfections, which leads to a state of non-movement. 1st House asks you to move, and Virgo says “But I’m not perfect yet.” And it can create this situation where there’s so much energy, but it’s not being used. So, a lesson with a Virgo ascendant would be to take it one step at a time and (ascendant: instinctive) you’re just moving, you’re just acting. You’re going to make mistakes. In fact, you might do things recklessly or quickly and then need to self-correct. Virgo ascendant really speaks to a soul where (ascendant) it’s kind of opening up the energy of this life, of this chart, how we’re moving forward, where a big part of the learning, the orientation of one’s path, will be through cultivating humility and self-correction along the journey. This can reflect where a soul is learning how to be in service, where there’s work they need to do. And Virgo ascendant loves keeping busy; in fact, it needs to be busy. It needs to feel like there’s a lot of relevant, useful, meaningful work to do. It allows the soul to feel that they’re using their energy, they’re using their body, their skills for something that is relevant and purposeful. Virgo needs to feel that the routines, the practices, the chores that it’s doing in life are actually useful, serving something greater than just maintenance. The issue again is where all of this 1st House fiery energy can get stuck in detail, where then it creates a situation of not being productive. In the same way, if all of this fiery energy isn’t being used, it can become an issue of self-distraction.

### **Pisces Descendant**

Now, let’s look at the Pisces descendant. Pisces is mutable water. And the descendant is a 7th House energy, this is cardinal air. So, we’re combining cardinal air with mutable water. Here, we’re looking at the persona; this is who we are becoming, what we’re consciously learning about ourselves through our relationship journey. The learning with Pisces on the descendant is to cultivate unconditional love, forgiveness, to see the sameness of other people with your own self. So, there are these ultimate lessons around universality, unconditional love, unconditional acceptance. This means the soul is going to be entering into experiences (descendant/7th House: instinctive, just engaging with it) where they’re going to be facing this Pisces dimension within themselves. This can very much mean the extremes of the descendant, the extremes of the 7th House, going very deeply into martyrdom, giving to what other people are needing and then feeling very out of balance.

The other extreme of Pisces is hiding from relationship, a fear of losing oneself. This soul is learning how to be an agent and an instrument of something beyond their own thinking, their own understanding. So, they're not looking at other people, they're not judging a relationship according to their own thinking, their own mind. The two extremes that can manifest with the Pisces descendant is getting lost in the world of other people, just merging with other people's realities, other people's needs, lacking that discernment, just becoming and merging with other people. And the other would be illusion, the yearning for the perfect relationship, or convincing oneself "Ah, this is the perfect relationship," or wanting to be saved. We can have the Pisces descendant where you are the Savior or where you are always wanting to be saved. So, as a nodal point of the chart (the 4 angles being these very powerful points of intersection), this is a part of how the soul is learning about itself in this human experience through the journey of relationship.

### **Gemini on the MC**

Gemini on the MC. Gemini is mutable air, and we're combining that with cardinal earth (10th House). The MC, being the point of self-authority, self-responsibility, cultivating discipline, also an awareness of ethics, here this is happening through the domain of the mind, learning, communication. Someone whose role in cultivation of self-responsibility is to communicate and articulate to convey whole logical thoughts and ideas, anything that involves communication, sharing of knowledge. One of the challenges of Gemini in the 10th House is relative to the Gemini capacity for mimicking and the 10th House social status, social pressures, ideas of value and success. There can be an issue of lying or duplicity or pretending to be something that someone is not. So, not actually training or cultivating one's mind, developing oneself, but knowing how to say the right things, knowing how to appear in the ways that are just a way of trickery. Often, the work with Gemini in the 10th House is getting beyond the trap of the linear mind that's trying to logically piece everything together and figure out "What's my work in life? What am I doing?" Very often, the work with Gemini in the 10th is actually synthesizing different elements. This soul can be wearing many different hats in different environments, different contexts, cultivating different responsibilities, and learning how to navigate that according to their own inner compass, their own inner guide.

### **Sagittarius on the IC**

Lastly, Sagittarius on the IC. Sagittarius is mutable fire, and the IC is cardinal water. Sagittarius, which is about expansion and growth in discovery, greater realization of the truth, here in the 4th House of home and security. So, the orientation, the roots of one's human experience here, is very much qualified by this journey of discovery through the home. This can mean home becomes the place where you learn a lot of truth, you cultivate more honesty, truthfulness, sincerity (you would call this emotional honesty) through family, through emotional care, a growth or expansion of one's capacity to cultivate empathy and nurturance and self-intimacy and care for oneself and others. Or literally, home can be on the road. And the issue here is, Sagittarius (which is very much about expansion and growth, which can be restless) can be running away from home, running from one's emotions, running from actually connecting with the emotional body. So, the work with Sagittarius in the 4th House, in general terms, is connecting with the root of one's life as a spiritual journey so that, where you are, wherever one finds oneself, there's a pilgrimage there. Whether that means you're staying in one place

or you're traveling, the journey starts here and now. This allows a soul to really be at home within themselves without always being in a psychological state of movement.

## **The Two Axes and Polarity**

Now, we can look at the four angles and also think of them, not as four angles, but as two axes. There's the ascending/descending axis and the MC/IC axis. Because, the ascendant implies a descendant and vice versa, and the MC implies the IC and vice versa. They're always an exact polarity. This is not the case when we look at the AC/DC axis with the MC/IC axis. They're not always going to be square, as we've learned. But each axis within itself is always an exact polarity. So it's meaningful to look at that, and if you have difficulty understanding one polarity, look at its opposite. Pisces: getting lost in another person's world. Virgo/1st House: "Okay! What's my path?" and "What's my work to do?" 1st House/Virgo: "I've got my work to do," super "In my own little organized analytical world." Pisces/DC/7th: "Relax, open the heart, connect to the love and the presence of connection that is here all around you." Gemini in the 10th: "Who am I supposed to be? What am I supposed to say? How am I supposed to act? How am I supposed to look? What kind of work am I supposed to do? What are the right words to say?" Sag in the 4th: "Who am I?" (Self-honesty) "At the core of my being I know who I am. What is true to who I am?" Sag in the 4th: "I have my culture, my own way of being." There's a strong familiarity and context here. Sag is your truth; 4th House is safety, familiarity. Gemini in the 10th House is, "There's a whole world out there where you have to put on different hats, engage socially with all different minds and ways of thinking. We need to learn the ways of the world and not just stay in this self-protected world of one's own personal beliefs or ways of thinking about reality."

So, when we begin looking at charts and looking at the four angles, I'd like everyone to just meditate on them, to feel into the four angles, and to experience it as holding us here. Is an overall context, so we could actually have more of a direct connection, a feel for "Ah! This is what it's like to be connecting to my MC. This is what it's like to be connecting to my IC."

What's important to understand at this point is that they charge the houses. They are vortex points and they carry a lot of energy, and they're just sort of initiators of their chart in their own way.

Okay, this completes Segment 4 on the Houses.